HITACHI
Inspire the Next

Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V

Hitachi Universal Replicator for IBM® z/OS®

User's Guide

FastFind Links

Hitachi Data Systems

MP-96RD625-01

Contents

Preface

This document describes and provides instructions for using the Universal Replicator for z/OS® software to configure and perform operations on the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V (USP V) storage system.

Please read this document carefully to understand how to use this product, and maintain a copy for reference purposes.

This preface includes the following information:

Notice: The use of Universal Replicator for z/OS® and all other Hitachi Data Systems products is governed by the terms of your agreement(s) with Hitachi Data Systems.

Intended Audience

This document is intended for system administrators, Hitachi Data Systems representatives, and Authorized Service Providers who are involved in installing, configuring, and operating the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V storage system.

This document assumes the following:

- The user has a background in data processing and understands RAID storage systems and their basic functions.
- The user is familiar with the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V storage system and has read the *Universal Storage Platform V User and Reference Guide*.
- The user is familiar with the Storage Navigator software for the Universal Storage Platform V and has read the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
- The user is familiar with the operating system and web browser software on the system hosting the Storage Navigator software.

Product Version

This document revision applies to Universal Storage Platform V microcode 60-01-3x and higher.

Document Revision Level

Revision	Date	Description
MK-96RD625-P	February 2007	Preliminary Release
MK-96RD625-00	April 2007	Initial Release, supersedes and replaces MK-96RD625-P
MK-96RD625-01	May 2007	Revision 1, supersedes and replaces MK-96RD625-00

Changes in this Revision

Not applicable to this release.

Document Organization

The following table provides an overview of the contents and organization of this document. Click the chapter title in the left column to go to that chapter. The first page of each chapter provides links to the sections in that chapter.

Chapter	Description
Chapter_1_Overview_of_Universal_Replicator_for_IBM_z/OS®	This chapter provides an overview of the Hitachi Universal Replicator software and describes its features and benefits.
Chapter_2_About_Universal_Replicator_Ope	This chapter provides an overview of Universal Replicator operations.
Chapter_3_Preparing_for_Universal_Replic	This chapter describes URz operations involving the USP V primary and secondary storage systems, the remote copy connections between the primary \secondary storage systems, and the host(s) at the primary and secondary sites, as well as the licensed URz remote console software
Chapter_4_Using_the_Universal_Replicator	This chapter how to use the Universal Replicator for z/OS graphical user interface.
Chapter_5_Configuring_Storage_Systems_an	This chapter how to use the Universal Replicator for z/OS graphical user interface.
Chapter_6_Configuring_Journal_Groups	This chapter describes the introduction of the URz in your system and explains how to configure your system for remote copy operations.
Chapter_7_Using_Extended_Consistency_Gro	This chapter explains how to perform remote copy operations between more than one primary and secondary storage system, as well as how to register journal groups in extended consistency groups (abbreviated as EXCTG).
Chapter_8_Performing_Pair_Operations	This chapter explains how to perform remote copy operations with URz, including how to create pairs of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume.
Chapter_9_Usage_Monitor_Operations	This chapter describes the Usage Monitoring window which enables you to collect I/O statistics for all volumes to be monitored on the connected storage system.
Chapter_10_Usage_Scenarios	This chapter describes how to use URz to enables to make Point-in-Time (PiT) duplicates of groups of volumes.
Troubleshooting	This chapter provides troubleshooting information for Universal Replicator for z/OS® and instructions for calling technical support.
Acronyms and Abbreviations	Defines the acronyms and abbreviations used in this document.
Index	Lists the topics in this document in alphabetical order.

Referenced Documents

Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V:

- *LUN Manager User's Guide*, MK-96RD615
- *User and Reference Guide*, MK-96RD635
- *Storage Navigator User's Guide*, MK-96RD621
- *Business Continuity Manager User and Reference Guide*, MK-94RD247
- *Data Retention Utility User's Guide*, MK-94RD210
- *Virtual LVI/LUN and Volume Shredder User's Guide*, MK-96RD630

- *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*, MK-94RD626
- *Guideline for the Timeout Menu Setting When Using At-Time Split Function at Combining Universal Replicator with ShadowImage*
- *TrueCopy for IBM z/OS User's Guide*, MK-94RD623

Document Conventions

The terms “Universal Storage Platform V” and “USP V” refer to all models of the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V, unless otherwise noted.

This document uses the following typographic conventions:

Typographic Convention	Description
Bold	Indicates text on a window, other than the window title, including menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels. Example: Click **OK**.
Italic	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Example: copy *source-file target-file* ***Note:*** Angled brackets (< >) are also used to indicate variables.
`screen/code`	Indicates text that is displayed on screen or entered by the user. Example: `# pairdisplay -g oradb`
< > angled brackets	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Example: `# pairdisplay -g <group>` ***Note:*** Italic font is also used to indicate variables.
[ ] square brackets	Indicates optional values. Example: [a | b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.
{ } braces	Indicates required or expected values. Example: { a | b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
| vertical bar	Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments. Examples: [a | b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing. { a | b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
underline	Indicates the default value. Example: [a | b]

This document uses the following icons to draw attention to information:

Icon	Meaning	Description
	Note	Calls attention to important and/or additional information.
	Tip	Provides helpful information, guidelines, or suggestions for performing tasks more effectively.
	Caution	Warns the user of adverse conditions and/or consequences (e.g., disruptive operations).
	WARNING	Warns the user of severe conditions and/or consequences (e.g., destructive operations).
	DANGER	Dangers provide information about how to avoid physical injury to yourself and others.

	ELECTRIC SHOCK HAZARD!	Warns the user of electric shock hazard. Failure to take appropriate precautions (e.g., do not touch) could result in serious injury.
	ESD Sensitive	Warns the user that the hardware is sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Failure to take appropriate precautions (e.g., grounded wriststrap) could result in damage to the hardware.

Convention for Storage Capacity Values

Physical storage capacity values (e.g., disk drive capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

1 KB = 1,000 bytes
1 MB = $1,000^2$ bytes
1 GB = $1,000^3$ bytes
1 TB = $1,000^4$ bytes
1 PB = $1,000^5$ bytes

Logical storage capacity values (e.g., logical device capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

1 KB = 1,024 bytes
1 MB = $1,024^2$ bytes
1 GB = $1,024^3$ bytes
1 TB = $1,024^4$ bytes
1 PB = $1,024^5$ bytes
1 block = 512 bytes

Getting Help

If you need to call the Hitachi Data Systems Support Center, make sure to provide as much information about the problem as possible, including:

- The circumstances surrounding the error or failure.
- The exact content of any error messages displayed on the host system(s).
- The exact content of any error messages displayed by Storage Navigator.
- The Storage Navigator configuration information (use the FD Dump Tool).
- The service information messages (SIMs), including reference codes and severity levels, displayed by Storage Navigator.

The Hitachi Data Systems customer support staff is available 24 hours/day, seven days a week. If you need technical support, please call:

- United States: (800) 446-0744
- Outside the United States: (858) 547-4526

Comments

Please send us your comments on this document. Make sure to include the document title, number, and revision. Please refer to specific section(s) and paragraph(s) whenever possible.

- **E-mail:** doc.comments@hds.com
- **Fax:** 858-695-1186
- **Mail:**
  Technical Writing, M/S 35-10
  Hitachi Data Systems
  10277 Scripps Ranch Blvd.
  San Diego, CA 92131

Thank you! (All comments become the property of Hitachi Data Systems Corporation.)

1

Overview of Universal Replicator for IBM z/OS®

This chapter provides an overview of the Hitachi Universal Replicator software and describes its features and benefits. This chapter covers the following key topics:

- ☐ Hitachi Universal Replicator
- ☐ Features
- ☐ Benefits

Hitachi Universal Replicator

The Hitachi Universal Replicator software intelligently replicates data among storage environments controlled through the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V, satisfying the most demanding disaster recovery and uptime requirements. Since its introduction on the Hitachi TagmaStore® Universal Storage Platform and Network Storage Controller, the Universal Replicator software has set a new standard for data protection by redefining the way asynchronous replication is performed.

Reliable data storage and recovery systems are essential in today's market climate where downtime can be very costly. Businesses must manage increasing amounts of data across a variety of storage systems and operating environments in various locations, while optimizing usage of storage hardware resources and minimizing the management burden.

To address these needs, Hitachi Universal Replicator software provides the enterprise-class performance associated with storage system-based replication while delivering resilient business continuity. Through the Hitachi RAID storage systems, Universal Replicator provides a powerful data management and recovery solution that replicates data to a variety of storage platforms at one or multiple remote sites. Data is replicated asynchronously over any distance without the need for redundant servers or replication appliances, thus significantly reducing resource consumption.

The Hitachi Universal Replicator software helps organizations to:

- Lower the cache and resource consumption on production/primary storage systems
- Improve bandwidth utilization
- Simplify bandwidth planning
- Mitigate the impact of network failures
- Gain more flexibility in trading off between Recovery Point Objective and cost
- Implement advanced multi–data center support more easily
- Move data among levels of tiered storage systems more easily
- Fully leverage the Universal Storage Platform V and optimize the storage infrastructure

Features

Hitachi Universal Replicator provides the following key features:

- **Heterogeneous Storage System Support**
  - Used with the Universal Storage Platform or Network Storage Controller, Universal Replicator software enables storage management and disaster recovery in heterogeneous systems, providing maximum flexibility and support of enterprise-class environments.
  - Universal Replicator software supports any storage connected to a Universal Storage Platform or Network Storage Controller, permitting data to be copied from any supported device to any other supported device, regardless of operating system or protocol differences. This ensures maximum flexibility for data distribution as well as increased storage utilization and failover options.
- **More Efficient Replication**
  - Universal Replicator software uses asynchronous replication driven by the remote site to minimize impact on primary production systems and takes advantage of journaling rather than cache files to mitigate the high resource usage of other asynchronous approaches.
  - Storage usage on the Universal Storage Platform or Network Storage Controller can be minimal, just enough for the journals.
  - Limited use of cache leaves cache for production application usage, further restoring primary site storage to its intended role as a transaction processing resource, not a replication engine.
  - Advanced three data center capabilities provide a choice of cascade or multi-target configurations (teams with TrueCopy Synchronous software for advanced configurations).
  - Consistency groups can span multiple storage systems for large enterprise-class applications requiring unmatched scalability and data integrity.

Note: Please check with your Hitachi Data Systems representative for detailed feature availability information.

Benefits

The business benefits of Hitachi Universal Replicator include:

- **Ensure Business Continuity**
  - Simplifies implementation to meet the most demanding disaster recovery and uptime requirements, regardless of the type of supported storage platform hosting the business-critical data
  - Supports availability of up-to-date copies of data in dispersed locations by leveraging Hitachi TrueCopy® Synchronous software
  - Maintains integrity of a replicated copy without impacting processing, even when replication network outages occur or optimal bandwidth is not available
  - Works with Universal Storage Platform V replication technology to greatly enhance administrative productivity and response to and proactive aversion of crises
- **Optimize Resource Usage**
  - Leverages advanced technology to maintain data integrity and optimize the storage/IT infrastructure for protection of data from any application across a variety of hardware and software platforms
  - Optimizes storage resources for more efficient data protection over any distance
  - Significantly reduces cache utilization and increases bandwidth utilization by leveraging performance-optimized disk-based journals
  - Reduces overhead and application impact at production site by placing more of the workload on remote site
  - Centralizes operations for management resources and provides secure management of data-related operational risk
- **Improve Operational Efficiency and Resiliency**
  - Simplifies consolidation/aggregation and mapping of data value to the cost of storage
  - Supports planned site outages
  - Keeps logging changes in the event of network problems between sites
  - Reduces costs—requires only one product to provide asynchronous copy across all attached storage systems
- **Synergy with Hitachi Business Continuity Framework**
  - Builds on the data integrity heritage of Hitachi open-systems and mainframe remote replication software
  - Provides unified, simplified management via Hitachi HiCommand® Device Manager and Hitachi Business Continuity Manager software for IBM® z/OS®

– Integrates tightly with other Hitachi software products supporting business continuity, further expanding capabilities

Business Solutions

Hitachi Data Systems and its Hitachi TrueNorth™ Channel Partners provide cost-effective storage products and solutions that leverage world-renowned Hitachi global R&D resources to deliver performance, availability, and scalability—supporting business-critical applications and strengthening competitive advantage.

Complementary solutions for Universal Replicator software include:

- Hitachi HiCommand® Replication Monitor software
- Hitachi TrueCopy® Synchronous software, which duplicates data between like Hitachi storage systems
- Hitachi ShadowImage™ Heterogeneous In-System Replication software for non-disruptive, high-speed data replication within any Hitachi storage system

Hitachi Business Continuity Manager software for managing TrueCopy and ShadowImage solutions for IBM® z/OS® mainframe

2

About Universal Replicator Operations

This chapter provides an overview of Universal Replicator operations:

- ☐ Functionality Overview
- ☐ Components
- ☐ Remote Copy Operations
- ☐ Journal Processing
- ☐ URz Delta Resync Operation
- ☐ Pair Status
- ☐ Business Continuity Manager Support

Functionality Overview

Hitachi Universal Replicator represents a unique and outstanding disaster recovery solution for large amounts of data that span multiple volumes. The *UR* group-based update sequence consistency solution enables fast and accurate database recovery, even after a “rolling” disaster, without the need for time-consuming data recovery procedures. The user-defined *UR* journal groups (volume groups) at the secondary site can be recovered with full update sequence consistency but behind the primary site due to asynchronous copy operations. This functionality also provides protection for write-dependent applications in the event of a disaster.

UR enables you to create duplicate volumes by copying data from the primary data volumes in the primary storage system to the secondary data volumes in the secondary storage system at the remote location. To perform this function, the journal obtain function at the primary site, the journal copy function between the primary and secondary sites, and the journal restore function at the secondary site are performed sequentially with the primary and secondary data volumes and the journal volumes. Write sequence consistency for the primary data volume at the primary site is also maintained for the secondary data volume at the secondary site by the write sequence number to be assigned for the journal data with the journal obtaining function, enabling you to configure the duplicate system which has data integrity. UR reduces the occurrence of pair suspensions due to restrictions of data transfer from the primary site to the secondary site by storing the write data from the host in the master and restore journal volumes, providing a high-reliability duplication system.

Figure 2-1 UR Components for Fibre-Channel Connection shows an overview of UR operations.

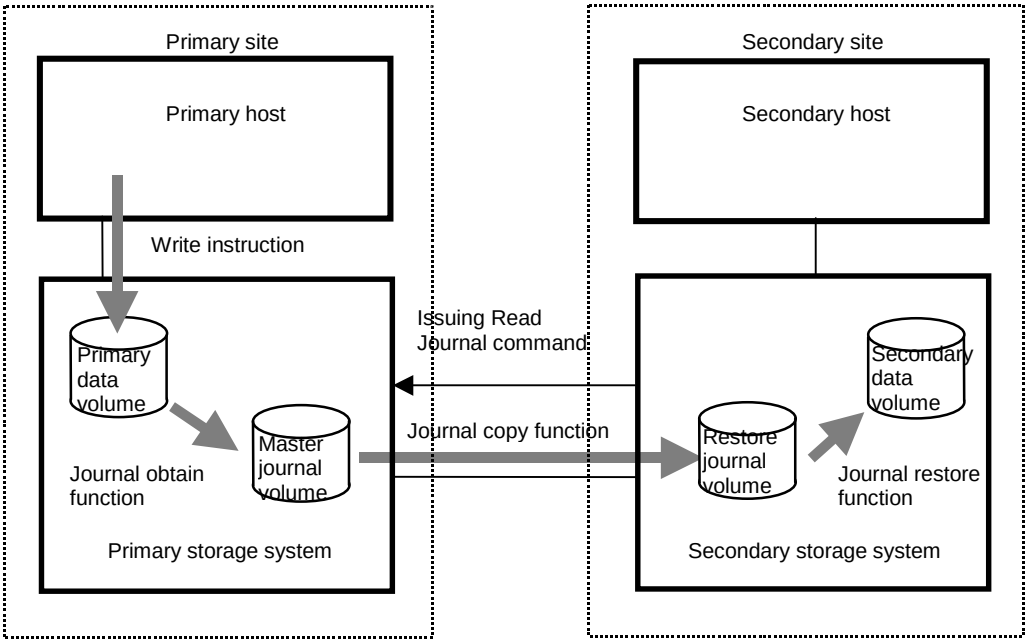


Figure 2-1 UR Components for Fibre-Channel Connection

Journal Obtain

Journal obtain is the function to store the already stored data in the primary data volume as a base-journal in the journal volume at the primary site. And then, this function stores the write data as a journal data in the journal volume with every update of the primary data volume according to the write instruction from the host. The journal obtain operation is performed according to the instruction of add pair or Resume Pair operation from the primary site. The write sequence number from the host is assigned to the journal data. According to this information, the write sequence consistency at the secondary site can be maintained. The update data from the host is kept in the cache. Therefore, the journal obtain function for the update data is performed asynchronously from the time the storage system receives the update data from the host and stores the update data to the data volume.

Journal Copy

Journal copy is the function to copy the data in the master journal volume at the primary site to the restore journal volume at the secondary site. The secondary storage system issues the read journal command to the primary storage system to request to transfer the data that is stored in the master journal volume according to the pair create or Resume Pair operation instruction from the primary site. The primary storage system transfers the data in the journal volume to the secondary site according to the read journal command if it has the journal data that should be sent. If the primary storage system does not have the journal data, the information is sent. The secondary storage system stores the journal volume data that is sent from the primary site in the restore journal volume at the secondary site. The read journal commands are issued repeatedly and regularly from the secondary site to the primary site until the journal operation is stopped. After the data are restored, the journal sequence numbers are informed from the secondary site to the primary site when the read journal command is issued. According to this information, the journal data at the primary site are discarded.

Journal Restore

Journal restore is the function to reflect the stored data in the restore journal volume to the secondary data volume at the secondary site. The data in the restore journal volume are restored to the secondary data volume according to the write sequence number. This will ensure the write sequence consistency between the primary and secondary data volumes. After the journal data are restored to the secondary data volume, the journal data are discarded at the secondary site.

Components

URz operations involve the *USP V* storage systems at the primary and secondary sites, the physical communications paths between these storage systems, and the *USP V* URz remote console software. URz copies the original online data at the primary site to the offline backup volumes at the secondary site via the dedicated fibre-channel remote copy connections using a journal volume. You can operate the URz software with the user-friendly GUI environment using the *USP V* URz remote console software.

Note: Host failover software is required for effective disaster recovery with URz.

For management of URz journal groups that consist of journal volumes located in multiple storage systems, host I/O time stamping function (provided by MVS DFSMSdfp) is a requisite functional item. An error reporting communications (ERC) feature is essential for URz to be able to recover data lost in a disaster.

Figure 2-2 shows the URz components and their functions:

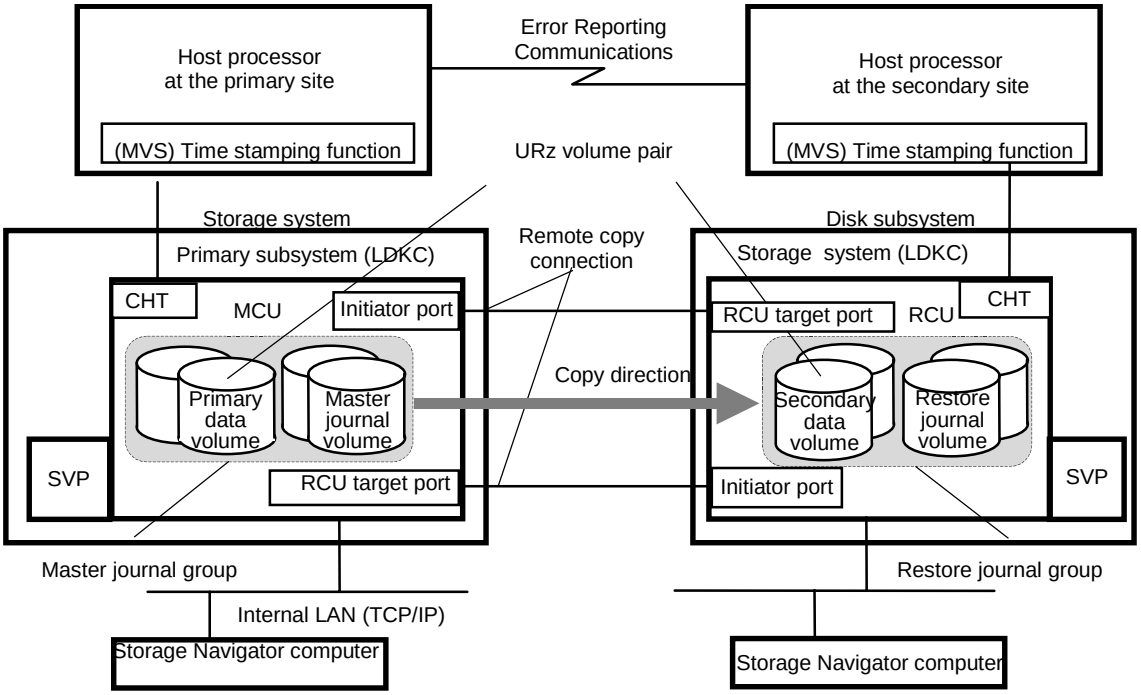


Figure 2-2 URz components

Figure 2-3 shows the plural secondary storage systems connection configuration of URz. By connecting one primary storage system with more than one secondary storage system, you can create a volume pair that has a one-to-one relationship for each journal group.

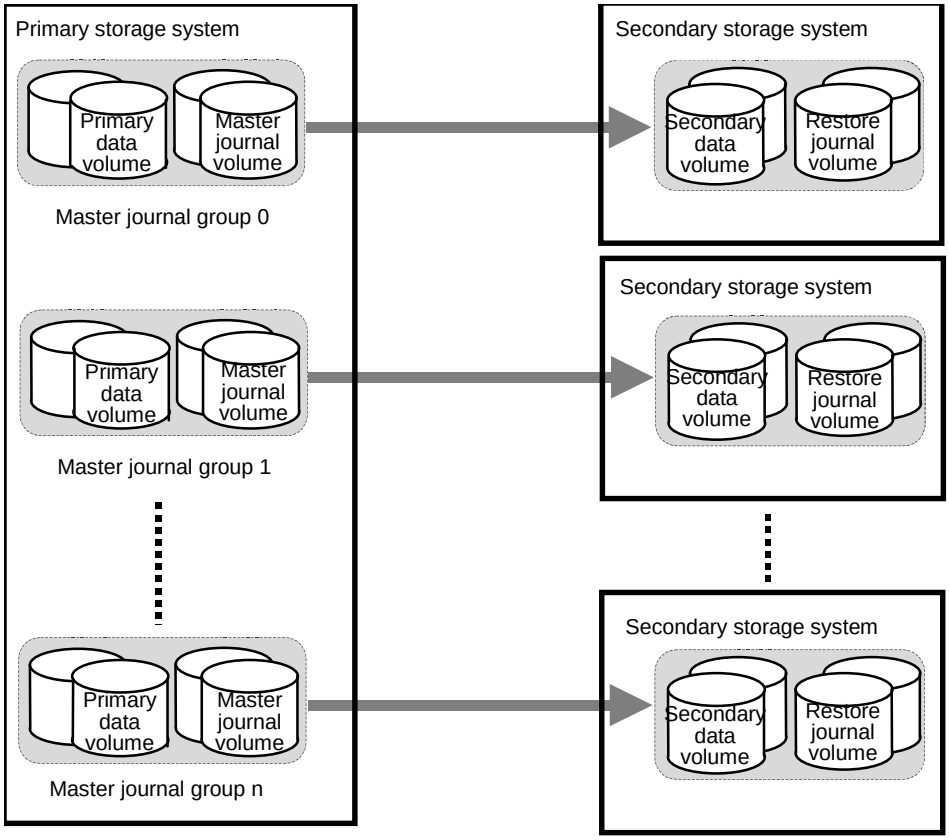


Figure 2-3 Connection Configuration of Plural Secondary Storage systems

This URz components describes:

- *USP V* storage system
- Logical DKC
- Main and remote control units (primary storage systems and secondary storage systems)
- Journal group
- Data volume pair
- Journal volume
- Remote copy connections
- Initiator ports and RCU target ports
- USP V URz remote console software
- Host I/O time stamping function
- Error reporting communications (ERC)

USP V Storage Systems

URz operations involve the USP V storage systems at the primary and secondary sites. The primary storage system consists of the main control unit (primary storage system) and SVP. The secondary storage system consists of the remote control unit (secondary storage system) and SVP.

To provide greater flexibility and to enable the USP V to be tailored to unique customer operating requirements, operational parameters, or optional modes, are available in URz for the USP V storage system. At installation, the USP V modes are set to their default values, so make sure to discuss these settings with your Hitachi team. The USP V modes can only be changed by your Hitachi representative.

Universal Replicator for z/OS® Software

USP V Storage Navigator Java applet program product includes URz for the USP V storage system. The USP V Storage Navigator software communicates with the SVP of each USP V storage system via defined TCP/IP connections. For further information on USP V Storage Navigator operations, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*, or contact your Hitachi account team.

The Storage Navigator PC at the primary site must be attached to the primary storage system. You should also attach a Storage Navigator PC at the secondary site to all secondary storage systems. Having a Storage Navigator PC at the secondary site enables you to change the URz parameter of the secondary storage system and access the URz secondary data volume (e.g. for the maintenance of media). If you need to perform URz operations in the reverse direction from the secondary site to the primary site (e.g., disaster recovery), the *USP V* URz software simplifies and expedites this process.

Note: If the *USP V* Storage Navigator remote console PC is not installed, please contact your Hitachi account team for information on URz configuration services.

Main and Remote Control Units

The main control unit (primary storage system) and remote control unit (secondary storage system) control URz operations:

- The primary storage system is the control unit in the primary storage system which controls the primary data volume of the URz pairs and master journal volume. The Storage Navigator remote console PC must be LAN-attached to the primary storage system. The primary storage system communicates with the secondary storage system via the dedicated remote copy connections. The primary storage system controls the host I/O operations to the URz primary data volume and the journal obtain operation of the master journal volume as well as the URz initial copy and update copy operations between the primary data volumes and the secondary data volumes.
- The secondary storage system is the control unit in the secondary storage system which controls the secondary data volume of the URz pairs and restore journal volume. The secondary storage system controls copying of journals and restoring of journals to secondary data volumes. The secondary storage system assists in managing the URz pair status and configuration (e.g., rejects write I/Os to the URz secondary data volumes). The secondary storage system issues the read journal command to the primary storage system and executes copying of journals. The secondary Storage Navigator PC should be connected to the secondary storage systems at the secondary site on a separate LAN. The secondary storage systems should also be attached to a host system to allow sense information to be reported in case of a problem with a secondary data volume or secondary storage system and to provide disaster recovery capabilities.

The USP V can function simultaneously as a primary storage system for one or more primary data volumes and as a secondary storage system for one or more secondary data volumes, provided the remote copy connections and fibre-channel interface ports are properly configured. The URz software allows you to specify the secondary storage system from the connected primary storage system. URz operations can be performed on all LDEVs except for the USP V command device. For further information on the USP V command device, please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User and Reference Guide*.

Note: When you configure a URz journal group pair, you have to specify the serial numbers of primary storage systems and secondary storage systems. You have to specify the different serial numbers of primary storage system and secondary storage system for the same URz journal group pair. If you have to specify the same serial number, please contact your Hitachi account team.

Logical DKC (LDKC)

The USP V storage system controls the CU (Control Unit) by dividing the CUs in to groups of 255 CUs. Each group is a storage system that logically exists in USP V (logical storage system). These groups are called a “logical DKC” or an “LDKC (Logical disk controller)”. There are 2 LDKCs in the USP V storage system and number “00” and “01” is assigned to each LDKC.

Each LDKC controls 255 CUs, however the number of CUs that can be used for USP V program products is up to 255. Therefore, the maximum number of volumes that can be used for USP V program products is 130,560 (65,280 volumes for an LDKC).

Remote Copy Connections

The remote copy connections are the physical paths used by the primary storage systems to communicate with the secondary storage systems. Remote copy connections enable communication between the primary and secondary storage systems. The primary storage systems and secondary storage systems are connected via fibre-channel interface cables. You must establish paths from the primary to the secondary storage system, and also from the secondary to the primary storage system. Up to eight paths can be established in both of these directions.

When fibre-channel interface (optical multimode shortwave) connections are used, two switches are required for distances greater than 0.5 km (1,640 feet), and distances up to 1.5 km (4,920 feet, 0.93 miles) are supported. If the distance between the primary and secondary sites is greater than 1.5 km, the optical single mode long wave interface connections are required. When fibre-channel interface (single-mode long wave) connections are used, two switches are required for distances greater than 10 km (6.2 miles), and distances up to 30 km (18.6 miles) are supported.

See section Setting up Remote Copy Connections for further information on installing and configuring the FC remote copy connections.

The URz remote copy configuration between primary storage system and secondary storage system has the following requirements:

URz supports 1-to-1 remote copy connection in one journal group pair. In one journal group pair, one primary storage system can be connected to only one secondary storage system. This configuration ensures the backup data consistency of two or more volumes (e.g., large databases) within the same storage system.

Note: Hitachi strongly recommends that you establish at least two independent remote copy connections from the primary storage system to the secondary storage system and vice versa to provide hardware redundancy for this critical communications path.

Initiator Ports and RCU Target Ports

The initiator port and the RCU target port are required at both the primary storage system and secondary storage system. The initiator port at the primary storage system is connected to the RCU target port at the secondary storage system via the fibre channel interface. The initiator port at the secondary storage system is connected to the RCU target port at the primary storage system. The initiator port at the secondary storage system issues a "read journal" command to the primary storage system, and then the RCU target port at the primary storage system sends journal data to the secondary storage system in response to the "read journal" command.

Any fibre-channel interface port of the USP V can be configured as an initiator port. The initiator ports cannot communicate with the host processor channels. The host channel paths must be connected to the fibre-channel interface port other than the initiator port.

Note: Two or more initiator ports must be configured before you can add the secondary storage systems and create the URz volume pairs.

The fibre-channel interface ports that are assigned for the RCU target ports can be connected to the host channel paths via the fibre-channel switch.

See section Configuring Port Attributes for the information on configuring host interface port.

Data Volume Pair

URz performs remote copy operations for data volume pairs created by the user. Each URz pair consists of one primary data volume and one secondary data volume which can be located in different storage systems. The URz primary data volumes are the primary volumes (LDEVs) which contain the original data, and the URz secondary data volumes are the secondary volumes (LDEVs) which contain the backup or duplicate data. During normal URz operations, the primary data volume remains available to all hosts at all times for read and write I/O operations. During normal URz operations, the secondary storage system rejects all host-requested write I/Os for the secondary data volume. The secondary data volume write enable option allows write access to a secondary data volume while the pair is split and uses the secondary data volume and primary data volume track maps to resynchronize the pair (see section Secondary Data Volume Write Option).

URz also supports the Virtual LVI/LUN (VLL) and Cache Residency Manager features, so that URz meets a variety of user needs and facilitates data copying and data migration. This ensures that all user data can be backed up or duplicated. See section Duplicate VOLSER (Volume Serial Number) for further information on LU requirements and support.

Journal Volume

When URz is used, updates to primary data volumes can be stored in other volumes, which are called *journal volumes*. The updates (which are sometimes referred to as *update data*) that will be stored in journal volumes are called *journal data*.

Because journal data will be stored in journal volumes, you can perform and manage highly reliable remote copy operations without suspension of remote copy operations. For example:

Even if a communication path between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system fails temporarily, remote copy operations can continue after the communication path is recovered.

If data transfer from hosts to the primary storage system is temporarily faster than data transfer between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, remote copy operations between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system can continue. Because journal volumes can contain a lot more *update data* than the cache memory can contain, remote copy operations can continue if data transfer from hosts to the primary storage system is faster for a relatively long period of time than data transfer between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system.

The Number of Journal Volumes

One journal group can contain up to 64 journal volumes. Each of the journal volumes can have different volume sizes and different RAID configurations. Journal data will be stored sequentially and separately into each journal volume in the same journal group.

Specifications of Journal Volumes

Types of logical units (LUs):

The following DKU emulation types are allowed for journal volumes:

Table 2-1 Emulation Types for Journal Volumes

Emulation Category	Supported Emulation Types
DKU (drive)	▪ OPEN-V ▪ All mainframe volumes that can be used with USP V *Note*: Status of mainframe volumes cannot be referenced.

Volumes and their capacity:

You can use VLL volumes for journal volumes.

Journal volumes in the same journal group can be of different capacity. A master journal volume and the corresponding restore journal volume can be of different capacity.

A journal volume consists of two areas: one area is used for storing journal data, and the other area is used for storing metadata for remote copy.

RAID configuration:

Journal volumes support all RAID configurations that are supported by USP V. Journal volumes also support all physical volumes that are supported by USP V.

Support for program products:

The volumes on which Cache Residency Manager settings are made can be used for journal volumes.

Caution: Volumes containing a VMA (volume management area) cannot be used as journal volumes. For detailed information about a VMA, please refer to the *Data Retention Utility User's Guide*.

Restrictions on Journal Volumes

Registering journal volumes:

Caution: You must register journal volumes in a journal group before you create a data volume pair for the first time in the journal group.

You can add journal volumes under any of the following conditions:

- When the journal group does not contain data volumes (i.e., before you create a data volume pair for the first time in the journal group, or after all data volume pairs are released)
- When all data volume pairs in the journal group are suspended.
- When processing for changing the status of a data volume pair (for example, release or suspension of a data volume pair) is not in progress

Note: If a path is defined from a host to a volume, you cannot register the volume as a journal volume.

You can use Storage Navigator computers to register journal volumes.

If you add a journal volume when a remote copy operation is in progress (i.e., when at least one data volume pair exists for data copying), the metadata area of the journal volume (see the next section) will be unused and only the journal data area will be used. To make the metadata area usable, you need to split (suspend) all the data volume pairs in the journal group and then restore (resynchronize) the pairs.

Adding journal volumes during a remote copy operation will not decrease the metadata usage rate if the metadata usage rate is high.

Adding journal volumes during a remote copy operation may not change the journal data usage rate until the journal volumes are used. To check the journal data usage rate, use the Usage Monitor window (see Usage Monitor Window).

Deleting journal volumes:

You can delete journal volumes under any of the following conditions:

– When the journal group does not contain data volumes (i.e., before you create a data volume pair for the first time in the journal group, or after all data volume pairs are released)

– When all data volume pairs in the journal group are suspended.

You can use Storage Navigator computers to delete journal volumes.

Caution:

– If you delete a mainframe journal volume from a journal group where a data volume pair has ever been registered, the deleted volume (LDEV) will be blocked. If you want to reuse the volume as a data volume, you must format the volume by using Virtual LVI/LUN (VLL). Unless you format the volume, data in the volume will not be guaranteed.

For instructions on formatting volumes, please refer to the *Virtual LVI/LUN and Volume Shredder User's Guide*. Note that you do not need to format the volume if you want to register the deleted volume as a journal volume again.

Access from hosts to journal volumes:

If a path is defined from a host to a volume, you cannot register the volume as a journal volume.

You cannot define paths from hosts to journal volumes. This means that hosts cannot read from and write to journal volumes.

Journal Volume Areas

The journal volume consists of the metadata area and the journal data area. The ratio of metadata area to journal data area is common in the journal volumes within the journal group.

In the metadata area, the metadata that manages the journal data is stored. For further information on the metadata area, see Table 2-3. The journal data that the metadata manages is stored in the journal data area.

Note: If the metadata or the journal data cannot be stored for a given length of time because the metadata or journal data areas have become full with the metadata or the journal data that had not been discarded, the pair is suspended according to a failure. Users can use a Storage Navigator computer to specify this timeout period (Data overflow watch) as a journal group option. This timeout period must be within the range of 0 to 600 seconds. For details on journal group options, see section Changing Options for a Journal Group.

Journal Group

Journal group consists of two or more data volumes and journal volumes. It is a feature that allows you to sort multiple data volumes and journal volumes into collective units to tailor URz to meet your unique business needs. The journal group in the primary storage system is referred to as the master journal group. The journal group in the secondary storage system is referred to as the restore journal group. The data volumes in the master journal group are also called the primary data volumes. The journal volumes in the master journal group are called the master journal volumes. The data volumes in the restore journal group are similarly called the secondary data volumes. The journal volumes in the restore journal group are called the restore journal volumes.

The data update sequence from the host is managed per the journal group. The data update sequence consistency between the master and restore journal groups to be paired is maintained and ensured. The master and restore journal groups are managed according to the journal group number. The journal numbers of master and restore journal groups that are paired can be different. One data volume and one journal volume can belong to only one journal group.

Caution: Data volumes and journal volumes that belong to different LDKCs cannot coexist in the same journal group.

For detailed information about the specification of journal groups, see Table 3-9.

Extended Consistency Groups

To perform remote copy operations between more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage systems while maintaining data consistency, you must register journal groups in an extended consistency group (abbreviated as EXCTG). An extended consistency group is a collection of journal groups. This manual uses the term "primary EXCTG" to refer to an extended consistency group for primary storage systems. This manual also uses the term "secondary EXCTG" to refer to an extended consistency group for secondary storage systems.

To perform remote copy operations between more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage systems while maintaining data consistency, you must configure a secondary EXCTG. Also, it is recommended that you configure a primary EXCTG, because the primary EXCTG will be necessary if you need to reverse the primary and secondary sites after a failure occurs. You can register journal groups of up to four different storage systems in the same extended consistency group, but you cannot register one journal group in different extended consistency groups. The following table explains specifications of extended consistency groups:

Table 2-2 Specifications of Extended Consistency Groups

Item	Specifications
The number of extended consistency groups that can be created	Up to four per one storage system
The number of journal groups that can be registered in one extended consistency group	Up to 16

The following explains configuration of extended consistency groups (i.e., primary and secondary EXCTGs). Note the following when configuring extended consistency groups.

Guaranteed Consistency of Data Update Sequence:

URz restores journal data to secondary data volumes by taking the following steps. The following procedure guarantees consistency of data update sequence within an extended consistency group:

a. URz checks the extended consistency group for the time stamps of all journal data that have not been restored to secondary data volumes, and then identifies the latest time stamp for each journal group.

   In the example shown in Figure 2-4, the latest time stamp for each journal group is as follows:

   - In Journal group 1, the latest time stamp is 15:00.
   - In Journal group 2, the latest time stamp is 15:02.
   - In Journal group 3, the latest time stamp is 15:03.
   - In Journal group 4, the latest time stamp is 15:04.

b. URz searches for the oldest time stamp from the ones identified in step a and restores data up to that time to the secondary volumes.

   In the example shown in Figure 2-4, the oldest time stamp is 15:00. URz restores all data that have a time stamp 15:00 or earlier to the secondary data volumes.

   - For Journal group 1, URz restores all data up to 15:00.
   - For Journal group 2, URz restores all data up to 14:02.
   - For Journal group 3, URz restores all data up to 14:03.
   - For Journal group 4, URz restores all data up to 14:04.

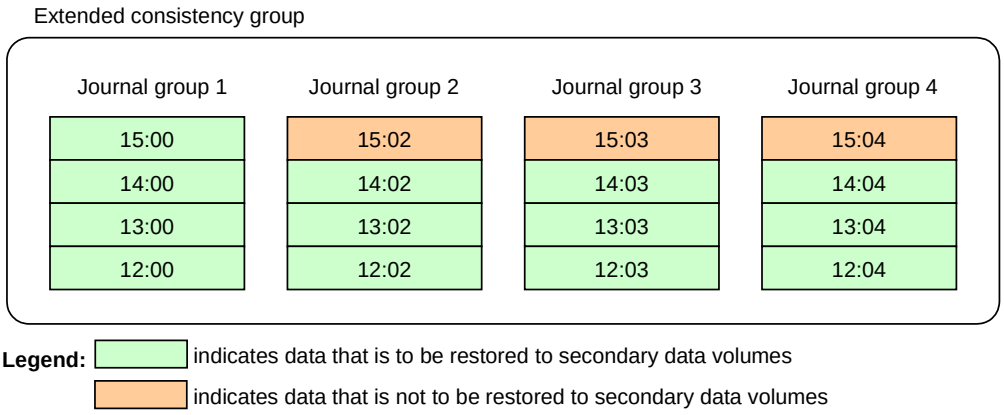


Figure 2-4 Time Stamps of Data that Have Not Been Restored to Secondary Data Volumes

Consistency time:

In the URz windows, consistency times of extended consistency groups, journal groups, and data volume pairs are displayed. These consistency times have the following meanings.

– The consistency time of an extended consistency group is the latest time stamp of the restored data in the group in which consistency is guaranteed.

  In the example shown in Figure 2-4, the consistency time of the extended consistency group is 15:00.

– The consistency time of a journal group is the latest time stamp of the restored data.

  In the example shown in Figure 2-4, the consistency times of journal groups 1 to 4 are as follows.

  - The consistency time of Journal group 1 is 15:00.
  - The consistency time of Journal group 2 is 14:02.
  - The consistency time of Journal group 3 is 14:03.
  - The consistency time of Journal group 4 is 14:04.

– The consistency time of a data volume pair is the latest time stamp of the data that has been restored when the pair becomes suspended.

  In the example shown in Figure 2-4, if a pair in the journal group 1, 2, 3 or 4 is suspended immediately after data are restored, the consistency time of the pair will be as follows.

  - If a pair in Journal group 1 is suspended, the consistency time will be 15:00.
  - If a pair in Journal group 2 is suspended, the consistency time will be 14:02.
  - If a pair in Journal group 3 is suspended, the consistency time will be 14:03.

- If a pair in Journal group 4 is suspended, the consistency time will be 14:04.

If a failure occurs in a primary storage system and then you wish to recover from the failure, please restore journal data with time stamps later than the consistency time of the extended consistency group to secondary data volumes. For example, in the case described in Figure 2-4, the consistency time of the extended consistency group is 15:00, and therefore you must restore the following data to secondary data volumes.

- Data with the time stamp 15:02 in journal group 2
- Data with the time stamp 15:03 in journal group 3
- Data with the time stamp 15:04 in journal group 4

If a failure occurs in a secondary storage system and then you wish to recover from the failure, please compare the consistency times of all journal groups in the extended consistency group, and then identify the oldest consistency time. Next, please restore all data with time stamps later than the oldest consistency time, to the secondary data volume. For example, in the case described in Figure 2-4, the consistency time of journal group 2 is the oldest among journal groups 1 to 4. Since the consistency time of journal group 2 is 14:02, you must restore the following data to secondary data volumes.

- Data with the time stamp 15:00 in journal group 1
- Data with the time stamp 15:02 in journal group 2
- Data with the time stamp 14:03, and data with the time stamp 15:03 in journal group 3
- Data with the time stamp 14:04, and data with the time stamp 15:04 in journal group 4

Host I/O Time-Stamp

If you plan to establish URz journal groups, the I/O time-stamping function must be installed on the host processor at the primary site. The I/O time-stamp, which is provided by MVS DFSMSdfp, is the same time-stamp that is used by Compatible XRC pairs. The I/O time-stamping function should also be installed on the host processor at the secondary site, so that time-stamps can be used when copying data in the reverse direction.

Note: If the system at the primary and/or secondary site consists of several CPU complexes, a SYSPLEX timer is required to provide a common time reference for the I/O time-stamping function.

Error Reporting Communications (ERC)

Error reporting communications (ERC), which transfers information between host processors at the primary and secondary sites, is a critical component of any disaster recovery effort. You can configure ERC using channel-to-channel communications, NetView technology, or other interconnect technologies, depending on your installation requirements and standards. Neither URz nor the URz remote console software provides ERC between the primary and secondary sites.

When URz is used as a data migration tool, ERC is recommended but is not required. When URz is used as a disaster recovery tool, ERC is required to ensure effective disaster recovery operations. When a URz pair is suspended due to an error condition, the primary storage system generates sense information which results in an IEA491E system console message. This information should be transferred to the primary site via the ERC for effective disaster detection and recovery.

Remote Copy Operations

Figure 2-5 illustrates the two types of URz remote copy operations: initial copy and update copy.

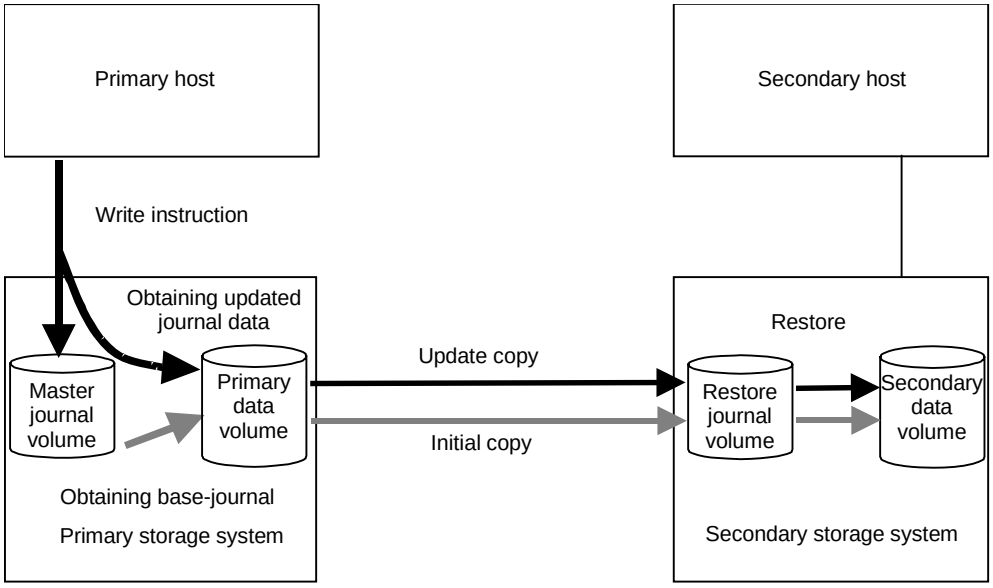


Figure 2-5 Remote copy operations

This section describes the following topics that are related to remote copy operations with URz:

- Initial copy operation (see the next section)

- Update copy operation
- Read and write I/O operations for URz volumes
- Secondary data volume write option
- Secondary data volume read option
- Difference management

Initial Copy Operations

Initial copy operations synchronize data in the primary data volume and data in the secondary data volume. Initial copy operations are performed independently from host I/Os. Initial copy operations are performed when you create a data volume pair or when you resynchronize a suspended pair. The initial copy operation copies the base-journal data that is obtained from the primary data volume at the primary storage system to the secondary storage system, and then restores the base-journal to the secondary data volume.

If the journal-obtain operation starts at the primary data volume, the primary storage system obtains all data of the primary data volume as the base-journal data, in sequence. The base-journal contains a replica of the entire data volume or a replica of updates to the data volume. The base-journal will be copied from the primary storage system to the secondary storage system after the secondary storage system issues a read-journal command. After a base-journal is copied to the secondary storage system, the base-journal will be stored in a restore journal volume in a restore journal group where the secondary data volume belongs. After that, the data in the restore journal volume will be restored to the secondary data volume, so that the data in the secondary data volume synchronizes with the data in the primary data volume.

The base-journal data is stored in the entire data volume or the area for the difference. The area for the difference is used when the difference resynchronization operation is performed. The journal data for the entire data volume is created when the data volume pair is created. The difference journal data is obtained when the pair status of the data volume changes from the **Suspending** status to the **Pair resync** status. Merging the difference bitmaps that are recorded on both primary and secondary data volumes enables you to obtain the journal data for only difference. When a data volume pair is suspended, the status of data that is updated from the host to the primary and secondary data volumes is recorded to the difference bitmap.

The base-journal data of primary storage system is stored to the secondary storage system journal volume according to the read command from the secondary storage system. After that, the base-journal data is restored from the journal volume to the secondary data volume. The initial copy operation will finish when all base-journals are restored.

Note: If you manipulate volumes (not journal groups) to create or resynchronize two or more data volume pairs within the same journal group, the base journal of one of the pairs will be stored in the restore journal volume, and then the base journal of another pair will be stored in the restore journal volume. Therefore, the operation for restoring the latter base journal will be delayed.

Note: You can specify **None** as the copy mode for initial copy operations. If the **None** mode is selected, initial copy operations will not be performed. The **None** mode must be used at your responsibility only when you are sure that data in the primary data volume is completely the same as data in the secondary data volumes.

Update Copy Operation

When a host performs a write I/O operation to a primary data volume of a data volume pair, an update copy operation will be performed. During an update copy operation, the update data that is written to the primary data volume is obtained as an *update journal*. The update journal will be copied to the secondary storage system, and then restored to the secondary data volume.

The primary storage system obtains update data that the host writes to the primary data volume as *update journals*. Update journals will be stored in journal volumes in the journal group that the primary data volume belongs to. When the secondary storage system issues "read journal" commands, update journals will be copied from the primary storage system to the secondary storage system asynchronously with completion of write I/Os by the host. Update journals that are copied to the secondary storage system will be stored in journal volumes in the journal group that the secondary data volume belongs to. The secondary storage system will restore the update journals to the secondary data volumes in the order write I/Os are made, so that the secondary data volumes will be updated just like the primary data volumes are updated.

Journal Group Operations

URz journal groups enable update sequence consistency to be maintained across a journal group of volumes. The primary data volumes and secondary data volumes of the pairs in a journal group must be located within one physical primary storage system and one physical secondary storage system (1-to-1 requirement).

When more than one data volume is updated, the order that the data volumes are updated is managed within the journal group that the data volumes belong to. Consistency in data updates is maintained among paired journal groups. URz uses journal groups to maintain data consistency among data volumes.

This section describes the following journal group operation options available in URz:

- Timer type option
- Journal group operations

Timer Type Option

The timer type option allows you to specify the method applied by the primary storage system to acquire the time-stamp information for each journal data. The following timer types are available for selection:

- **System**. When the **System** timer option is selected, the primary storage system acquires the time-stamp information for each journal data as follows. When a URz pair is established, the primary storage system reports state-change-interrupt (SCI) to all hosts. The host then issues a series of sense group commands to determine the device status change, and the primary storage system returns the same response as if the device had been added to an XRC session to activate I/O time-stamping for the device. Once I/O time-stamping is activated, the MVS IOS routine attaches the time-stamp information (contents of time-of-day (TOD) clock) to each write I/O operation for the device. The time-stamp indicates the time that the update was generated during start sub-channel (SSCH) at the main host system, and the time-stamp is transferred to the primary storage system at the beginning of each I/O operation.
- **Local**. **When** the **Local** timer option is selected, the primary storage system does not acquire time-stamp information from the host I/O time-stamping function.
- **None**. This timer option can be selected only when the copy direction of a URz volume **pair** is in reverse direction (i.e., from the secondary site to the primary site).

  When the **None** option is selected, the primary storage system acquires time-stamp information from the host I/O time-stamping function.

Journal Group Operations

URz provides the following group-based operations to simplify and expedite disaster or failure recovery procedures:

- Group operations at the primary storage system
  - Split all pairs in a journal group. See section Splitting a Mirror (Suspending a copy operation) for a description of the Suspend Range-Group suspend pair option.
  - Resume all suspended pairs in a journal group. See section Restoring a Mirror (Resuming a copy operation) for a description of the URz Resume Range-Group resume pair option.

  - Release all pairs in a journal group. See section Deleting Data Volumes from a Mirror (Ending a copy operation) for a description of the Delete Range-Group delete pair option.

- Group operations at the secondary storage system
  - Split (suspend pair) all pairs in a journal group. See section Splitting a Mirror (Suspending a copy operation) for a description of the Suspend Range-Group suspend pair option.
  - Release (delete pair) all pairs in a journal group regardless of their consistency status. See section Deleting Data Volumes from a Mirror (Ending a copy operation) for a description of the Delete Range-Group delete pair option.

Read and Write I/O Operations During URz Operations

When a primary storage system receives a read I/O for a URz primary data volume, the primary storage system performs the read from the primary data volume. If the read fails, the redundancy provided by RAID-1 or RAID-5 technology recovers the failure. The primary storage system does not read the URz secondary data volume for recovery.

When a primary storage system receives a write I/O for the primary data volume with PAIR status, the primary storage system performs the update copy operation, as well as writing to the primary data volume.

The primary storage system completes the primary data volume write operations independently of the update copy operations at the secondary data volume. The secondary storage system updates the data in the secondary data volume according to the write sequence number of journal data. This will maintain the data consistency between the primary and secondary data volumes. If the primary data volume write operation fails, the primary storage system reports a unit check and does not create the journal data for this operation. If the update copy operation fails, the secondary storage system suspends either the affected pair or all URz pairs in the journal group, depending on the type of failure. When the suspended URz pair or journal group is resumed (Resume Pair), the primary storage system and secondary storage system negotiate the resynchronization of the pair(s). See section Suspend Types for further information on URz suspend types.

During normal URz operations, the secondary storage system does not allow URz secondary data volumes to be online (mounted), and therefore hosts cannot read from and write to secondary data volumes. The URz secondary data volume write enable option allows write access to a secondary data volume while the pair is split (see the next section). The secondary data volume write option can only be enabled when you split the pair from the primary storage system.

Note: When you issue the **DEVSERV** command to the URz secondary data volume, **INDETERMINATE FAILING UNIT** is returned, if the status of URz secondary data volume is online. **INTERVENTION REQUIRED** is returned, if the status of URz secondary data volume is offline.

Secondary Data Volume Write Option

For additional flexibility, URz provides a secondary data volume write option (S-Vol. Write) which enables write I/O to the secondary data volume of a split URz pair. The secondary data volume write option can be selected by the user during the Suspend Pair operation and applies only to the selected pair(s). The secondary data volume write option can be accessed only when you are connected to the primary storage system. When you resync a split URz pair which has the secondary data volume write option enabled, the secondary storage system sends the secondary data volume track bitmap to the primary storage system, and the primary storage system merges the primary data volume and secondary data volume bitmaps to determine which tracks are out-of sync. This ensures proper resynchronization of the pair.

Secondary Data Volume Read Option

For additional flexibility, URz offers a special secondary data volume read option. The Hitachi representative enables the secondary data volume read option on the secondary storage system (mode 20). The secondary data volume read option allows you to read a URz secondary data volume only while the pair is suspended, that is, without having to release the pair. The secondary storage system will allow you to change only the VOLSER of the suspended secondary data volume, so that the secondary data volume can be online to the same host as the primary data volume while the pair is suspended. All other write I/Os will be rejected by the secondary subsystem. The primary storage system copies the VOLSER of the primary data volume back onto the secondary data volume when the pair is resumed. When the secondary data volume read option is not enabled and/or the pair is not suspended, the secondary storage system rejects all read and write I/Os to a URz secondary data volume.

Difference Management

The differential data (updated by write I/Os during split or suspension) between the primary data volume and the secondary data volume is stored in each track bitmap. When a split/suspended pair is resumed (Resume Pair), the primary storage system merges the primary data volume and secondary data volume bitmaps, and the differential data is copied to the secondary data volume.

Note: The number of bitmap areas affects the maximum possible number of pairs that can be created in the storage system. For details on the maximum possible number of pairs, see section The Maximum Number of Pairs.

Journal Processing

The URz journal data contains the primary data volume updates and the metadata information (associated control information), which enables the secondary storage system to maintain update consistency of the URz secondary data volumes. URz journal processing includes:

- Creating and storing journals at the primary storage system (see the next section),
- Copying journals to the secondary storage system
- Storing journals at the secondary storage system
- Selecting and restoring journals at the secondary storage system
- Types of journals

Journal Processing at the Primary Storage System

When a primary storage system performs an update (host-requested write I/O) on a URz primary data volume, the primary storage system creates a journal data to be transferred to secondary storage system. The journal data will be stored into the cache at first, and then into the journal volume.

Metadata information will be attached to journal data (see Table 2-3). When base-journal is obtained, only metadata information is created and stored in UR cache or the journal volume.

Table 2-3 Metadata Information

Type	Description
Journal type	Type of journal (e.g., base-journal or update journal)
LDEV No. (data)	The number of primary data volume that stores the original data
Original data storing position	The primary data volume slot number, and the start and end of sub-block number (data length)
LDEV No. (journal)	The volume number of master journal volume that stores the journal data
Journal data storing position	The slot number of master journal volume, and the start sub-block number
Journal sequence number	The sequence number that is assigned when the journal is obtained
Timestamp	The time when the journal data is obtained

The journal sequence number indicates the primary data volume write sequence that the primary storage system has created for each journal group. The journal data is transferred to the secondary storage system asynchronously with the host I/O. The secondary storage system updates the secondary data volume in the same order as the primary data volume according to the sequence number information in the journal.

Note: URz processing continues uninterrupted if the SVP reboots or even if the SVP fails.

Types of Journal

In addition to the journal data for updating, the primary storage system sends control information to the secondary storage system. This control information indicates when volume pair status changes and when a primary storage system power-off sequence is initiated, and also maintain sequence numbers in periods of low host activities.

Journal Processing at the Secondary Storage System

When a primary storage system receives a read journal command from a secondary storage system, the primary storage system sends the journal data to the secondary storage system. The secondary storage system's initiator ports act as host processor channels and issue special I/O operations, called remote I/Os (RIOs), to the primary storage system. The RIO transfers the journal data in FBA format using a single channel command. The primary storage system can send several journal data using a single RIO, even if their sequence numbers are not contiguous. Therefore, the journal data are usually sent to the secondary storage system in a different order than the journal data were created at the primary storage system. The secondary storage system ensures that the journal data are applied to the secondary data volume in the correct sequence. This method of remote I/O provides the most efficient use of primary storage system-to-secondary storage system link resources.

Note: You must make sure that your channel extenders are capable of supporting remote I/O. For further details, please contact your Hitachi account team.

Storing Journal at the Secondary Storage System

A secondary storage system receives the journal data that is transferred from a primary storage system according to the read journal command. The journal data will be stored into the cache at first, and then into the journal volume.

Note: The primary storage system does not remove the target journal data from its master journal volume until it receives the sequence numbers of restored journal which is give to the read journal command from the secondary storage system. This is true even if the primary storage system and secondary storage system are connected via a channel extender product.

Selecting and Restoring Journal at the Secondary Storage System

The secondary storage system selects journal data to be promoted to formal data (or " restored") as follows:

1. The secondary storage system gives the number as the management information to distinguish the journal data arrival to the sequence number that is assigned to the journal data from the primary storage system. If the number is 1, the journal data arrived at the secondary storage system. If the number is 0, the journal data has not arrived yet. The secondary storage system determines whether the journal data should be settled or not according to this number. If the journal data has not arrived yet, the secondary storage system waits for the journal data.
2. When the top of queue in the journal group indicates the journal data arrival, the secondary storage system selects the journal data which has the lowest sequence number, and then settles this journal data.
3. The secondary storage system repeats steps (1) and (2) to select and settle the journal data.

Figure 2-6 illustrates the journal data selection and settling at the secondary storage system. This diagram shows that journal data S1 arrives at the secondary storage system because the management information indicates 1. The secondary storage system selects journal data S1 to be settled, because S1 is the lowest sequence number. When S1 is removed from the queue of sequence numbers, journal data S2 becomes the top entry, but it has not arrived yet. The management information of journal data S2 is 0. The secondary storage system waits journal data S2. When journal data S2 arrives, the secondary storage system selects S2 as the next journal data to be settled. The journal data selected by the secondary storage system is marked as "host-dirty" and treated as formal data.

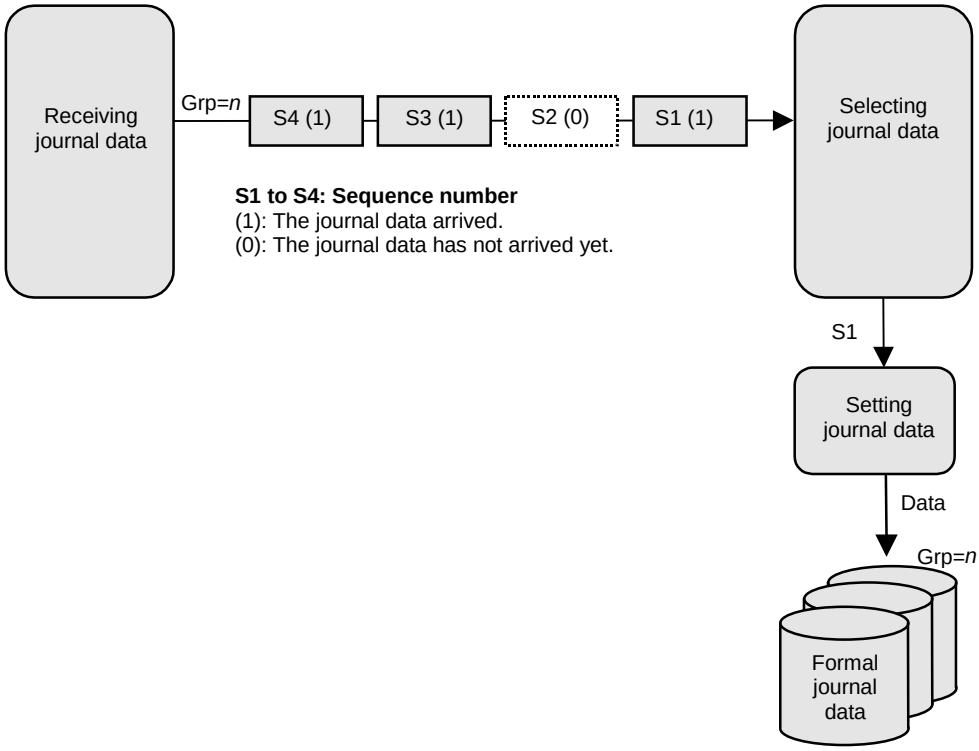


Figure 2-6 Selecting and Settling Journal at the Secondary Storage System

The secondary storage system settles and restores the journal data to the secondary data volume as follows:

- Journal data stored in the cache

  The journal data is copied to the corresponding cached track and promoted to formal data.

- Journal data stored in the restore journal volume

  The journal data is read from the restore journal volume to cache. The journal data that is read to cache is copied to the existing cache track and promoted to formal data. After that, the space for the restore journal volume is released.

URz Delta Resync Operation

When you are using URz and TCz Synchronous in a 3DC multi-target configuration, URz provides delta resync operation as one of the solutions for failures in primary site. In a 3DC multi-target configuration, there are one primary site and two secondary sites; TCz Synchronous and URz secondary sites. For detailed information about 3DC multi-target configuration, see section TCz Synchronous (3DC Multi-target Configuration).

If a failure occurs on the primary site in 3DC multi-target configuration, you need to use Business Continuity Manager to use the TCz Synchronous secondary site as the primary site. If you perform a delta resync operation after the TCz Synchronous secondary site becomes a primary site. The URz pair will be restored quickly by the delta resync operation, you will not need to wait for a long time before you can use the URz data volumes again.

Delta resync operation consists of the two processes; one is the process for the preparation before the failure occurs, the other is the process for the recovery after the failure occurs.

- Processing for the preparation before the failure occurs (see the next section)
- Processing for the recovery after the failure occurs (see section Switching the Master Journal Group of URz)

Journal Obtain in TCz Synchronous Secondary Site

To perform delta resync operation when a failure occurs, you also need to obtain the journal data in the TCz Synchronous secondary site of 3DC multi-target configuration. Specify the TCz Synchronous R-VOL in TCz Synchronous secondary site as the primary data volume, and specify the data volume in URz secondary site as the secondary data volume, in order to create a URz pair for the delta resync operation.

When you create a URz pair for delta resync operation, the differential data of data volumes in TCz Synchronous primary site and secondary site will be stored in the journal volumes in TCz Synchronous secondary site as journal data. The following figure shows an example.

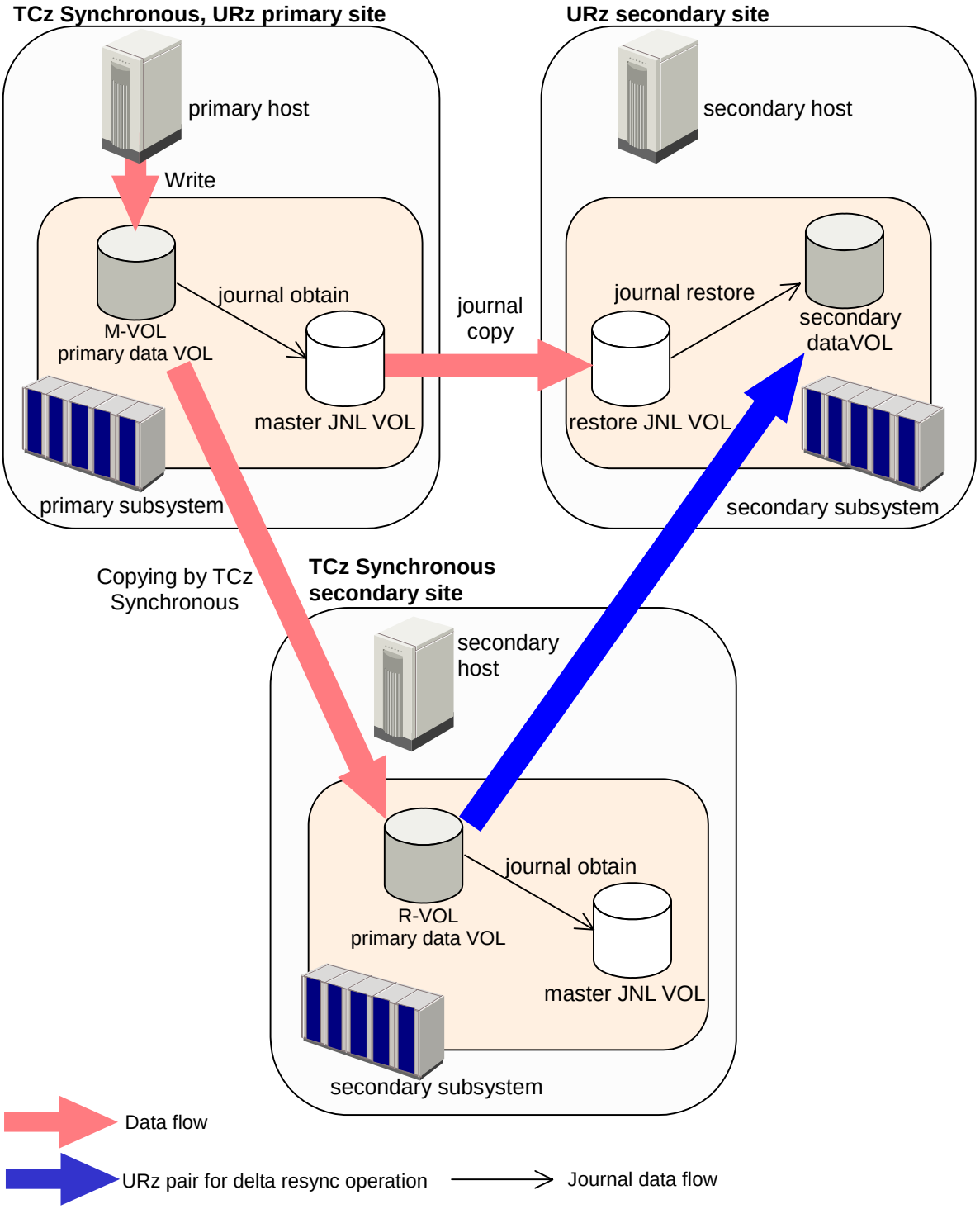


Figure 2-7 Delta Resync Setting in 3DC Multi-target Configuration (Before Failure Occurs)

As shown in

Figure 2-7, a URz pair created with the delta resync option is defined as a pair but no copy operation is performed (Hold status). Actual copy operation will not be performed until when the failure occurs and delta resync operation is performed. Note that there are several requirements to create a URz pair for delta resync operation, such as you need to specify the unused mirror ID. For detailed information about the requirements of creating a URz pair for delta resync operation, see section Requirements for Creating URz Pair for Delta Resync Operation.

For the information about the delta resync operation that will be performed when a failure occurs in the configuration shown in

Figure 2-7, see the next section. Note that the URz pair need to be in Hold status if you want to form the delta resync operation when the failure occurs. However, the URz pair status may be changed to Hlde for example when the cache memory or shared memory error occurs in TCz Synchronous secondary site, or when no journal cannot be obtained in TCz Synchronous secondary site because of the failure in the master journal volume or occurrence of the pinned track. If the status of the URz pair for delta resync operation changes to Hlde, follow the steps in section Restoring a Pair of Data Volumes and change the pair status to Hold again.

Switching the Master Journal Group of URz

When a failure occurs on the primary site in

Figure 2-7 (3DC multi-target configuration), the URz pair for delta resync operation can use the journal group in TCz Synchronous secondary site as the master journal group. To switch the master journal group, first change TCz Synchronous secondary site to the primary site by using Business Continuity Manager, then perform the delta resync operation on the primary data volume of the URz pair in Hold status. The following figure shows an example.

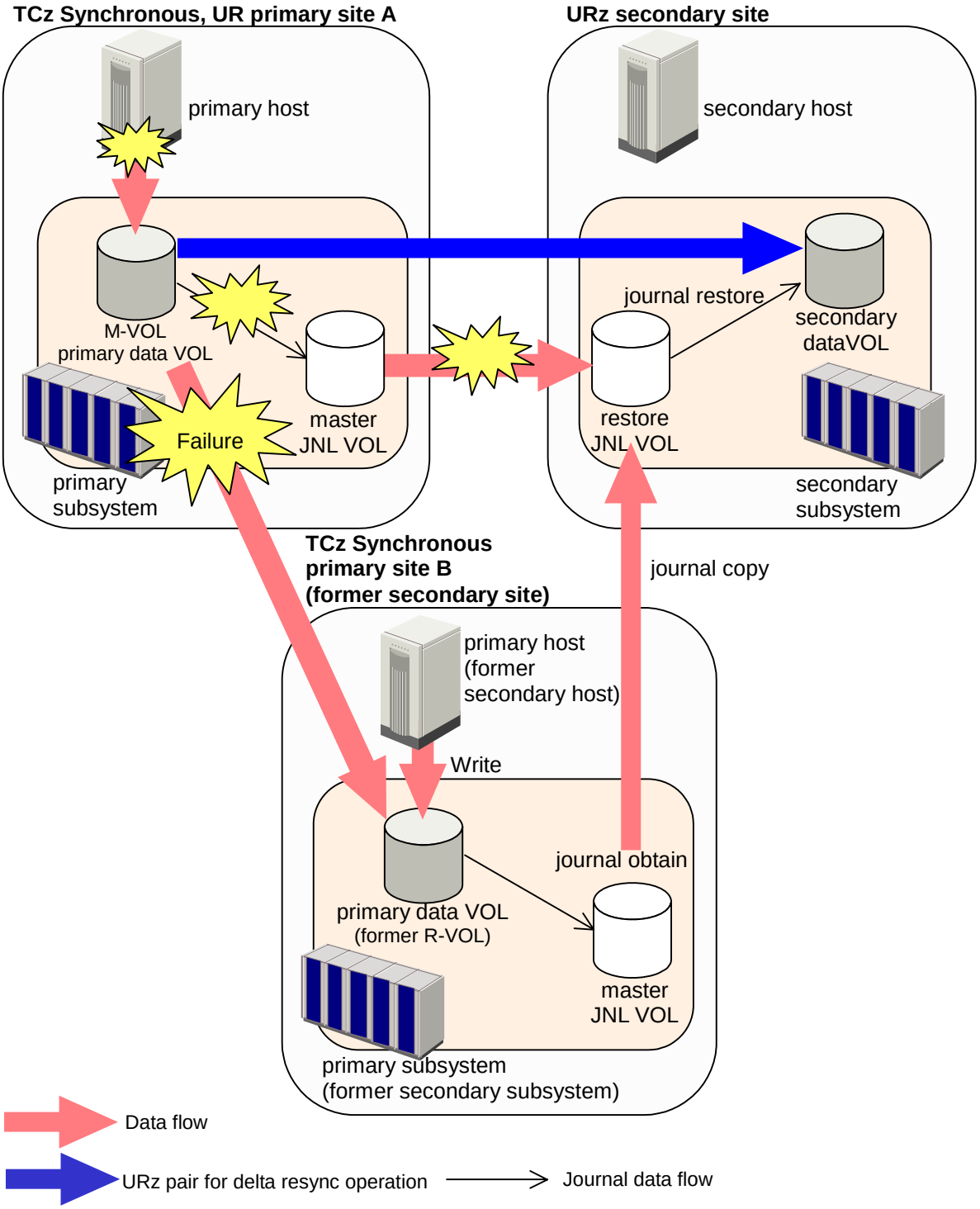


Figure 2-8 Delta Resync Setting in 3DC Multi-target Configuration (After Failure Occurred)

In Figure 2-8, because a failure occurs in the primary site A, Business Continuity Manager is used to change the former TCz Synchronous secondary site to the primary site B. If you perform delta resync operation in this situation, the URz pair for delta resync operation in Figure 2-7 will be synchronized and usable.

When you perform delta resync operation, first the journal data in the primary site B are copied to the URz secondary site by journal copy. In this journal copy, only the journal data which is not yet restored to the secondary data volume in the URz secondary site are copied in chronological order. When the journal copy completes, journal restore takes place in the URz secondary site.

In delta resync operation, the status of the URz pair will not change to Pending Duplex but Duplex. This is because delta resync operation copies only the really necessary data by journal copying. Compared to the usual way which copies the whole data in the primary data volume, delta resync operation requires shorter time for the recovery of the URz pair after a failure occurs.

Note: When the total capacity of stored journal data exceeds 80% of the journal volume of TCz Synchronous secondary site, old journal data will be deleted automatically. Therefore, if the total capacity of the journal data which is not restored to the URz secondary data volume exceeds 80% of the journal volume, the secondary data volume will not be able to be restored completely by copying the journal data to the restore journal volume in the URz secondary site. In that case, according to the setting of the journal group option, whole data in the primary data volume will be copied to the secondary data volume, or delta resync operation finishes without any processing.

Usually, if the pair between TCz Synchronous primary site and secondary site is synchronized periodically, the total capacity of the journal data which is not restored to the URz secondary site will not exceed 80% of the journal volume. Though, for example if the URz pair is suspended and the pair has not been resynchronized for a long time, journal data of more than 80% of the journal volume capacity may be stored before they are restored to URz secondary data volume. In such case, note that you may not perform delta resync operation properly.

Warning: Even if the capacity of the journal data does not exceed 80% of the journal volume, note that journal data will or may be destroyed in the following cases.

- When you restore the TCz Synchronous pair, then updated the M-VOL
- When you restore the URz pair between the primary site and the URz secondary site, then updated the M-VOL
- When the retry processing occurs because of a delay of the M-VOL update
- When the update of the TCz Synchronous R-VOL is delayed

As shown in Figure 2-8, after delta resync operation is performed properly and the primary site A is recovered from the failure, then the URz pair between the primary site A and the URz secondary site will be the pair for delta resync operation and become prepared for the failure in the primary site B. For information about the requirements to perform delta resync operation properly, see section Requirements for Performing Delta Resync Operation.

Pair Status

URz displays the pair status for each data volume of specified CU Image (CUI) in the connected *USP V* storage system. Table 2-4 lists and describes the URz data volume pair status descriptions. The primary storage system maintains the status of the primary data volume and can change the pair status of the primary data volume and secondary data volume. The secondary storage system maintains the status of the secondary data volume and can change the pair status of the secondary data volume but not the primary data volume. The primary storage system will detect when the secondary storage system changes the secondary data volume status (if the path status is normal) and will change the primary data volume status accordingly. You can display the detailed pair status information at the Storage Navigator remote console PC (URz Pairdisplay window) or at the host processor (Business Continuity Manager Pairdisplay command).

A volume which is not assigned to a URz data volume pair has the status *simplex*. When a URz data volume pair is started, the primary storage system changes the status of the primary data volume and secondary data volume to *pending duplex*. When the initial copy operation is complete, the primary storage system changes the status of both data volumes to *duplex*. When a pair is suspended from the primary storage system, the primary storage system changes the status of the primary data volume and secondary data volume (if the path status is normal) to *suspended*. When a pair is suspended from the secondary storage system, the secondary storage system changes the status of the secondary data volume to *suspended*, and the primary storage system detects the pair suspension (if the path status is normal) and changes the primary data volume status to *suspended*. When you release a pair from the primary storage system, the primary storage system changes the status of the primary data volume and secondary data volume (if the path status is normal) to *simplex*. When you release a pair from the secondary storage system, the secondary storage system changes the secondary data volume status to *simplex*, and the primary storage system detects the pair release (if the path status is normal) and changes the primary data volume status to *suspended*.

When a URz data volume pair is split or suspended, the primary storage system generates a service information message (SIM) to notify the host(s). If SNMP is installed and operational for USP V, this SIM results in an SNMP trap which indicates the reason for suspension.

- URz Pair Status

  The URz Suspending and Deleting (release) transitional states occur when a request to change URz pair status has been accepted, but the change to the requested status (*suspended*, or *simplex*) is not yet complete. These states are not reported to the host. In the case of Suspending, both the user and the primary storage system can request the status change. In the case of Deleting (release), only the user can request the status change. If the user requested the status change, the final status is reported at the end of the transition. If an error caused the status to change to *suspended*, the suspended status is reported at the beginning of the transition.

  After a storage system receives a request for splitting or releasing a pair in **Flush** mode, the status of the pair will remain **Suspending** or **Deleting** until the journal in the master journal group is restored into the restore journal group and the pair is completely split or released. To calculate the time during which the pair remains **Suspending** or **Deleting**, use the following equation:

  $$C \times (u \div 100) \times 1{,}024 \div V \quad \text{(The unit is seconds)}$$

  where:

  – **C** is the total capacity of the master journal volume. The unit is megabytes.

  – u is the usage rate of data in the master journal volume. The unit is percent.

  – V is the data transfer speed between the primary and the secondary storage system. The unit is MB/s (megabytes per second).

  To find the usage rate of a journal volume, use the monitoring feature (see Usage Monitor Window).

  The URz *SEQCHK* status is indicated when a URz pair assigned to a consistency group with the **System** timer type accepts a non-time-stamped update from the primary system. The *SEQCHK* status does not affect URz copy activities and will be removed when the next time-stamped update is successfully copied to the secondary data volume. However, if a disaster or system failure occurs before the next time-stamped update, the update sequence consistency between the secondary data volume and other secondary data volumes in the consistency group is not ensured. To ensure effective disaster recovery, you should detect and remove the source of the *SEQCHK* status. The *SEQCHK* status can be caused by any of the following:

  – An application may issue update I/Os bypassing the MVS standard I/O procedure.

  – The I/O time-stamping function may not be active at the primary site.

  – This URz pair status describes:

    - URz suspend types (see the next section),
    - URz suspension condition (see section Suspension Condition).

Table 2-4 URz Data Volume Pair Status

Pair Status	Description
Simplex	This volume is not currently assigned to a URz data volume pair. This volume does not belong in the journal group. When this volume is added to a URz data volume pair, its status will change to *pending duplex*.
Pending Duplex	The initial copy operation for this pair is in progress. This data volume pair is not yet synchronized. When the initial copy is complete, the status changes to *duplex*.
Duplex	This data volume pair is synchronized. Updates to the primary data volume are duplicated on the secondary data volume.
Suspended (see Table 2-5 for suspend types)	This data volume pair is not synchronized. – When the primary storage system detects a URz suspension condition (see section Suspension Condition), the primary storage system changes the primary data volume status and secondary data volume status (if possible) to *suspended*. – When the secondary storage system detects a URz suspension condition (see section Suspension Condition), the secondary storage system changes the secondary data volume status to *suspended*. – When you suspend a pair from the primary storage system, the primary storage system changes the status of the primary data volume and secondary data volume (if possible) to *suspended*. When you suspend a pair from the secondary storage system, the secondary storage system changes the status of the secondary data volume to *suspended*. – When the primary storage system detects that the pair was suspended or released from the secondary storage system, the primary storage system changes the status of the primary data volume to *suspended*.
Suspending	This pair is not synchronized. This pair is in transition from *duplex* or *pending duplex* to *suspended*. When the suspension is requested (by user, primary storage system, or secondary storage system), the status of all affected pairs changes to *suspending*. When the suspension is complete, the status changes to *suspended*.
Deleting (releasing)	This pair is not synchronized. This pair is in transition from *duplex*, *pending duplex*, or *suspended* to *simplex*. When the delete pair operation is requested (by user), the status of all affected pairs changes to *deleting* (releasing). When the delete pair operation is complete, the status changes to *simplex*.
SEQCHK	The secondary storage system encountered a non-time-stamped journal data for a URz pair using the **System** timer type option. This status can be displayed at the primary storage system and secondary storage system, but the primary storage system may not have the most current information. Always use the pair status information displayed at the secondary storage system for disaster recovery.
Hold	The pair is prepared for delta resync operation. When the status of primary data volume is Hold, the write data for the TCz Synchronous R-VOL is stored in the master journal volume. Only the delta resync operation, releasing operation, or changing pair option operation are allowed on the pairs in Hold status.
Hlde	An error occurred on the pair in Hold status. When the status of primary data volume is Hlde, the write data for the TCz Synchronous S-VOL will not be stored in the master journal volume. Only recovering pair status to standby (Hold) operation, releasing operation, or changing pair option operation are allowed on the pairs in Hlde status.

Suspend Types

Table 2-5 lists and describes the URz suspend types, which indicate the reason for the suspension. A URz pair can be suspended by the user at any time after the initial copy operation is complete. The user must suspend a URz pair in order to perform ICKDSF maintenance on the primary data volume or to access the secondary data volume (read only mode).

When a URz pair is suspended by the user, the primary storage system and secondary storage system ensure synchronization by either completing or discarding any pending update copy operations according to the user-specified drain/purge suspend option.

A URz pair is suspended by the primary storage system when the following suspension conditions are detected. A URz pair can also be suspended by the secondary storage system (see section Suspension Condition).

- When the primary storage system detects that the user has released the volume pair from the secondary storage system (e.g., to access an secondary data volume at the secondary site),
- When the primary storage system detects an error condition related to the secondary storage system, secondary data volume, or a URz journal data operation,
- When the secondary storage system cannot execute DFW (DASD fast write) to the secondary data volume (only if DFW required is selected), or
- When the primary storage system is unable to communicate with the secondary storage system.

For more information on URz journal data operations, see section Suspension Condition.

When a URz pair is suspended, the primary storage system stops performing update copy operations to the secondary data volume. Moreover, the primary storage system and secondary storage system keep track of any journal data that were discarded during suspension, and the primary storage system continues accepting write I/Os for the primary data volume and keeps track of the primary data volume tracks which are updated while the pair is suspended.

A suspended URz secondary data volume has an additional status called the consistency status which is displayed only at the secondary storage system. The consistency status of a suspended URz secondary data volume indicates its update sequential consistency with respect to the other secondary data volumes in the same group.

Table 2-7 lists and describes the consistency status descriptions for suspended URz secondary data volumes.

When a URz pair is suspended, whether user-requested or due to failure, the primary storage system generates sense information to notify the host(s).

Table 2-5 Suspend Types

Suspend Type	Applies to	Description
Secondary data volume by operator	Primary data volume, secondary data volume	The user suspended the pair from the primary storage system or secondary storage system using the **secondary data volume** option.
By MCU	Secondary data volume	The secondary storage system received a request from the primary storage system to suspend the volume pair. The primary data volume suspend type is *Primary data volume by Operator* or *Secondary data volume by Operator*.
By RCU	Primary data volume	The primary storage system detected an error condition at the secondary storage system which caused the primary storage system to suspend the URz volume pair. The secondary data volume suspend type is *By MCU*.
Delete Pair to RCU	Primary data volume	The primary storage system detected that the secondary data volume status changed to *simplex* because the user released the pair from the secondary storage system. The pair cannot be resumed because the secondary data volume does not have the *suspended* status.
Secondary Data Volume Failure	Primary data volume	The primary storage system detected an error during communication with the secondary storage system or an I/O error during update copy. In this case, the secondary data volume suspend type is usually *By MCU*.
MCU IMPL	Primary data volume, secondary data volume	The primary storage system could not find valid control information in its nonvolatile memory during the IMPL procedure. This condition occurs only if the primary storage system is completely without power for more than 48 hours (e.g., power failure and fully discharged backup batteries).
Initial Copy failed	Primary data volume, secondary data volume	The volume pair was suspended before the initial copy operation was complete. The data on the secondary data volume is not identical to the data on the primary data volume.
JNL Cache Overflow	Primary data volume, secondary data volume	The data volume pair was suspended because it was highly likely that journal data will overflow.
MCU P/S OFF	Secondary data volume	The primary storage system is powered off.

Table 2-6 Consistency Status for Suspended URz Secondary Data Volumes

Consistency Status	Description
Volume	This URz volume pair was suspended alone. Update sequence consistency between this secondary data volume and other secondary data volumes in this journal group is not ensured. This secondary data volume cannot be used for disaster recovery at the secondary system. This status is indicated when: – This volume pair was suspended by a user-initiated suspend pair operation with the URz **Suspend** option set to **Volume**. – This volume pair was suspended due to a failure that did not affect the entire consistency group, and the **Error Level** pair option for this pair is set to **Volume**.

Group	This URz volume pair was suspended along with the other pair in its journal group. Update sequence consistency between this secondary data volume and other secondary data volumes in this journal group is ensured. This secondary data volume can be used for disaster recovery at the secondary system (after releasing the URz volume pair from the secondary storage system). This status is indicated when: – This volume pair was suspended by a user-initiated suspend pair operation with the URz **Suspend** option set to **Group**. – All volume pairs in this journal group were suspended due to a failure that affected the entire journal group (not just one pair) (e.g., primary storage system-secondary storage system communication failure). – The volume pair was suspended due to a failure that did not affect the entire group.

Suspension Condition

URz operations also involve suspension conditions related to asynchronous operations. Both the primary storage system and secondary storage system can detect URz suspension conditions and suspend URz pairs.

The URz suspension conditions described in Table 2-7 and indicates which CU detects the condition and which pairs are suspended. See section General Troubleshooting for troubleshooting information for URz suspension conditions.

Table 2-7 URz Suspension Condition

Suspension Condition	Detected by:	URz Pairs to be Suspended
The secondary storage system could not copy the journal data successfully due to a hardware failure or logic error.	RCU	All URz secondary data volumes in the journal groups, or the affected secondary data volume.
The secondary storage system detected a logical error while selecting the journal data to be restored.	RCU	All the URz secondary data volumes in the journal group, or only the affected secondary data volume, depending on the type of failure.
The secondary storage system could not restore the journal data due to a hardware failure, track condition, or logical error.	RCU	

The primary storage system stores the differential bitmap per URz primary data volume in the shared memory. The secondary storage system stores the differential bitmap per URz secondary data volume in the shared memory. When a URz pair is suspended, the tracks which contain the following journal are marked in the differential bitmap as modified (to be copied during the resume pair operation):

- The journal data that were created by the primary storage system but not yet sent to the secondary storage system.

  After marking these primary data volume tracks as modified, the primary storage system discards these journal data.

- The journal data that were sent to the secondary storage system but not acknowledged by the secondary storage system.

After marking these primary data volume tracks as modified, the primary storage system discards these journal data. This ensures that journal data lost during transmission to the secondary storage system are identified and marked.

- The journal data that reached the secondary storage system but have not yet been settled.

  After marking these secondary data volume tracks as modified, the secondary storage system discards these journal data.

- The primary data volume records updated by host-requested write I/Os after the pair was suspended.

When a suspended URz pair is resumed (resynchronized), the contents of the secondary storage system's cylinder/track bitmap are sent to the primary storage system and merged into the primary storage system's bitmap. The primary storage system then performs the resync operation according to the merged bitmap. This ensures that all the tracks including the discarded journal data are resynchronized at this time.

Business Continuity Manager Support

The USP V storage systems on which URz is installed support the Business Continuity Manager commands. If the host system console issues the Business Continuity Manager commands to the USP V storage system, the URz pair operations can be performed. The Business Continuity Manager commands allow you to add pairs, suspend pairs, resume pairs, release pairs, monitor the pair status, add DKC, and delete DKC. Table 2-8 and Table 2-9 explain the USP V system adapter ID(SAID) values. For further information and instructions on Business Continuity Manager, please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

Table 2-8 SAID Values for the PATH LINK Parameter (FRONT CL1)

Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID
1E	CL1-A	X'0000'	1G	CL1-J	X'0008'	1K	CL9-N	X'008C'	1B	CL9-E	X'0084'
(Basic)	CL3-A	X'0020'	(Add2)	CL3-J	X'0028'	(Add4)	CLB-N	X'00AC'	(Add6)	CLB-E	X'00A4'
	CL5-A	X'0040'		CL5-J	X'0048'		CLD-N	X'00CC'		CLD-E	X'00C4'
	CL7-A	X'0060'		CL7-J	X'0068'		CLF-N	X'00EC'		CLF-E	X'00E4'
	CL1-B	X'0001'		CL1-K	X'0009'		CL9-P	X'008D'		CL9-F	X'0085'
	CL3-B	X'0021'		CL3-K	X'0029'		CLB-P	X'00AD'		CLB-F	X'00A5'
	CL5-B	X'0041'		CL5-K	X'0049'		CLD-P	X'00CD'		CLD-F	X'00C5'
	CL7-B	X'0061'		CL7-K	X'0069'		CLF-P	X'00ED'		CLF-F	X'00E5'
	CL1-C	X'0002'		CL1-L	X'000A'		CL9-Q	X'008E'		CL9-G	X'0086'
	CL3-C	X'0022'		CL3-L	X'002A'		CLB-Q	X'00AE'		CLB-G	X'00A6'
	CL5-C	X'0042'		CL5-L	X'004A'		CLD-Q	X'00CE'		CLD-G	X'00C6'
	CL7-C	X'0062'		CL7-L	X'006A'		CLF-Q	X'00EE'		CLF-G	X'00E6'
	CL1-D	X'0003'		CL1-M	X'000B'		CL9-R	X'008F'		CL9-H	X'0087'
	CL3-D	X'0023'		CL3-M	X'002B'		CLB-R	X'00AF'		CLB-H	X'00A7'
	CL5-D	X'0043'		CL5-M	X'004B'		CLD-R	X'00CF'		CLD-H	X'00C7'
	CL7-D	X'0063'		CL7-M	X'006B'		CLF-R	X'00EF'		CLF-H	X'00E7'
1F	CL1-E	X'0004'	1H	CL1-N	X'000C'	1L	CL9-J	X'0088'	1A	CL9-A	X'0080'
(Add1)	CL3-E	X'0024'	(Add3)	CL3-N	X'002C'	(Add5)	CLB-J	X'00A8'	(Add7)	CLB-A	X'00A0'
	CL5-E	X'0044'		CL5-N	X'004C'		CLD-J	X'00C8'		CLD-A	X'00C0'
	CL7-E	X'0064'		CL7-N	X'006C'		CLF-J	X'00E8'		CLF-A	X'00E0'
	CL1-F	X'0005'		CL1-P	X'000D'		CL9-K	X'0089'		CL9-B	X'0081'
	CL3-F	X'0025'		CL3-P	X'002D'		CLB-K	X'00A9'		CLB-B	X'00A1'

	CL5-F	X'0045'		CL5-P	X'004D'		CLD-K	X'00C9'		CLD-B	X'00C1'
	CL7-F	X'0065'		CL7-P	X'006D'		CLF-K	X'00E9'		CLF-B	X'00E1'
	CL1-G	X'0006'		CL1-Q	X'000E'		CL9-L	X'008A'		CL9-C	X'0082'
	CL3-G	X'0026'		CL3-Q	X'002E'		CLB-L	X'00AA'		CLB-C	X'00A2'
	CL5-G	X'0046'		CL5-Q	X'004E'		CLD-L	X'00CA'		CLD-C	X'00C2'
	CL7-G	X'0066'		CL7-Q	X'006E'		CLF-L	X'00EA'		CLF-C	X'00E2'
	CL1-H	X'0007'		CL1-R	X'000F'		CL9-M	X'008B'		CL9-D	X'0083'
	CL3-H	X'0027'		CL3-R	X'002F'		CLB-M	X'00AB'		CLB-D	X'00A3'
	CL5-H	X'0047'		CL5-R	X'004F'		CLD-M	X'00CB'		CLD-D	X'00C3'
	CL7-H	X'0067'		CL7-R	X'006F'		CLF-M	X'00EB'		CLF-D	X'00E3'

Table 2-9 SAID Values for the PATH LINK Parameter (REAR CL2)

Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID	Package Location	Port	SAID
2Q	CL2-A	X'0010'	2T	CL2-J	X'0018'	2W	CLA-N	X'009C'	2N	CLA-E	X'0094'
(Basic)	CL4-A	X'0030'	(Add2)	CL4-J	X'0038'	(Add4)	CLC-N	X'00BC'	(Add6)	CLC-E	X'00B4'
	CL6-A	X'0050'		CL6-J	X'0058'		CLE-N	X'00DC'		CLE-E	X'00D4'
	CL8-A	X'0070'		CL8-J	X'0078'		CLG-N	X'00FC'		CLG-E	X'00F4'
	CL2-B	X'0011'		CL2-K	X'0019'		CLA-P	X'009D'		CLA-F	X'0095'
	CL4-B	X'0031'		CL4-K	X'0039'		CLC-P	X'00BD'		CLC-F	X'00B5'
	CL6-B	X'0051'		CL6-K	X'0059'		CLE-P	X'00DD'		CLE-F	X'00D5'
	CL8-B	X'0071'		CL8-K	X'0079'		CLG-P	X'00FD'		CLG-F	X'00F5'
	CL2-C	X'0012'		CL2-L	X'001A'		CLA-Q	X'009E'		CLA-G	X'0096'
	CL4-C	X'0032'		CL4-L	X'003A'		CLC-Q	X'00BE'		CLC-G	X'00B6'
	CL6-C	X'0052'		CL6-L	X'005A'		CLE-Q	X'00DE'		CLE-G	X'00D6'
	CL8-C	X'0072'		CL8-L	X'007A'		CLG-Q	X'00FE'		CLG-G	X'00F6'
	CL2-D	X'0013'		CL2-M	X'001B'		CLA-R	X'009F'		CLA-H	X'0097'

	CL4-D	X'0033'		CL4-M	X'003B'		CLC-R	X'00BF'		CLC-H	X'00B7'
	CL6-D	X'0053'		CL6-M	X'005B'		CLE-R	X'00DF'		CLE-H	X'00D7'
	CL8-D	X'0073'		CL8-M	X'007B'		CLG-R	X'00FF'		CLG-H	X'00F7'
2R	CL2-E	X'0014'	2U	CL2-N	X'001C'	2X	CLA-J	X'0098'	2M	CLA-A	X'0090'
(Add1)	CL4-E	X'0034'	(Add3)	CL4-N	X'003C'	(Add5)	CLC-J	X'00B8'	(Add7)	CLC-A	X'00B0'
	CL6-E	X'0054'		CL6-N	X'005C'		CLE-J	X'00D8'		CLE-A	X'00D0'
	CL8-E	X'0074'		CL8-N	X'007C'		CLG-J	X'00F8'		CLG-A	X'00F0'
	CL2-F	X'0015'		CL2-P	X'001D'		CLA-K	X'0099'		CLA-B	X'0091'
	CL4-F	X'0035'		CL4-P	X'003D'		CLC-K	X'00B9'		CLC-B	X'00B1'
	CL6-F	X'0055'		CL6-P	X'005D'		CLE-K	X'00D9'		CLE-B	X'00D1'
	CL8-F	X'0075'		CL8-P	X'007D'		CLG-K	X'00F9'		CLG-B	X'00F1'
	CL2-G	X'0016'		CL2-Q	X'001E'		CLA-L	X'009A'		CLA-C	X'0092'
	CL4-G	X'0036'		CL4-Q	X'003E'		CLC-L	X'00BA'		CLC-C	X'00B2'
	CL6-G	X'0056'		CL6-Q	X'005E'		CLE-L	X'00DA'		CLE-C	X'00D2'
	CL8-G	X'0076'		CL8-Q	X'007E'		CLG-L	X'00FA'		CLG-C	X'00F2'
	CL2-H	X'0017'		CL2-R	X'001F'		CLA-M	X'009B'		CLA-D	X'0093'
	CL4-H	X'0037'		CL4-R	X'003F'		CLC-M	X'00BB'		CLC-D	X'00B3'
	CL6-H	X'0057'		CL6-R	X'005F'		CLE-M	X'00DB'		CLE-D	X'00D3'
	CL8-H	X'0077'		CL8-R	X'007F'		CLG-M	X'00FB'		CLG-D	X'00F3'

Command Device

To use Business Continuity Manager, you must set the command device for it separately from the command device for an open system. The command device for Business Continuity Manager can be set only from Business Continuity Manager. For information about Business Continuity Manager, please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User Guide and Reference.*

You can use Storage Navigator to find the command device for Business Continuity Manager. To find the command device, click **File**, and **Basic Information** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window, and then select the **LDEV** tab in the **Basic Information Display** window. For detailed information on the **Basic Information Display** window, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide.*

3

Preparing for Universal Replicator z/OS Operations

This chapter describes URz operations involving the USP V primary and secondary storage systems, the remote copy connections between the primary \secondary storage systems, and the host(s) at the primary and secondary sites, as well as the licensed URz remote console software:

- ☐ Requirements and Restrictions for URz
- ☐ Installing the Hardware
- ☐ Enabling the URz Option(s)
- ☐ Using Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems
- ☐ Interoperability with Other Products and Functions
- ☐ Planning of Journal Volumes
- ☐ Contributing Factors for Data Transfer Speed between Storage Systems
- ☐ Configuration that TagmaStore USP/NSC and USP V is Connected

Requirements and Restrictions for URz

URz has the following requirements and restrictions:

- System requirements (see the next section)
- Disk track format
- One-to-one volume copy operations
- Duplicate VOLSER
- Volume type
- Journal group
- Accessing URz primary data volumes and secondary data volumes
- Cache and NVS
- Duplicate volume

System Requirements

URz operations involve the USP V primary storage systems and secondary storage systems containing the primary and secondary data volumes, the remote copy connections between the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems, the host(s) at the primary and secondary sites, and the licensed URz remote console software. The URz system requirements are:

- primary storage system: USP V storage system with URz installed.
- secondary storage system: USP V storage system with URz installed.

Note: URz can coexist with UR in the same USP V storage system.

Note: The remote copy connection with the NAS interface is not supported.

- Remote copy connections – fibre channel (see section Setting up Remote Copy Connections):
- Multimode or single-mode optical fibre cables are required at both the primary storage system and secondary storage system.
- For distance up to 0.5 km, multimode optical shortwave fiber cables are required between the primary storage system and secondary storage system.
- For distances from 0.5 km to 1.5 km (1,640 to 4,920 feet), multimode shortwave fibre-channel interface cables with up to two switches are required.
- For distance up to 10 km, single optical long wave fiber cables are required between the primary storage system and secondary storage system.
- For distances from 10 km to 30 km (6.2 to 18.6 miles), single-mode long wave fibre-channel interface cables with up to two switches are required.

- For distances greater than 30 km (18.6 miles), approved third-party channel extender products and telecommunications lines are required. Long-distance URz solutions are provided based on user requirements and workload characteristics.
- Supported mainframe host operating systems (OS):

  USP V supports the following mainframe host operating systems (OS).

  – MVS, OS/390, z/OS, VOS3, MSP-EX

  – Optional error report communications (ERC) function requires MVS/DFP 3.2.0 or later.

  – If the primary and/or secondary systems consist of several CPU complexes, a **SYSPLEX timer** is required to provide a common time reference for the host I/O time-stamping function.

  Please contact your Hitachi account team for the latest information on platform support for URz.
- A computer that runs Storage Navigator (Storage Navigator computer):

  The USP V Storage Navigator remote console software is required for USP V URz operations. The URz remote console software is a component of the USP V Storage Navigator software. The URz license key(s) are required to enable the URz option(s) on the USP V storage system (see section Enabling the URz Option(s)). Separate license keys are required for each USP V storage system. For further information on USP V Storage Navigator operations, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*, or contact your Hitachi account team.

  Note: Administrator or URz write access to the *USP V* Storage Navigator Java applet program is required to perform URz operations. Users without Administrator or URz write access can only view URz information.
- About the license of Universal Replicator for z/OS®:

  If you want to use Universal Replicator for z/OS®, you must install not only a license for Universal Replicator for z/OS® but also a license for TrueCopy for z/OS®.
- Connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC

  URz can execute remote copy operations by connecting USP V with TagmaStore USP/NSC. Specifically, the following configurations are supported.

  – System configuration for remote copy operation using URz from USP V to TagmaStore USP/NSC.

  – System configuration for remote copy operation using URz from TagmaStore USP/NSC to USP V using.

  Note: For detailed information about the connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC, see section Configuration that TagmaStore USP/NSC and USP V is Connected.

Disk Track Format

URz supports the following requirements on the disk track format, which must be ensured by the user. URz cannot detect exceptions to these requirements. The primary storage system will abort the URz initial copy operation if the track format for both the primary data volume and secondary data volume does not meet the following requirements.

- The TCz primary data volume and secondary data volume must have the same track format.
- Record zero (R0) must be standard format, with key length of zero and data length of eight. The primary storage system will abort the initial copy operation if R0 is not standard format.
- The CCHH (logical cylinder address and logical head address) of R0 must be identical to the physical cylinder address and physical head address of the track.
- The CCHH of each user record in a track must be unique.

One-to-One Volume Copy Operations

URz requires a one-to-one relationship between the volumes of the volume pairs. A volume (LDEV) can only be assigned to one URz pair at a time. However, when creating a URz pair for delta resync operation, you can specify the secondary data volume of a URz pair that is not for delta resync operation as the secondary data volume of the URz pair for delta resync operation. In that case, you need to create a mirror the delta-resync pair and the non-delta-resync pair. For detailed information about delta resync operation, see section URz Delta Resync Operation and TCz Synchronous (3DC Multi-target Configuration).

Note: URz does not support operations in which one primary data volume is copied to more than one secondary data volume, or more than one primary data volume is copied to one secondary data volume.

Because URz operates on volumes rather than on files, multivolume files require special attention. For complete duplication and recovery of a multivolume file (e.g., a large database file which spans several volumes), make sure that all volumes of the file are copied to URz secondary data volume, and use URz to ensure update sequence consistency across this group of secondary data volume.

Duplicate VOLSER (Volume Serial Number)

When you select **Entire** as the initial copy option, the URz initial copy operation copies the VOLSER of the primary data volume to the secondary data volume, and therefore the primary data volume and secondary data volume of the URz pair will have the same VOLSER. Since the host operating system does not allow duplicate VOLSERs, the host system administrator must take precautions to prevent system problems related to duplicate VOLSERs. For example, the URz secondary data volumes must be defined in the system generation so they do not come online automatically (see **WARNING** below).

WARNING: If the volumes which will become URz secondary data volumes are physically attached to the same system images as the production volumes which will become the URz primary data volumes, the following problems can occur:

When a URz pair is released, the old secondary data volume is usually offline. When a host system is IPL'd (initial program loaded), the operator will be offered both volumes and asked which volume should be left offline – the old duplicate volser message. This can be confusing and is prone to error. To avoid duplication of VOLSER,

1. Identify the volumes that will not be accessed by the host system.

2. Perform CHP OFF or some other operation to ensure that the volumes are inaccessible.

3. When performing IPL, you must perform LOAD CLEAR.

Volume Types

The following DKC and DKU emulation types can be used for the URz software.

Table 3-1 Supported Emulation Types

Emulation	Support type
DKC	All CU images that can be used with USP V
DKU (Drive)	All mainframe volumes that can be used with USP V

All DKC and DKU (drive) emulation types for *USP V* can be used for URz software. In URz, the emulation types of primary and secondary data volumes are indicated.

The following CU emulation types can be used for MCUs (primary storage systems) and RCUs (secondary storage systems): 3990-3, 3990-6, 3990-6E, 2105, 2107, A-65A2, H-65A2, A-65C1, A-65C2.

The CU emulation type of an MCU can be different from the CU emulation type of the corresponding RCU.

Notes:

- The CU emulation type 3990-6, 3990-6E, 2105, or 2107 is required for SMS I/O time stamping of URz journals. If one of these CU emulation types is used, volumes of the 3380 emulation type must not be used.
- The CU emulation type H-65A2 is used for the HITAC M series and supports all types of M series volumes.

Table 3-2 lists the volumes and the volume capacity that can be used for the URz data volume and journal volume.

Note: The capacity of journal volume is not included in the accounting capacity.

Table 3-2 Supported Data Volume and Journal Volume

Type		Support specifications	
		Data Volume	Journal Volume
VLL volume		Available	
The volume on which Cache Residency Manager setting are made		Available	
Maximum volume capacity	3380-3	2.377 GB	
	3380-E	1.26 GB	
	3380-J	0.63 GB	
	3380-K	1.890 GB	
	3390-1	0.964 GB	
	3390-2	1.892 GB	
	3390-3 3390-3R	2.838 GB	
	3390-9	8.510 GB	
	3390-L	27.80 GB	
	3390-M	55.60 GB	
	OPEN-V	OPEN-V volumes cannot be used as data volumes.	Capacity of OPEN-V volumes can be determined freely, depending on VLL volume specifications. The minimum capacity is 48.1 MB, and the maximum capacity is the same as the user capacity of one RAID group. *Note*: The default capacity of an OPEN-V volume is the same as the capacity of a RAID group, and depends on the hard disk drive type and the RAID configuration.

Minimum volume capacity	1 cylinder	50 cylinders for a non-OPEN-V volume. 48.1 MB for an OPEN-V volume. *Note*: A journal volume consists of two types of areas, one for containing journal data, and the other for containing information for managing remote copy operations.

Caution: Volumes containing a VMA (volume management area) cannot be used as journal volumes. For detailed information about a VMA, please refer to the *Data Retention Utility User's Guide*.

The table below explains emulation types and the capacity of volumes that can form pairs. For details on the maximum number of pairs, see the next section.

Table 3-3 Specifications of Volumes that can Form Pairs

Item	Support specifications
Emulation type	Same emulation type.
Volume capacity	The same capacity.

URz can copy data between volumes with the same emulation and capacity (e.g., 3390-3R to 3390-3R). URz also supports the Virtual LVI/LUN feature of the USP V storage system, enabling you to establish URz pairs with custom-size emulation types as well as standard-size emulation types. When custom-size emulation types are assigned to URz pairs, the secondary data volume must have the same capacity as the primary data volume. The URz remote console software displays the emulation type of the primary data volumes and secondary data volumes.

URz supports the Virtual LVI/LUN feature of the USP V storage system, which allows you to configure custom-size LDEVs which are smaller than standard-size LDEVs. When custom-size LDEVs are assigned to a URz pair, the secondary data volume must have the same capacity as the primary data volume.

Table 3-4 shows the emulation types and capacity of master and restore journal volumes that can be used for a URz software.

Table 3-4 Journal Volume Specifications

Item	Support specifications
Emulation type	Same emulation type.
Volume capacity	Does not matter whether the capacity is the same or different.

Table 3-5 shows the RAID level combination of data volume and journal volume in the journal group that can be used for URz.

Table 3-5 RAID Level Configuration of URz

Item	Support specifications
RAID configuration of data volume and journal volume	RAID1, RAID5, and RAID6 can coexist.

RAID1, RAID5, and RAID6 can coexist in the same journal group.

The Maximum Number of Pairs

Note: The number of pairs that can be created in a storage system is limited.

Use the number of cylinders and bitmap areas to calculate the maximum number of pairs that can be created in a storage system.

- The number of cylinders:

  The number of pairs of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume is limited by the number of cylinders of the volumes to be paired (i.e., the capacity of the volume. If VLL is used, the number of pairs depends on the number of cylinders specified by VLL.). The limit on the number of pairs is applied to both the primary storage system and the secondary storage system. Table 3-6 illustrates the number of cylinders according to each emulation type.

Table 3-6 Number of Cylinders According to Each Emulation Type

Emulation type	Number of Cylinders
3380-J	885
3380-E	1,770
3380-K	2,655
3390-1	1,113
3390-2	2,226
3390-3 3390-3R	3,339
3390-9	10,017
3390-L	32,760
3390-M	65,520
H6586-G	1,770
H6586-J	885
H6586-K	2,655
H6588-1	1,113
H6588-3	3,436
H6588-9	10,017

H6588-L	32,760
NF80-E	1,770
NF80-J	885
NF80-K	2,655

- The number of the required bitmap areas:

  The number of bitmap areas to be used by all data volumes that form pairs is calculated out of the number of cylinders. The calculated number of bitmap areas is referred to as "the required number of bitmap areas" in the following formula. Use the following formula to calculate the required number of bitmap areas for a data volume. The ↑...↑ symbols enclosing a value indicate that the enclosed value should be rounded up to the nearest integer.

  The required number of bitmap areas = (↑((number of cylinders × 15) ÷ 122,752) ↑)

  – " number of cylinders × 15" indicates the number of slots

  – 122,752 is the number of slots that a bitmap area can manage

  Note: If the calculated required number of bitmap areas exceeds the total number of bitmap areas in the storage system, the number of pairs that can be created will be limited.

- The maximum number of pairs that can be created:

  The maximum possible number of pairs that can be created depends on the number of bitmap areas of the storage system and the required number of bitmap areas required to create pairs.

  The number of bitmap areas of the storage system depends on the capacity of shared memory. The relationship between the area number of shared memory and the number of bitmap areas in the storage system is described in Table 3.7.

Table 3-7 The Relationship between Additional Shared Memory and Total Number of Bitmap Areas of Storage System

Additional Shared Memory for URz	Total Number of Bitmap Areas of Storage System
No additional shared memory for URz	0
Additional shared memory for URz is installed	7,424
Extension 1	16,384
Extension 2	32,768
Extension 3	44,256
Extension 4	65,536

Use the following formulae to calculate the maximum possible number of pairs that can be created, based on the number of bitmap areas described in Table 3-7 and the required number of bitmap areas you calculated:

The maximum number of pairs = (↓ Number of bitmap areas ÷ required number of bitmap areas ↓)

The ↓...↓ symbols enclosing a value indicate that the value should be rounded down to the nearest integer.

Note: If the calculated maximum number of pairs exceeds 32,768, the actual maximum number of pairs is limited to 32,768.

Table 3-8 illustrates the maximum number of pairs according to each emulation type, when pairs are created without use of VLL volume.

Table 3-8 Maximum Number of Pairs According to Each Emulation Type, when pairs are created without use of VLL volume

Emulation Type			Maximum number of pairs		
	Additional shared memory for URz is installed	Extension 1	Extension 2	Extension 3	Extension 4
3380-J	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3380-E	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3380-K	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3390-1	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3390-2	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3390-3 3390-3R	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
3390-9	3,710	8,192	14,336	20,071	28,672
3390-L	1,484	3,277	5,734	8,028	11,469
3390-M	1,484	3,277	5,734	8,028	11,469
H6586-G	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
H6586-J	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
H6586-K	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
H6588-1	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
H6588-3	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
H6588-9	3,710	8,192	14,336	20,071	28,672
H6588-L	1,484	3,277	5,734	8,028	11,469
NF80-E	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
NF80-J	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768
NF80-K	7,420	16,384	28,673	32,768	32,768

Caution: The bitmap areas that are used for URz are also used for TrueCopy for z/OS. If you use both TrueCopy for z/OS and URz, use the total number of both pairs.

Journal Group

The URz journal groups have the following requirements:

- Each URz pair must be assigned to one and only one journal group. Table 3-9 shows the journal group specifications.

Table 3-9 Journal Group Specifications

Item	Support specifications
Number of journal groups	Up to 256 journal groups (No. 0 - 255) per one disk subsystem *Note:* The recommended number of journal groups is up to 16.
Number of data volumes in a journal group	Up to 4,096
Number of journal volumes in a journal group	Up to 64
Number of Mirror IDs	Up to 4 (ID No.: 0 to 3) *Note*: If TCz Sync. uses No. 0, No. 1 to 3 are available for URz.

The same number of journal volumes is not required in the master journal group and the restore journal group that are paired.

Mirror ID is required for the configuration that will be supported in the future within the 3-data center (3DC), including the expected future enhancement to enable the user to pair one master journal group with two or more restore journal groups. Each pair relationship in a journal group is called "Mirror". Mirror ID identifies two or more mirrors that one journal group has. The same Mirror ID of the journal group is applied to the data volume pair. See section TCz Synchronous (3DC Cascading Configuration) for 3DC configurations.

- Table 3-10 shows the specifications of relationship between the data volumes, between the journal volumes, and between the data volumes and journal volumes in a journal group.

Table 3-10 Journal Group Volume Specifications

Item	Support specifications
Emulation type	Same emulation type.
Volume capacity	Does not matter whether the capacity is the same or different.
CLPR	Journal volumes and data volumes in the same journal group can belong to different CLPRs. Journal volumes must belong to the same CLPR. Data volumes must also belong to the same CLPR. *Note*: A primary journal group and the corresponding restore journal group need not belong to the same CLPR.

Note: When URz and UR coexist in the same *USP V* storage system, each journal group must contain either URz pairs or UR pairs (not both).

Accessing URz Primary Data Volume and Secondary Data Volume

To ensure maximum data integrity during normal URz operations, the secondary storage system rejects all the read/write operations issued by a host to a URz secondary data volume. If you need write operation to a URz secondary data volume, you must set the secondary data volume write option (see section Secondary Data Volume Write Option). When you resume (Resume Pair) the split pair, the secondary storage system will send the secondary data volume track bitmap to the primary storage system to ensure proper resynchronization of the pair.

Cache and Nonvolatile Storage (NVS)

Cache and nonvolatile storage (NVS) must be operable for both the primary storage system and secondary storage system of a URz data volume pair. If not, the URz add pair operation will fail. The remote storage system cache should be configured to adequately support not only the local workloads but also the URz remote copy workloads.

Duplicate Volumes

Since the contents of the primary data volume and secondary data volume of a URz pair are identical, the secondary data volume can be considered a duplicate of the primary data volume. Since the host operating system does not allow duplicate volumes, the host system administrator must take precautions to prevent system problems related to duplicate volumes. You must define the URz secondary data volume so they do not auto-mount or come online to the same host at the same time as the primary data volume (see *WARNING* below).

URz does not allow the secondary data volume to be online (except while the pair is split). If the secondary data volume is online, the URz add pair operation will fail.

WARNING: If the URz secondary data volumes are physically attached to the same host server(s) as the URz primary data volumes, the following problem can occur:

When a URz pair is released, the old secondary data volume is usually offline. If the host is then restarted, the system administrator may be offered both volumes and asked which volume should be left offline. This can be confusing and is prone to error.

If the URz secondary data volumes and primary data volumes are connected to the same host(s), Hitachi strongly recommends that the secondary data volumes are defined to remain offline to avoid this problem.

Installing the Hardware

Initial installation of the URz hardware is performed by the user and the Hitachi representative. To install the hardware required for URz operations:

1. **User:** Identify the locations of the URz primary and secondary data volumes (primary data volumes and secondary data volumes), so that the URz hardware can be installed and configured properly.
2. **User and Hitachi Representative:** Make sure that the primary storage system(s) and secondary storage system(s) are configured for USP V Storage Navigator operations (e.g., SVP connected to LAN). Refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide* for information and instructions on setting up Storage Navigator operations.
3. **Hitachi Representative:** Make sure that the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems are properly configured for URz operations (e.g., cache, NVS) (see section Cache and Nonvolatile Storage (NVS)). Make sure that the desired system option modes are enabled (see Table 2-3). Make sure that adequate cache is installed and available for URz operations. You must also consider the amount of Cache Residency Manager data to be stored in cache when determining the required amount of cache.
4. **Hitachi Representative:** Make sure the primary storage systems are configured to report sense information to the host(s). The secondary storage systems should also be attached to a host server to enable reporting of sense information in case of a problem with an secondary data volume or secondary storage system. If the remote site is unattended, the secondary storage systems should be attached to a host server at the primary site, so that the system administrator can monitor the operational condition of the secondary storage systems.
5. **Hitachi Representative:** If power sequence control cables are used, set the power select switch for the cluster to LOCAL to prevent the primary storage system from being powered off by the host. Also make sure the secondary storage system will not be powered off during URz operations. See Setting up Remote Copy Connections for further information on powering off/on the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems.
6. **Hitachi Representative:** Install the URz remote copy connections between the primary storage system(s) and secondary storage system(s). This hardware (optical fibre cables, switches, etc.) is supplied by the user.

   See section Setting up Remote Copy Connections for remote copy configurations. Distribute the paths between different storage clusters and switches to provide maximum flexibility and availability. The logical paths between the primary storage system and secondary storage system must be separate from the logical paths between the host and secondary storage system.

Setting up Remote Copy Connections

Figure 3-1 shows the remote copy connection configurations for URz operations. The primary storage system and secondary storage system of each URz pair must be connected via optical fiber cables. If you use multimode shortwave optical fiber cables, fibre cables up to 1.5 km in length and up to two switches are required for distances greater than 0.5 km. If you use single-mode long wave optical fiber cables, fibre cables up to 30 km in length and up to two switches are required for distances greater than 10 km. URz operations can be performed at distances of up to 30 km (18.6 miles) using standard single-mode long wave support. For further distance, the channel extender connections are required. URz operations can be performed at distances of up to 30 km (18.6 miles) using standard single-mode long wave support. For distances greater than 43 km (26.7 miles), approved channel extender products and telecommunications lines are required.

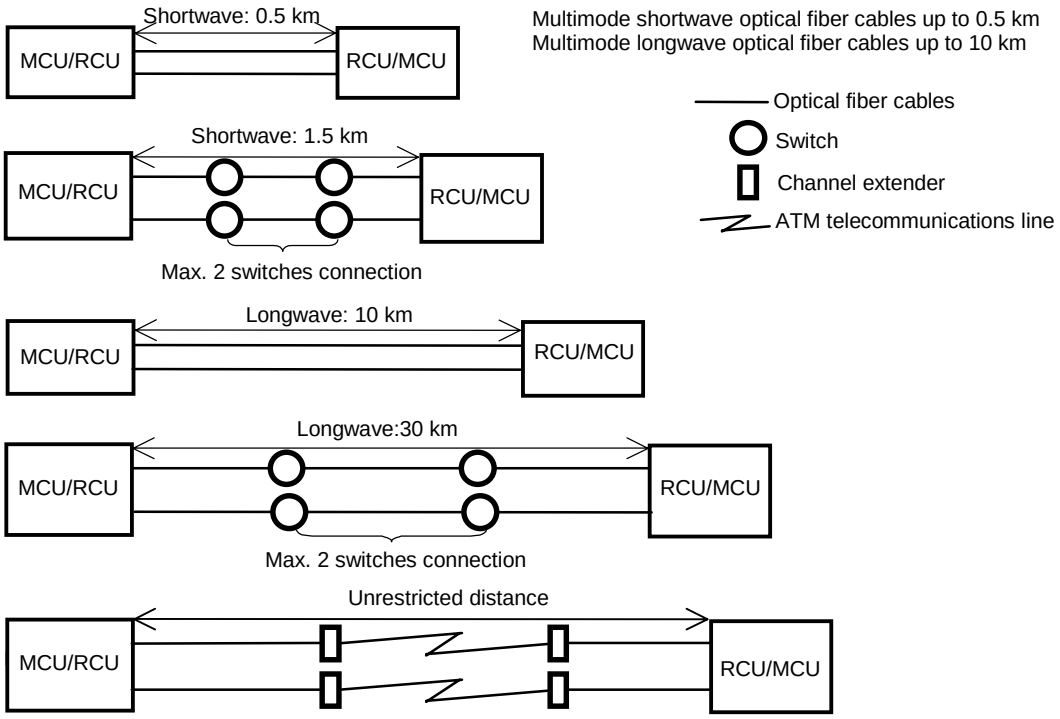
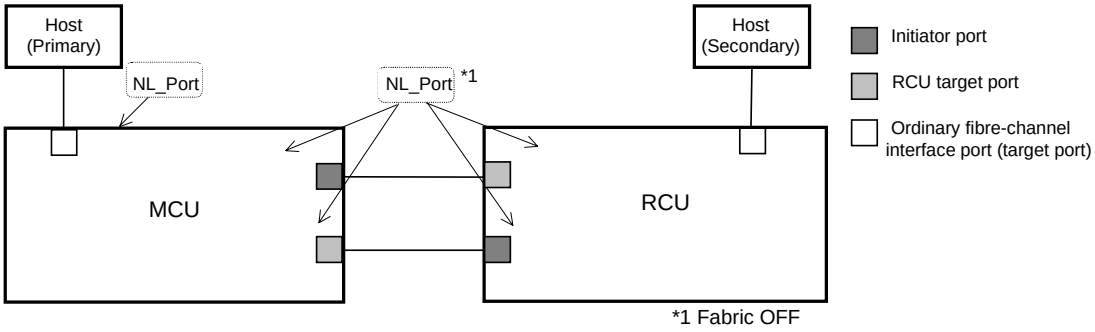


Figure 3-1 URz Remote Copy Connection Configuration

The remote copy connection between primary storage system and secondary storage system provides three different configurations:

- Direct connection (see Figure 3-2),
- Switch connection (see Figure 3-3),
- Extender connection (see Figure 3-4).



* To set ports, use LUN Manager and set port topology to: Fabric off, FC-AL.

Figure 3-2 Direct Remote Copy Connections

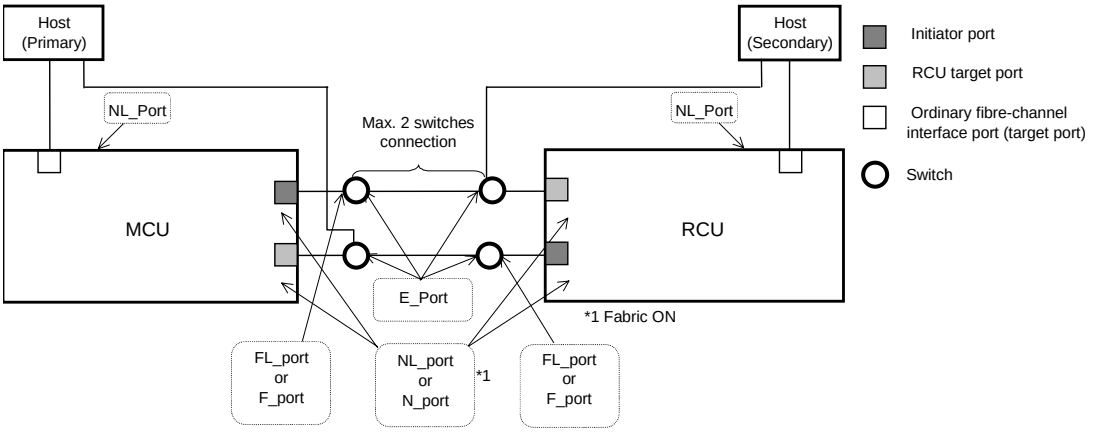


Figure 3-3 Switch Remote Copy Connection

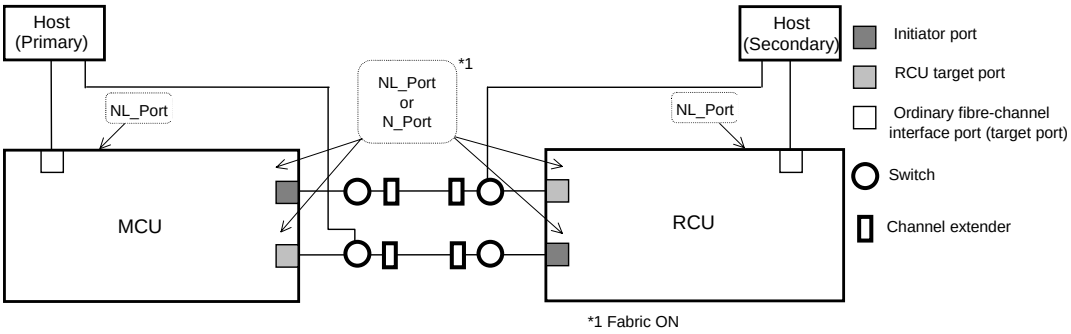


Figure 3-4 Extender Remote Copy Connection

Caution: When a MCU and RCU are connected via switches with channel extender, and multiple remote copy paths are assembled, the capacity of data to be transmitted may concentrate on particular switches, depending on the configuration and the settings of switch routing.

Enabling the URz Option(s)

To operate the URz software, PC for the *USP V* Storage Navigator is required. For further information on *USP V* Storage Navigator operations, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*, or contact your Hitachi Data Systems account team.

Using Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems

System configuration of up to four primary storage systems and up to four secondary storage systems is allowed for URz operations. URz can copy data from more than one primary storage system to more than one secondary storage system, while maintaining consistency in data update sequence. Even when a failure occurs in a large computer system consisting of more than one storage system, you can continue your business tasks by using data in secondary storage systems.

The following figure illustrates an example of using URz in a system configuration of three primary storage systems and three secondary storage systems.

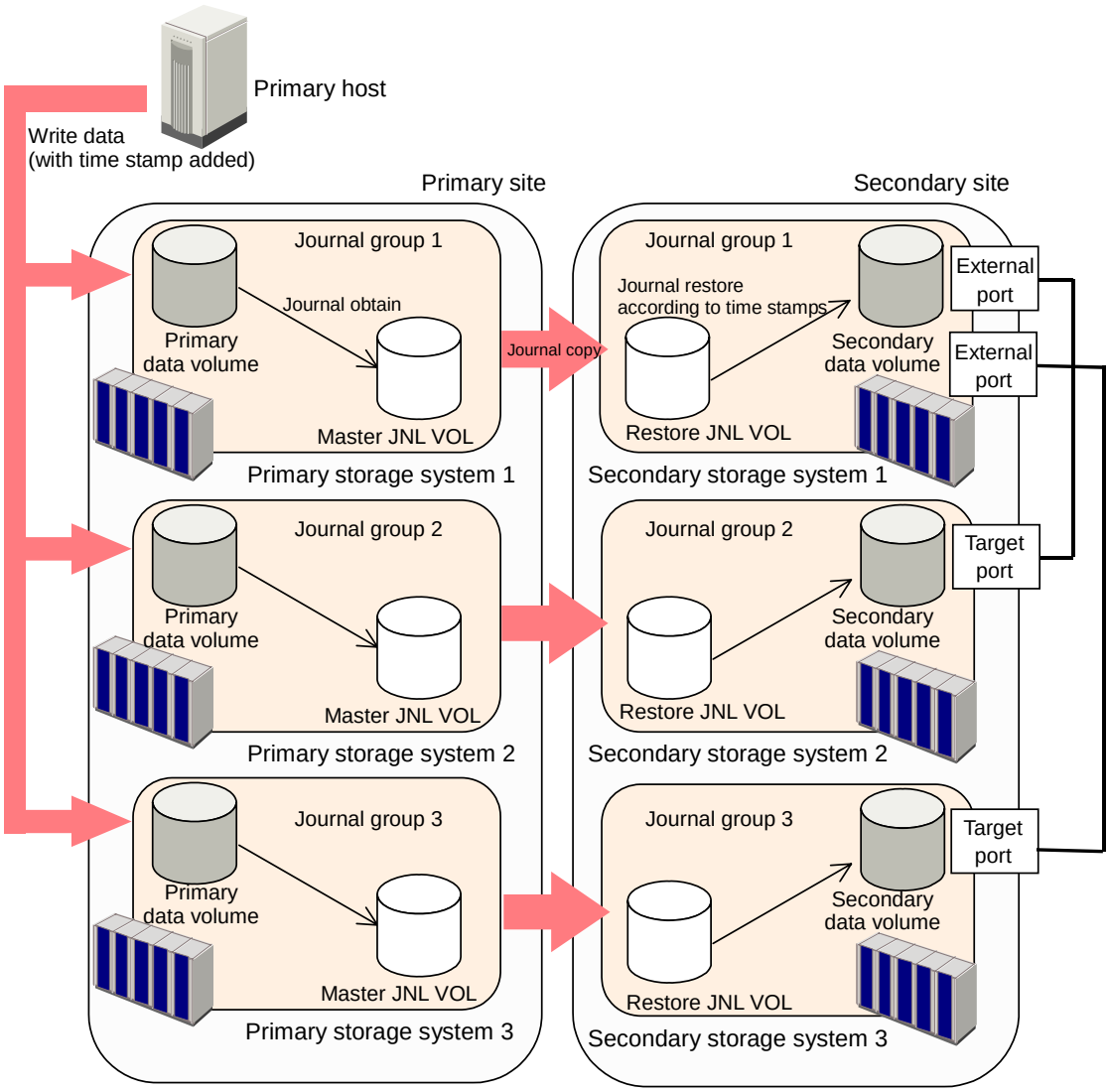


Figure 3-5 Using More Than One Primary and Secondary Storage System for Remote Copy

When primary hosts write data to primary data volumes, the hosts add time stamp to the data. Secondary storage systems check time stamps and then restore data to data volumes in chronological order (older data are restored earlier), so that data update sequence is maintained. For details on the time-stamping function, see section Host I/O Time-Stamp.

This manual uses the term "arbitration processing", which refers to execution of the journal restore function based on time stamps in an attempt to maintain data update sequence. When there is more than one secondary storage system, one of the secondary storage systems controls the other secondary storage systems, compares time stamps of data received by all the secondary storage systems (including the local storage system), and then performs arbitration processing. In this manual, the term "supervisor DKC" is used to refer to the storage system that performs arbitration processing. Also, the term "subordinate DKCs" is used to refer to the storage systems that are controlled by the supervisor DKC and are targets of arbitration processing. In the example in Figure 3-5, the secondary storage system 1 is the supervisor DKC, and the secondary storage systems 2 and 3 are subordinate DKCs.

To perform arbitration processing, the supervisor DKC must be connected with the subordinate DKCs. For details on connections between secondary storage systems, see section Connections Between Secondary Storage Systems.

Basic Behavior When Using Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems

This section explains the basic behavior of URz under the following conditions:

- There are two primary storage systems and two secondary storage systems.
- The status of all the URz pairs that use journal groups in the extended consistency group is **Duplex**. ***Note***: For details on extended consistency groups, see section Extended Consistency Groups.
- The primary host issues write requests to URz primary data volumes.

The following figure illustrates a URz operation when the above conditions are satisfied,

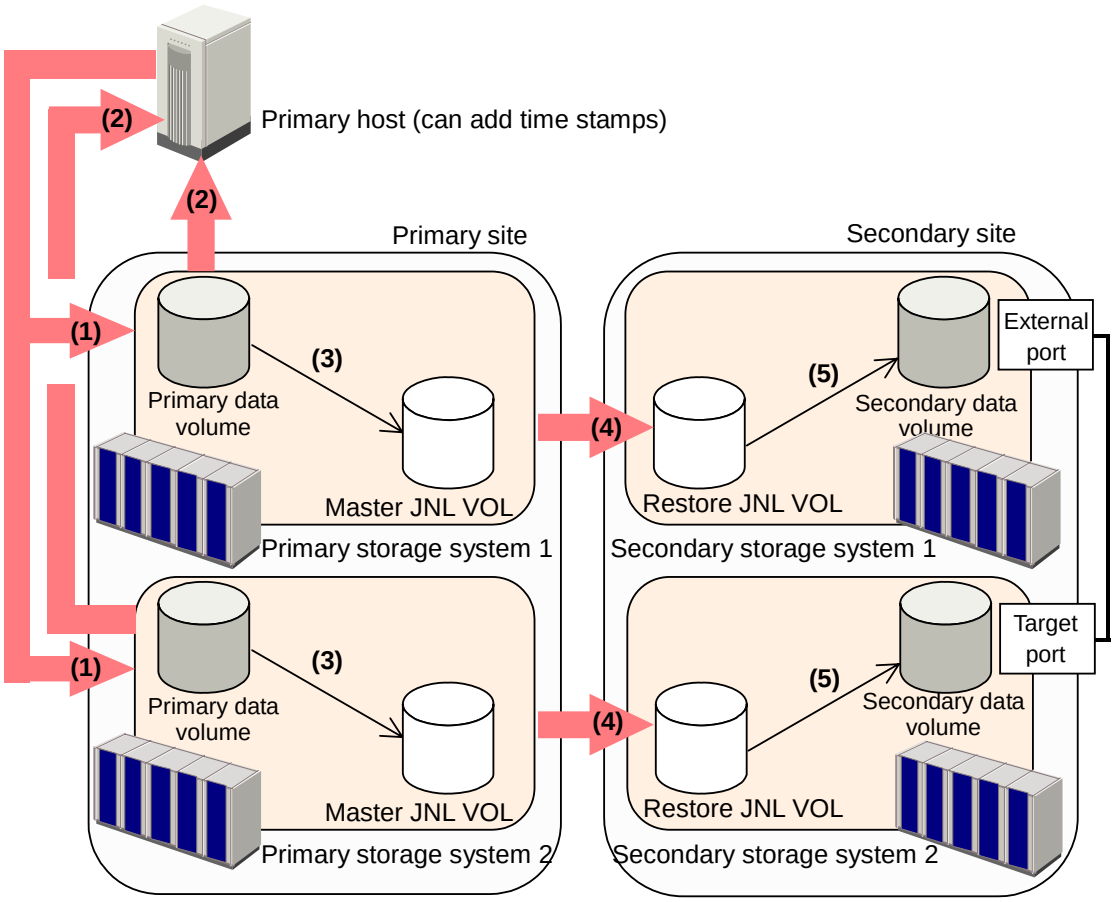


Figure 3-6 A URz Operation When Two Primary Storage Systems and Two Secondary Storage Systems are Used

The numbers in Figure 3-6 indicate the order that the processing is performed, and correspond to the numbers in the numbered procedure below:

1. The primary host issues write requests to primary storage systems. Time stamps are added to the data to be written.
2. The primary storage systems receive the write requests, and then notify the primary host that primary data volumes are updated.
3. The URz journal obtain function stores data updated in primary data volumes to master journal volumes as journal data. Time stamp information added by the primary host will be added to journal data. Also, sequence numbers indicating the order of writing will be added to journal data.
4. The URz journal copy function copies journal data from the master journal volumes to the corresponding restore journal volumes. This journal copy operation will be performed asynchronously with the journal obtain operation.

5. The secondary storage system 1 (i.e., the supervisor DKC) performs arbitration processing. In other words, the secondary storage system 1 restores journal data of the secondary storage systems 1 and 2, based on the time stamps and the sequence numbers added to the journal data, so that consistency with the primary data volume is maintained.

The flow of the arbitration processing is as follows:

1. From journal data in restore journal groups registered in the extended consistency group, the supervisor DKC collects time stamps of journal data have not been restored.
2. The supervisor DKC compares the time stamps, and then selects the oldest time stamp.
3. The supervisor DKC requests the subordinate DKCs to restore the journal data that has the selected time stamp.
4. From journal data having the time stamp and earlier time stamps, the subordinate DKCs restore all journal data that have not been restored, in the order of the sequence numbers.

Hardware Configuration for Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems

This section explains hardware configuration when more than one primary and secondary storage system are used.

It is recommended that Business Continuity Manager is installed on the host in the primary and secondary sites. Storage Navigator PCs must be installed in both of these sites. Also, storage system settings must be made so that Business Continuity Manager can be used. For detailed information about settings required for using volumes in a remote site, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

Up to four primary storage systems and up to four secondary storage systems can be used. For example, you can use four primary storage systems and four secondary storage systems. Also, you can use two primary storage systems and one secondary storage system.

The supervisor DKC and subordinate DKCs must be mutually connected in the secondary site, so that arbitration processing can be performed. Also, remote command devices must be created in the supervisor DKC. For details on secondary storage systems connections and remote command devices, see the next section and the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Connections Between Secondary Storage Systems

If you use more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage system, you must establish connections among the secondary storage systems. To do this, you must configure paths and ports. Also, you must create remote command devices by using Universal Volume Manager.

The following figure is an example of connections among secondary storage systems.

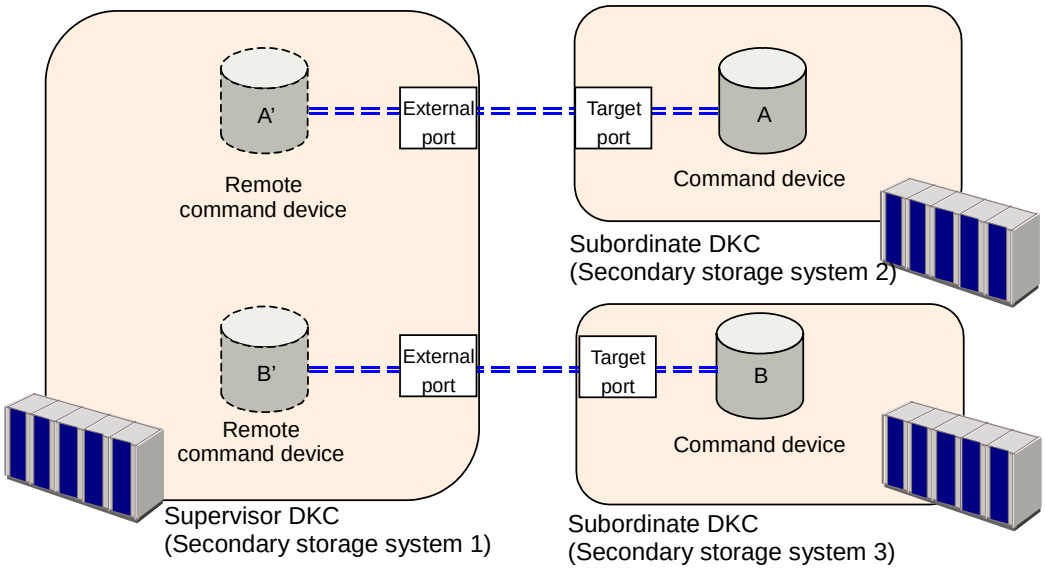


Figure 3-7 An Example of Connections among Secondary Storage Systems

Based on the example in Figure 3-7, the subsections below explain configuration of paths and ports, and creation of remote command devices.

Configuring Paths and Ports to Establish Connections among Secondary Storage Systems

To establish connections among secondary storage systems, you must configure external ports on the storage system that should be used as the supervisor DKC. After that, you must configure paths between these external ports and the target ports on the storage systems that should be used as subordinate DKCs. In the example in Figure 3-7, the secondary storage system 1 has external ports, each of which is connected with a target port on the secondary storage system 2 and 3. For details on external ports, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*. For details on configuring paths, please refer to the *LUN Manager User's Guide*.

By using fibre channel switches, target ports can also be connected to RCU target ports on secondary storage systems. For details on RCU target ports, see section Initiator Ports and RCU Target Ports. For details on configuring ports, see section Configuring Port Attributes.

Creating Remote Command Devices to Establish Connections among Secondary Storage Systems

To establish connections among secondary storage systems, first you must create a command device in each of the secondary storage systems. Next you must create mapping between command devices in the supervisor DKC and the subordinate DKCs. Thus, the supervisor DKC will be able to use command devices in subordinate DKCs via remote command devices.

In the example of Figure 3-7, the command devices A and B are created in the secondary storage systems 2 and 3. Also, remote command devices are created in the secondary storage system 1 (i.e., the supervisor DKC), and are mapped to the secondary storage systems 2 and 3 (i.e., subordinate DKCs).

The emulation type of command devices and remote command devices must be OPEN-V. For details on remote command devices, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Caution: If maintenance operations are performed on remote command devices (for example, the devices A' and B' in Figure 3-7) that are used for connections among secondary storage systems, the pair will be suspended according to a failure. To avoid this, you must remove all journal groups in the extended consistency group that uses the remote command devices to be maintained.

Interoperability with Other Products and Functions

Some types of volumes used by non-URz functions can also be used as URz data volumes and/or journal volumes. Table 3-11 explains whether non-URz volumes are also usable as URz volumes.

Table 3-11 Whether Non-URz Volumes Can Be Used as URz Volumes

Functions and Volumes	Can the Volumes be Used as Primary Data Volumes?	Can the Volumes be Used as Secondary Data Volumes?	Can the Volumes be Used as Journal Volumes?
LUN Expansion (LUSE)			
LUSE volume	No.	No.	No.
ShadowImage for z/OS® (SIz)			
S-VOL in Split status	Yes.	Yes.	No.
S-VOL in Resync-R status	No.	No.	No.
S-VOL that is also used as a TCz P-VOL or TCz S-VOL	Yes.	Yes.	No.
S-VOL (none of the above)	Yes.	Yes.	No.
T-VOL in Split status	Yes.	No.	No.
T-VOL (none of the above)	No.	No.	No.
Reserved volume	No.	No.	No.
Compatible FlashCopy®			
S-VOL	Yes.	Yes.	No.
T-VOL	No.	No.	No.
Compatible FlashCopy® V2			
S-VOL	Yes. *1	No.	No.
T-VOL	No.	No.	No.
Concurrent Copy			
Concurrent Copy volume	Yes.	No.	No.
Compatible XRC			
Compatible XRC volume	No.	No.	No.
Volume Migration			
Source volume (when volume migration is in progress)	Yes. Note that volume migration stops when the source volume is used as a primary data volume.	Yes. Note that volume migration stops when the source volume is used as a secondary data volume.	No.
Source volume (after volume migration is finished)	Yes.	Yes.	No.
Reserved volume to which no path is defined	No.	No.	No
TrueCopy for z/OS® (TCz)			

Functions and Volumes	Can the Volumes be Used as Primary Data Volumes?	Can the Volumes be Used as Secondary Data Volumes?	Can the Volumes be Used as Journal Volumes?
M-VOL in Pending duplex status	No.	No.	No.
M-VOL in Duplex status	Yes. *2	No.	No.
M-VOL in Suspend status	Yes. *2	No. *1	No.
M-VOL that is suspended due to a failure	Yes. *2	No. *1	No.
R-VOL in Pending status	No.	No.	No.
R-VOL in Duplex status	Yes. *2	No.	No.
R-VOL in Suspend status	Yes. *2	No.	No.
R-VOL in Swapping status	Yes. *2	No. *1	No.
R-VOL that is suspended due to a failure	Yes. *2	No.	No.
TrueCopy Asynchronous for z/OS®			
TrueCopy Asynchronous for z/OS® volume	No.	No.	No.
Volume Retention Manager			
Volume with Read/Write attribute	Yes.	Yes.	Yes.
Volume with Read Only attribute	Yes.	Yes.	No.
Volume with Protect attribute	No.	No.	No.
Volume Security			
Volume registered in a security group	Yes.	Yes. However, if the volume is disabled for use as S-VOL, the volume cannot be used as a secondary data volume.	No.
Cross-OS File Exchange			
Volume usable by both mainframe and open systems	No.	No.	No.
Cache Residency Manager			
The volume on which Cache Residency Manager setting are made	Yes.	Yes.	Yes.
Compatible PAV			
Compatible PAV	Yes.	Yes.	No.
Virtual LVI			
Virtual LVI volume	Yes.	Yes.	Yes.

Note*1: You cannot use the volume as a data volume of the URz pair for delta resync operation.

Note*21: The volume can be used as a secondary data volume only when you restore a URz pair or perform a Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** operation. However, even in this case, you cannot use the volume as the secondary data volume of the URz pair for delta resync operation.

Note*32: This is "No" if more than one primary storage systems and more than one secondary storage system are used for remote copy (see section Using Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems).

Virtual LVI

You can perform Virtual LVI operations on primary and secondary data volumes in URz pairs. If you need to perform Virtual LVI operations on a URz primary data volume or secondary data volume, you must delete the pair first to return the volume to Simplex status.

When creating a URz pair consisting of two Virtual LVI volumes, make sure that the primary data volume and the secondary data volumes have the same capacity.

Cache Residency Manager

You can perform Cache Residency Manager operations on URz primary data volumes and secondary data volumes.

ShadowImage for z/OS®

URz and ShadowImage for z/OS® (SIz) can be used together in the same storage system and on the same volumes to provide multiple copies of data at the primary and/or secondary sites. Table 3-12 describes the host pair status reporting for URz volumes, SIz volumes, and URz/SIz shared volumes. Table 3-13 shows the currency of the data on a shared URz/SIz volume based on URz and SIz pair status.

- For shared URz/SIz volumes, the URz pair status is reported to the host if you query the URz primary data volume or secondary data volume. To obtain the SIz pair status, query the target volume (T-VOL) of the SIz pair.
- SIz supports multiple T-VOLs for each source volume (S-VOL). If you issue a pair status query to a SIz S-VOL (e.g., pairdisplay), the status for only one SIz pair is reported (the pair with the T-VOL with the lowest LDEV ID). To obtain the pair status for the SIz pair(s) with the other T-VOL(s), you must direct the host query to the specific S-VOL using the T-VOL's LDEV ID in the host command. The SIz remote console software displays the port, TID, LUN, LDEV ID and SIz pair status of all T-VOLs associated with a S-VOL.

Table 3-12 Host Pair Status Reporting for URz/SIz Shared Volumes

Number of URz pairs	Number of SIz T-VOLs	Pair status reported by USP V
0	0	Simplex
0	1	SIz pair status
0	2 or more	SIz pair status for the pair whose S-VOL has the lowest LDEV ID
1	0	URz pair status
1	1	URz pair status
1	2 or more	URz pair status

Table 3-13 Data Currency of a Shared URz/SIz Volume

	SIz pair status					
URz pair status	Pending Duplex	Duplex	Split-Pending	Split	Resync	Suspended
Pending Duplex	Not current	Not current	Not current	CURRENT	Not current	Not current
Duplex	Not current	Not current	Not current	CURRENT	Not current	Not current
Suspended	Not current	CURRENT	CURRENT	CURRENT	CURRENT	Not current

Figure 3-8 through Figure 3-11 show the various URz/SIz configurations which share volumes.

- URz/SIz configurations which share the URz primary data volume and SIz S-VOL

  Figure 3-8 shows an example of a URz primary data volume which is also functioning as a SIz S-VOL. This configuration allows you to use SIz for on-site data backup in case of a URz failure, and to use URz to provide remote backup of the SIz S-VOL in case of a SIz failure.

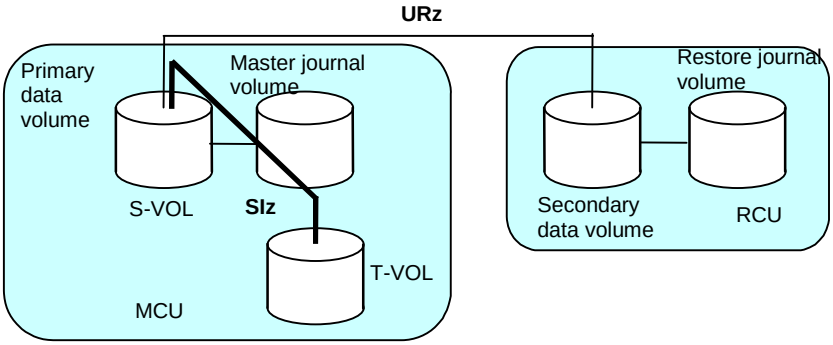


Figure 3-8 Shared URz primary data volume and SIz S-VOL

Business Continuity Manager allows you to set the starting time of backup copy to journal groups. In the above configuration, if you set the starting time of backup copy, the writes to the primary data volume up to that time will be backed up to the secondary data volume. If the above configuration is used in multiple journal volumes in multiple disk subsystems, you can set the same starting time of backup copy to all the journal groups. If you do this operation, the primary data volumes will be backed up across the multiple disk subsystems at the same time.

- URz/SIz configurations which share the URz secondary data volume and SIz P-VOL

  Figure 3-9 shows an example of a URz secondary data volume which is also functioning as a SIz S-VOL. This configuration allows you to use SIz to provide multiple backup copies of a single URz primary data volume.

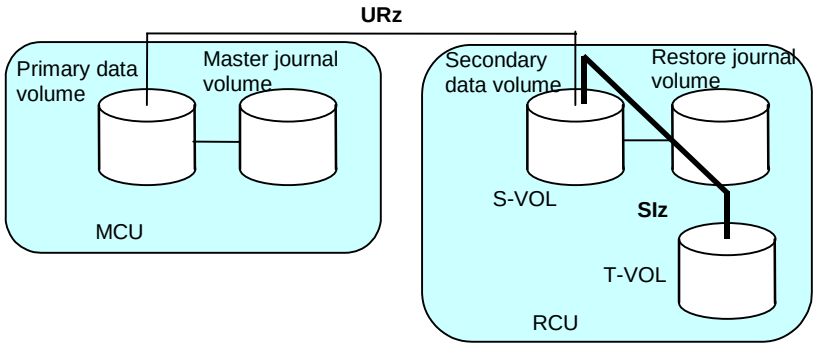


Figure 3-9 Shared URz secondary data volume and SIz S-VOL

Caution: If you use a URz secondary data volume as an SIz S-VOL as shown in Figure 3-9, the write operation to the URz primary data volume takes time. Especially, when the SIz pair is in the V-Split status, the write operation to the URz primary data volume may takes extra time according to the time for copying process of the SIz pair.

In addition, note that if the journal volume size is small, the URz pair may be suspended by failure because of the shortage of the capacity of its journal volume.

Business Continuity Manager allows you to set the starting time of backup copy to journal groups. In the above configuration, if you set the starting time of backup copy, the writes to the primary data volume up to that time will be backed up to the secondary data volume. If the above configuration is used in multiple journal volumes in multiple storage systems, you can set the same starting time of backup copy to all the journal groups. If you do this operation, the primary data volumes will be backed up across the multiple storage systems at the same time.

- URz/SIz configuration which share the UR primary data volume and SIz S-VOL, and UR secondary data volume and SIz S-VOL

Figure 3-10 combines the configurations shown in Figure 3-8 and Figure 3-9. Within a single URz pair, the primary data volume and secondary data volume are both functioning as **SIz** S-VOLs, providing multiple copies at the primary and secondary sites.

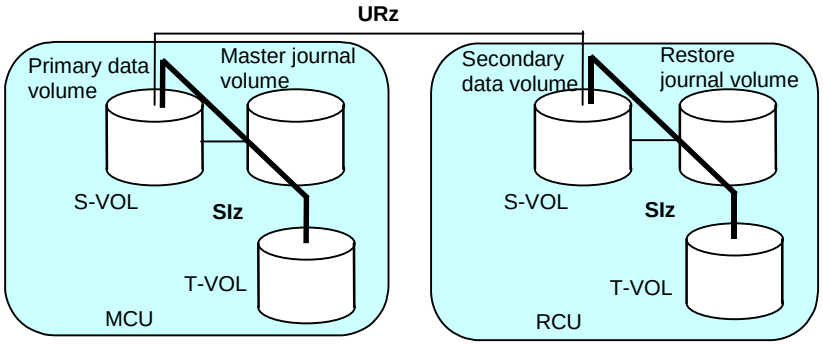


Figure 3-10 Shared URz primary data volume and SIz S-VOL, and URz secondary data volume and SIz S-VOL

- **URz/SIz configuration where a SIz T-VOL in Split status is used as a URz primary data volume**

  In the following example, the SIz T-VOL in Split status is also functioning as a URz primary data volume. This configuration allows URz to make a remote backup copy of the SIz T-VOL.

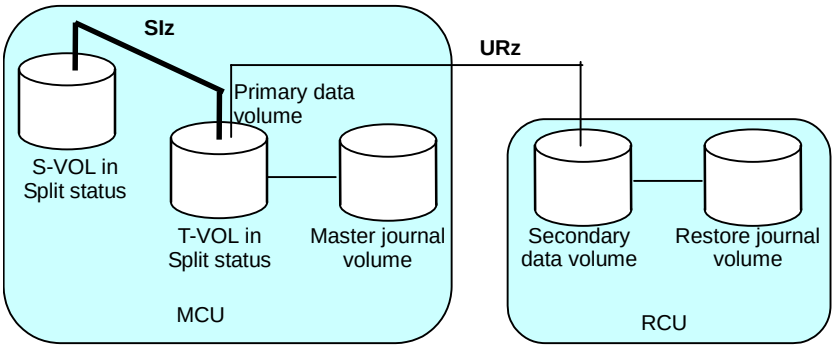


Figure 3-11 SIz T-VOL in Split Status Functioning as URz Primary Data Volume

If a failure occurs and the SIz S-VOL is damaged in Figure 3-11, take the following steps to copy data from the URz secondary data volume to the SIz S-VOL so that data can be restored to the SIz S-VOL:

1. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKDELETE** command on the SIz pair to release the pair (see Figure 3-12).
2. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command on the URz pair to suspend the pair. After that, execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command to reverse the copy direction and re-establish the pair (see Figure 3-13).

3. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPND FORWARD** command on the URz pair to suspend the pair. After that, execute the **YKRESYNC FORWARD** command to change the copy direction to the original direction and re-establish the pair (see Figure 3-14).
4. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPND** command on the URz pair to suspend the pair (see Figure 3-15).
5. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKMAKE** command on the SIz pair to perform copying in the reverse direction (see Figure 3-16).
6. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKDELETE** command on the SIz pair to release the pair (see Figure 3-17).
7. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKMAKE** command on the SIz pair to perform copying in the original direction (see Figure 3-18).
8. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPND** command on the SIz pair to put the pair in Split status (see Figure 3-19).
9. Execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC** command on the URz pair to resynchronize the pair (see Figure 3-20).

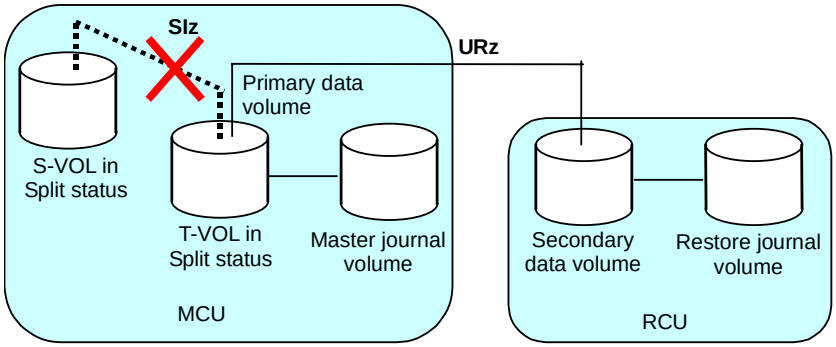


Figure 3-12 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 1

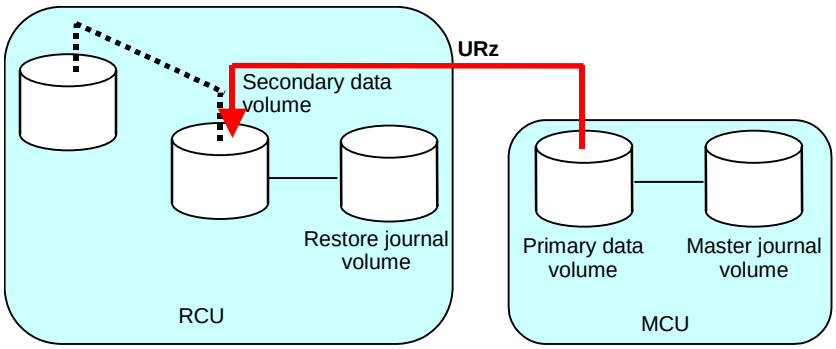


Figure 3-13 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 2

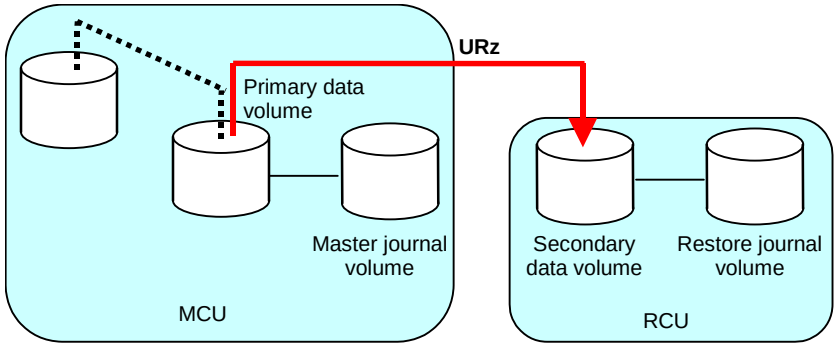


Figure 3-14 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 3

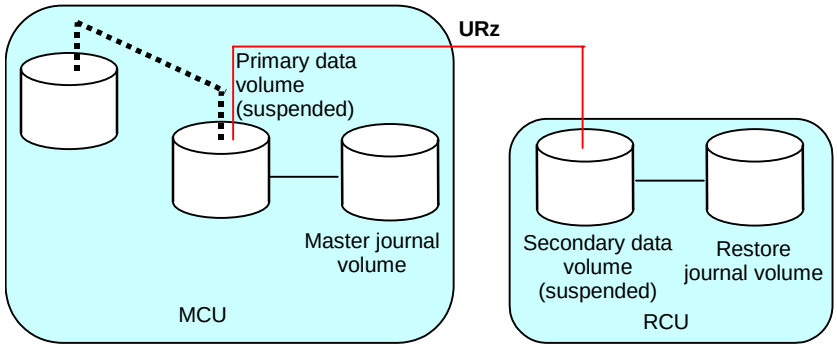


Figure 3-15 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 4

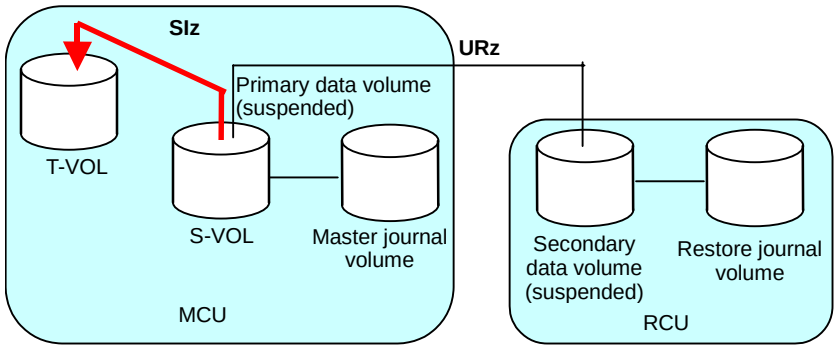


Figure 3-16 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 5

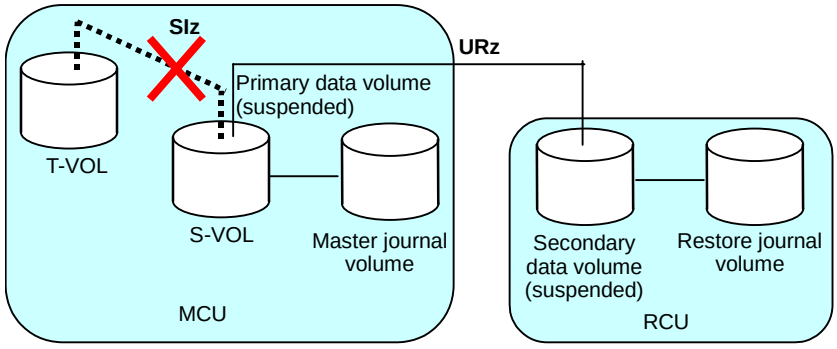


Figure 3-17 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 6

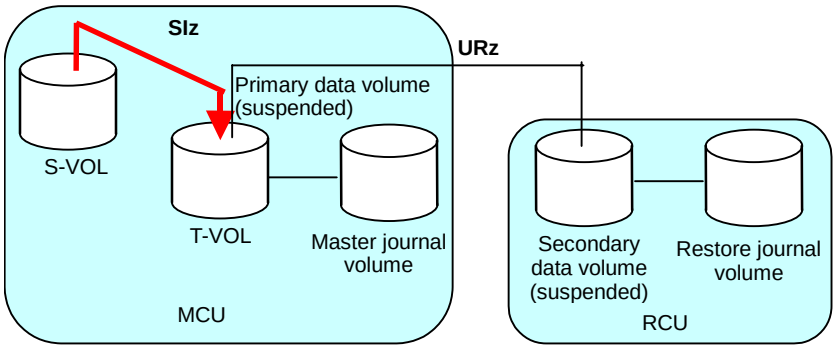


Figure 3-18 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 7

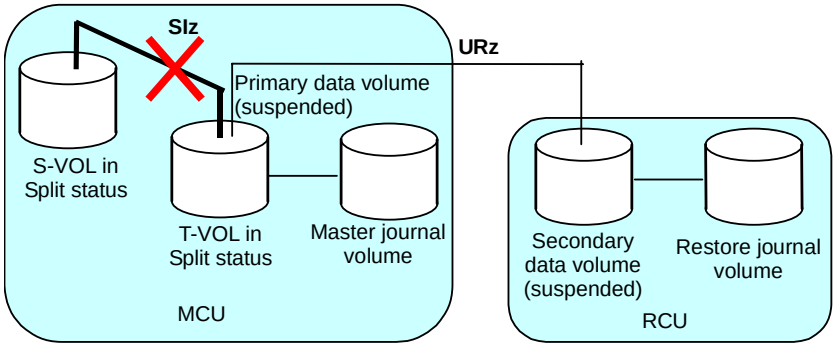


Figure 3-19 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 8

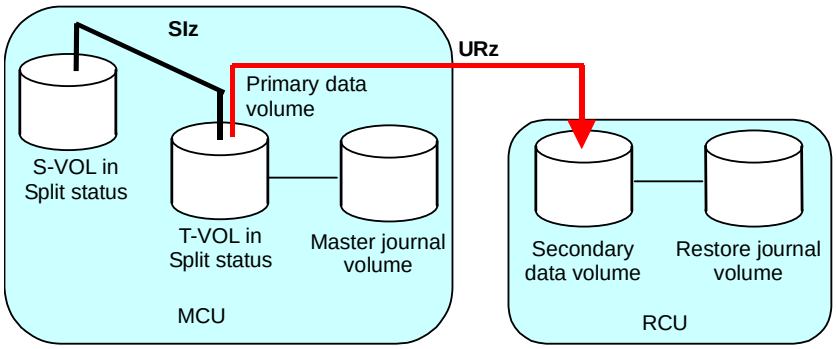


Figure 3-20 Restoring a SIz S-VOL - Step 9

Using At-Time Split Function When Combining URz with ShadowImage for z/OS® (SIz)

When URz secondary data volume (S-VOL) is specified as S-VOL of SIz pair, you can specify the time of backup copy operation for URz by using the At-Time Split function of the Business Continuity Manager. This backup copy operation is called the split operation. The time when split operation is executed is called the split time.

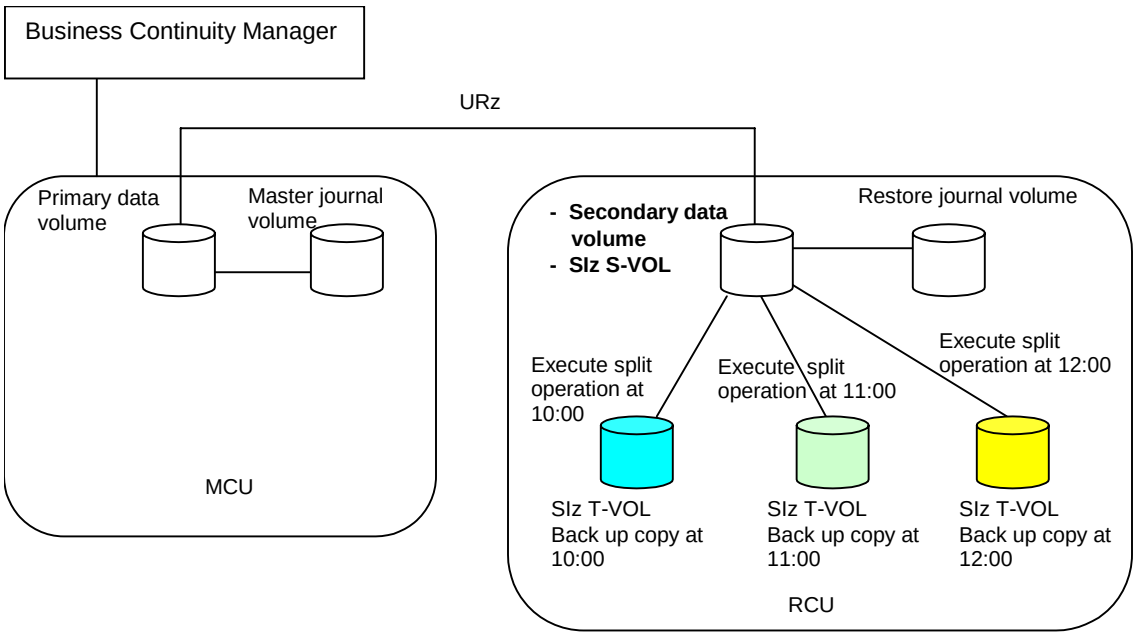


Figure 3-21 Overview of Split Operation

The At-Time Split function has the following restrictions when URz and ShadowImage for z/OS® are used in conjunction:

- The At-Time Split function can be executed by Business Continuity Manager, but cannot be executed by Storage Navigator.
- You can execute split operations on SIz pairs that belong to ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency groups.
- You can apply one split operation to one ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group.
- You can apply up to three split operations to one journal group (equivalent to three ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency groups).
- One SIz S-VOL can be paired with up to three SIz T-VOLs. This enables you to create a maximum of three generations of backup data.

The procedure to use the At-Time Split function when you combine URz with ShadowImage for z/OS® is as follows. The following steps enable you to make backup copy at a specified time without suspending URz pairs.

1. Specify the split time by using Business Continuity Manager.
2. Among the URz restore journals, the journal data created before the split time is restored to URz S-VOLs (SIz S-VOLs).
3. When URz detects the journal data from the restore journal which has the time stamp later than the split time, restore operations will be suspended. After that, split operations will be executed on SIz pairs which are in conjunction with URz S-VOL.
4. After SIz has completed the split operations, URz will resume the suspended restore operation of the restore journal.

Caution: If you use the At-Time Split function when combining URz with SIz, mind the following:

- Make sure that all of the URz S-VOLs are paired with SIz volumes. Also, all of the SIz pairs in conjunction with URz S-VOLs must belong to the same ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group. If all the URz S-VOLs are not paired with SIz volumes, or if SIz pairs in conjunction with URz S-VOL belong to different ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency groups, consistent backup copy operations cannot be executed.
- When you execute split operation, the URz pair status must be duplex, and the SIz pair status must be either duplex or pending. If the status of the URz pair or the SIz pair is suspended due to a failure, the journal data which was created before the split time may not be restored to the SIz T-VOL after the split operation has been completed.
- The split time and the actual starting time of the split operation are not necessarily the same. The starting time of the split operation will delay depending on the amount of journal data stored in the journal volume at the split time. For example, if journal data that needs one hour to be completely restored is stored at the split time, the starting time of the split operation will delay for one hour.
- Even if the specified timeout period has passed from the split time, journal data with the time stamp later than the split time may not be detected due to some reason such as a lot of journal data stored in the journal volume. If the journal data with such a time stamp cannot detected, the split operation of SIz pair will be executed after the specified timeout period. Since the time out value is variable, please set the value according to your environment. The default time out value is 6 hours. For a guide to set the time out value, please refer to the *Guideline for the Timeout Menu Setting When Using At-Time Split Function at Combining Universal Replicator with ShadowImage*. For details on how to specify a timeout value, please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager™ User's Guide*.

  Note: If you use the At-Time Split function when combining URz with SIz, note the following:

- The specified split time is enabled even after the split operation has been executed on SIz pair. When you execute split operation again on ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group that has been split before, specify the split time after deleting the split time registered before.
- In cascading configuration of URz and TrueCopy for z/OS®, the At-Time Split function cannot be used for SIz pairs in conjunction with URz S-VOLs.
- In Multi-target configuration of URz and TrueCopy for z/OS®, when the At-Time Split function is used for SIz pairs in conjunction with URz S-VOLs, please mind the following: when URz and TrueCopy for z/OS® are configured in a cascading configuration during disaster recovery operation, the At-Time Split function cannot be used.
- The specified split time will be reset by executing PS OFF of RCU.
- You cannot execute Reverse Resync of URz when split time is already specified. Please execute Reverse Resync after you delete all the specified split time of SIz pairs in conjunction with the restore journal group. For details on Reverse Resync, please refer to the Business Continuity Manager™ User's Guide.
- When split time is set to ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group, you cannot perform Add Pair operation, Pair Resync operation, or Split Pair operation from the Business Continuity Manager. If you need to execute Add Pair operation, Pair Resync operation, or Split Pair operation, please delete the split time in advance. When split time is set to ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group, pairs can be deleted. If you delete the following pairs, the specified split time will be deleted:
  - Delete all the SIz pairs belonging to the ShadowImage for z/OS® consistency group.
  - Delete all the URz pairs belonging to the URz restore journal group.

TCz Synchronous (3DC Cascading Configuration)

The *USP V* storage system provides the function to combine URz and TCz Synchronous. This combination is intended to ensure that the response time against host I/Os is comparable, regardless of whether the distance between the primary and the secondary sites are short or long. This combination is also intended to ensure that the secondary site stores data that has been stored in the primary site even when a failure occurs in the primary site. These intentions will be fulfilled if remote copy operations are performed using cascading connections and a three data center (3DC) configuration; in a 3DC configuration, an intermediate site is located between the primary and secondary sites.

Figure 3-22 shows an example of a 3DC cascading configuration in which URz and TCz Synchronous are combined. In this configuration, the volume in the primary site is a TCz Synchronous main volume (M-VOL). The corresponding TCz Synchronous remote volume (secondary data volume) is the volume in the intermediate site, which is within a short distance from the primary site. This TCz Synchronous remote volume is also used as a URz primary data volume. The corresponding URz secondary data volume is the volume in the secondary site, which is within a long distance from the intermediate site. If a host issues an I/O to the TCz Synchronous main volume in the primary site, data will be transferred via TCz Synchronous and URz to the secondary site and will be restored to the secondary data volume.

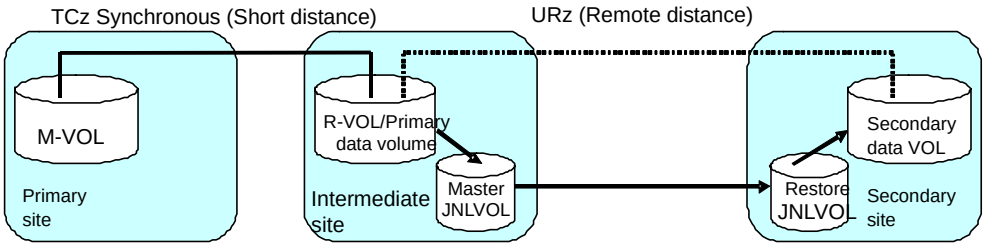


Figure 3-22 3DC Cascading Configuration (Combining URz with TCz)

Data that is copied by TCz Synchronous is stored in the URz primary data volume. If a failure occurs at the TCz Synchronous M-VOL, business tasks can continue by using data in the URz secondary data volume containing data in the TCz Synchronous M-VOL. Data in the TCz Synchronous M-VOL is restored via URz to the secondary data volume in the secondary site, with update sequence integrity ensured. If a failure occurs at both TCz Synchronous M-VOL and secondary data volume due to a disaster or some other reason, disaster recovery can be performed using the URz secondary data volume.

Note: A TCz Synchronous M-VOL must be created in a USP V storage system. The fence level of the TCz Synchronous M-VOL must be **Data (CRIT=Y (ALL))**.

Basic Behavior

This section explains the basic behavior of a 3DC cascading configuration under the following conditions:

- The status of the TCz Synchronous pair is **Duplex**. The status of the URz pair is also **Duplex**.
- A host in the primary site issues an I/O request to the TCz Synchronous M-VOL

As illustrated in Figure 3-23, if a host in the primary site issues an I/O request, data will be stored into the TCz Synchronous M-VOL. The data will also be stored into the TCz Synchronous R-VOL (i.e., the URz primary data volume). After that, the fact that data has been stored will be reported to the primary site, and then the fact that I/O has been finished will be reported to the host. Also, data in the URz primary data volume (i.e., TCz Synchronous R-VOL) will be stored as journal data into the master journal volume in the intermediate site. Sequence numbers, which indicates the order that data will be written, will be added to these journal data. Also, journal data in the master journal volume in the intermediate site will be transferred, independently from and asynchronously with the behavior mentioned above, to the restore journal volume in the secondary site. Next, the journal data in the restore journal volume will be restored to the URz secondary data volume in the secondary site; the journal data will be restored in the order of sequence numbers that are added to journal data. These sequence numbers ensure that updates to URz secondary data volumes in the secondary site will be made in the same order that updates to TCz Synchronous M-VOL in the primary site are made.

As explained above, when the host in the primary site issues an I/O request to the TCz Synchronous M-VOL, the data will be restored asynchronously to the URz secondary data volume in the secondary site in a remote location.

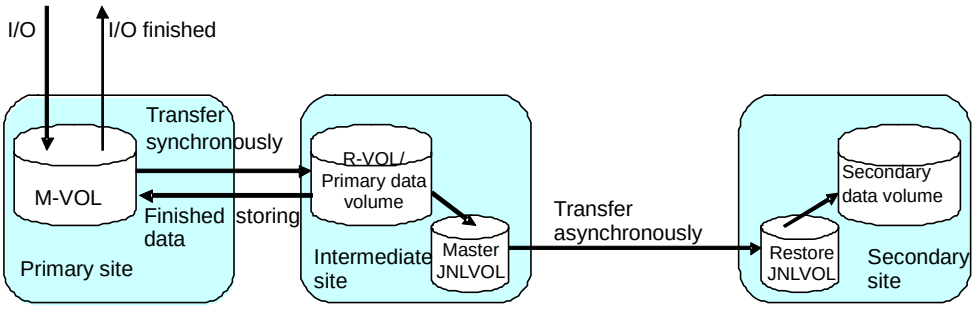


Figure 3-23 Basic Behavior in 3DC Cascading Configuration

If a TCz Synchronous pair is suspended in a 3DC cascading configuration, you will be able to resynchronize the pair by using differential copy. If a URz pair is suspended, you will be able to resynchronize the pair by using differential copy.

Note: To perform disaster recovery from a failure in the primary site in a 3DC cascading configuration, you must ensure that the fence level of the TCz Synchronous M-VOL is **Data (CRIT=Y (ALL))**. If this fence level is specified, you can perform disaster recovery by using the URz secondary data volume that contains the data stored in the TCz Synchronous M-VOL.

Hardware Configuration

This section explains hardware configuration for a 3DC cascading configuration using TCz Synchronous and UR-z/OS®. In a 3DC cascading configuration, three USP V storage systems are required. It is recommended that Business Continuity Manager is installed on hosts in the primary site, the intermediate site, and the secondary site. Storage Navigator computers are required for these sites. The following explains hardware configuration for these sites.

- Primary site
  - The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous installed.
  - The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous M-VOL.
  - Storage system settings must be made so that Business Continuity Manager can be used. For detailed information about settings required for using volumes in a remote site, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.
- Intermediate site
  - The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous installed.
  - The USP V storage system must have URz installed.
  - The USP V storage system must have a volume used as both a TCz Synchronous R-VOL and a URz primary data volume.
  - The USP V storage system must have a URz master journal volume.
  - Storage system settings must be made so that Business Continuity Manager can be used. For detailed information about settings required for using volumes in a remote site, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.
- Remote site
  - The USP V storage system must have URz installed.
  - The USP V storage system must have a URz secondary data volume.
  - The USP V storage system must have a URz restore journal volume.
  - Storage system settings must be made so that Business Continuity Manager can be used. For detailed information about settings required for using volumes in a remote site, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

Setup Procedure

This section explains the procedure for setting up a 3DC cascading configuration using TCz Synchronous and URz.

To set up a 3DC cascading configuration:

1. Install TCz Synchronous and URz. Configure ports and journal groups.

2. Issue a request for creating a TCz Synchronous pair to the primary subsystem MCU where TCz Synchronous is installed.
3. Wait until the status of the TCz Synchronous pair becomes **Duplex**.
4. Issue a request for creating a URz pair to the MCU where URz is installed.
5. When creating a URz pair, be sure to select a value from 1 to 3 as the mirror ID.
6. Wait until the status of the URz pair becomes **Duplex**.

Note: You must ensure that the TCz Synchronous pair status changes to **Duplex** before the URz pair status changes to **Duplex**. If you have made a request for changing the URz pair status to **Duplex** before the TCz Synchronous pair status changes to **Duplex**, the request will be rejected.

For detailed information about installing and using TCz Synchronous, please refer to *TrueCopy for IBM z/OS User's Guide*. For detailed information about URz journal group configuration, see section Journal Group Operations. For detailed information about port configuration, see section Configuring Port Attributes.

Transferring Business Tasks Back to the Primary Site

After performing disaster recovery as explained in section Disaster Recovery in a 3DC Cascading Configuration and removing failures at the primary site or other locations, you will be able to transfer business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer business tasks back to the primary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

7. Stop business tasks at the secondary site.
8. If the disaster recovery operation (as explained in section Disaster Recovery in a 3DC Cascading Configuration) could not change the URz pair status to **Duplex** and could not reverse the copy direction, please use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command onto the journal groups that will make a URz pair between the intermediate site and the secondary site.

   Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.

1. Wait until the status of the URz pair changes to Duplex.
2. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command onto the journal groups that will make a URz pair between the intermediate site and the secondary site.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.

1. Wait until the status of the URz pair changes to Suspend.

2. If the TCz Synchronous volume is not in Simplex status, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKDELETE** command onto the TCz Synchronous pair, and then wait until the status changes to **Simplex**.

   Note: **YKDELETE** is a command for releasing a pair.

   If the TCz Synchronous volume is in **Simplex** status, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKMAKE REVERSE** command onto the TCz Synchronous pair that exists between the primary site and the intermediate site.

   Note: **YKMAKE** is a command for establishing a pair.

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the YKSUSPND FORWARD command onto the TCz Synchronous pair that exists between the primary site and the intermediate site.
2. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKDELETE** command onto the TCz Synchronous pair that exists between the primary site and the intermediate site.
3. Use volumes in the primary site to resume your business tasks.
4. Execute the **YKDELETE** command onto journal groups that will make a URz pair between the intermediate site and the secondary site.

   The system returns to the status before the 3DC cascading configuration was set up.

For detailed information about Business Continuity Manager usage and copy statuses, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

TCz Synchronous (3DC Multi-target Configuration)

The USP V storage system provides the function to combine URz and TCz Synchronous. In a system where URz and TCz Synchronous are combined, there are one primary site and two secondary sites. One of the secondary sites is for synchronous remote copy, and is usually located at a short distance from the primary site. The other secondary site is for asynchronous remote copy, and is usually located at a long distance from the primary site. Such a system configuration is called *three data center (3DC) multi-target configuration*.

3DC multi-target configuration provides solution for disaster recovery and business continuity. Even when a disaster or failure occurs at two sites at the same time, you can restart your business tasks by using data in the remaining secondary site.

The figure below illustrates a 3DC multi-target configuration where URz and TCz Synchronous are combined. In this configuration, there are three sites as follows:

- Primary site for both TCz Synchronous and URz
- Secondary site for TCz Synchronous

- Secondary site for URz

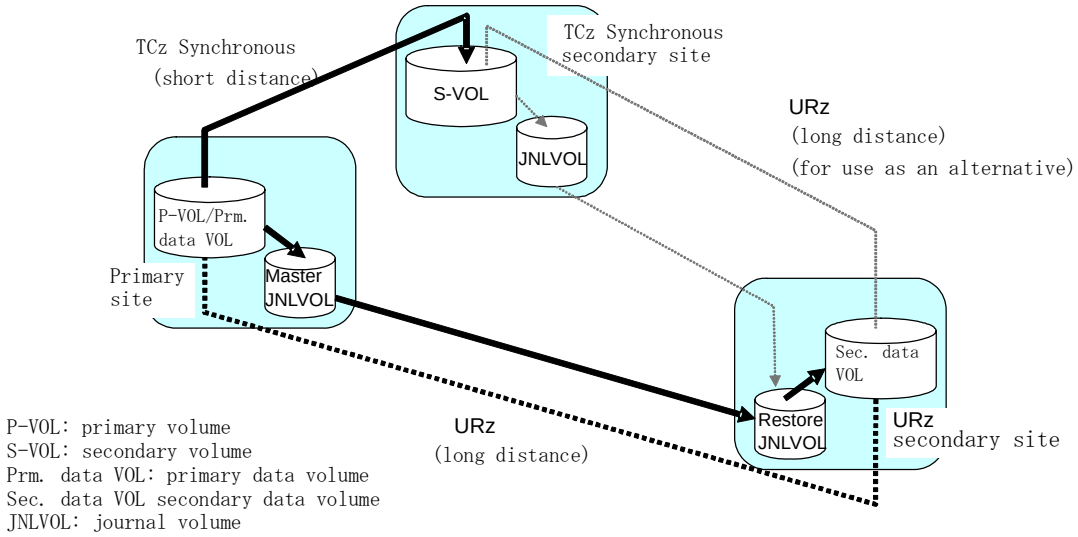


Figure 3-24 3DC Multi-target Configuration (Combining URz with TCz Synchronous)

In this configuration, the primary volume in the primary site is paired with the secondary volume for TCz Synchronous. This primary volume is also paired with the secondary volume for URz. If a host in the primary site writes data to the primary volume, the data will be written to the TCz Synchronous secondary volume in real time, synchronously with writing from the host. The data will also be written to the URz secondary data volume, asynchronously with writing from the host. Update sequence consistency will be maintained with the URz secondary data volume.

Since writing from the URz primary volume to the URz secondary volume is performed asynchronously with writing from the host to the primary volume, this configuration can prevent delay in response to the host even if the URz primary site and the URz secondary site are far from each other.

In addition, you can create the URz pair for delta resync operation in 3DC multi-target configuration, by specifying TCz Synchronous R-VOL in the TCz Synchronous secondary site as the URz primary data volume, and by specifying the volume in the URz secondary site as the URz secondary data volume. If you create the URz pair for delta resync operation, you can resynchronize the URz pair by using journal data in the TCz Synchronous secondary site when a failure occurs in the primary site.

For detailed information about the hardware configuration required for 3DC multi-target configuration, see the next section. For detailed information about the requirements to create a URz pair for delta resync operation, see section Requirements for Creating URz Pair for Delta Resync Operation. As for the requirements to perform delta resync operation, see section Requirements for Performing Delta Resync Operation.

If a failure occurs in a TCz Synchronous primary volume, which is also used as a URz primary data volume, you can resume business tasks by using the TCz Synchronous secondary volume. After you resume business tasks, you need to remove the failure from the primary volume and transfer business tasks back to the primary site. For details, see sections Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site and the TCz Synchronous Secondary Site through Transferring Business Tasks from the URz Secondary Site to the Primary Site.

If a failure occurs in both the primary volume and the TCz Synchronous secondary volume, you can resume your business tasks by using the URz secondary data volume. After you resume business tasks, you need to remove the failure from the primary volume and the TCz Synchronous secondary volume, and transfer business tasks back to the primary site.

Hardware Configuration

A computer system in 3DC multi-target configuration requires the following three sites:

- Primary site for both TCz Synchronous and URz
- Secondary site for TCz Synchronous
- Secondary site for URz

Each of these sites requires one USP V storage system and Storage Navigator computers. It is recommended that Business Continuity Manager should be installed in host computers in each of these sites.

The following explains hardware configuration for USP V storage systems in these sites.

USP V storage system in the primary site:

- The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous installed.
- The USP V storage system must have URz installed.
- The USP V storage system must have a volume used as a TCz Synchronous primary volume and a URz primary data volume.
- The USP V storage system must have a URz master journal volume
- If you use Business Continuity Manager, you need to make settings on the storage system. Please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide* for information about settings required for volume operations in remote sites.

USP V storage system in the TCz Synchronous secondary site:

- The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous installed.
- The USP V storage system must have URz installed.
- The USP V storage system must have TCz Synchronous secondary volume. ***Note:*** This volume will be used for creating a URz pair when disaster recovery is performed at the primary site.
- The USP V storage system must have URz master journal volume. ***Note:*** This volume will be used for creating a URz pair when disaster recovery is performed at the primary site or when you create a URz pair for delta resync operation.
- If you use Business Continuity Manager, you need to make settings on the storage system. Please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide* for information about settings required for volume operations in remote sites.

USP V storage system in the UR secondary site:

- The USP V storage system must have URz installed.
- The USP V storage system must have a URz secondary data volume.
- The USP V storage system must have a URz master journal volume.
- If you use Business Continuity Manager, you need to make settings on the storage system. Please refer to the *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide* for information about settings required for volume operations in remote sites.

Setup Procedure

This section explains the procedure for setting up a 3DC multi-target configuration using TCz Synchronous and URz.

To set up a 3DC multi-target configuration:

1. Install TCz Synchronous and URz. Configure ports and journal groups; journal groups must be configured for storage systems in the three sites.
2. In the primary site, create a TCz Synchronous pair.
3. Wait until the status of the TCz Synchronous pair becomes Duplex.
4. In the primary site, create a URz pair.
5. When creating a URz pair, be sure to select a value from 1 to 3 as the mirror ID.
6. Wait until the status of the URz pair becomes Duplex.
7. If you want to create a URz pair for delta resync operation, go to the next step.

8. Specify the TCz Synchronous R-VOL in TCz Synchronous secondary site as the primary data volume, and specify the secondary data volume in URz secondary site as the secondary data volume to create the URz pair for delta resync operation.

   Select any mirror ID from 1 to 3 except the one used in step 4.

Note: If you release the TCz Synchronous pair that is created in step 2, the URz pair created in step 8 will be released as well. In addition, if you release the URz pair created in step 4, the secondary data volume of the URz pair created in step 8 will be deleted. In this case, you can only perform deleting operation on the remaining primary data volume.

For detailed information about installing and using TCz Synchronous, please refer to the *TrueCopy for IBM z/OS User's Guide*.

For detailed information about URz journal group configuration, see section Journal Group Operations. For detailed information about port configuration, see section Configuring Port Attributes.

Requirements for Creating URz Pair for Delta Resync Operation

To create a URz pair for delta resync operation, the followings are required.

- Create the pair in 3DC multi-target configuration
- Use TCz Synchronous R-VOL in Duplex status as the primary data volume
- Use URz data volume in Duplex status as the secondary data volume
- Use the mirror ID from 1 to 3 that is not used by the secondary data volume
- Fulfill the conditions to combine URz with other functions in Table 3-11
- The system option mode 506 must be set to **ON** at all site

In addition to the abovementioned requirements, all URz pairs in the journal group must satisfy the following requirements when you create more than one URz pair for delta resync operation.

- Use the same mirror ID for all pairs
- Use the same restore journal group for all pairs

Requirements for Performing Delta Resync Operation

To perform delta resync operation properly, you need to specify a URz pair that belongs to the journal group whose URz pairs meet the following requirements. Note that if any URz pair in the journal group does not meet the requirements, an error occurs even if the specified URz pair meets the requirements.

- Status of the primary data volume is Hold
- Using the volume of TCz Synchronous pair as the primary data volume

  If you use TCz Synchronous M-VOL, the pair status should be Duplex. If you use TCz Synchronous R-VOL, the pair status should be Suspend. ***Note:*** Check the pair status after the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPEND REVERSE** command and **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command are executed.
- Secondary data volume uses two mirror IDs; the status of the secondary volume which uses one of the two mirror IDs is Hold, and the status of the secondary volume which uses another mirror ID is Duplex or Suspend
- All differential data between the primary and secondary data volume is stored in the master journal group

  Note: Right after you have created the URz pair for delta resync operation, or if the failure occurred at the primary site right after the recovery of TCz Synchronous or URz pair, only a part of the differential data between the primary and secondary data volume may be stored in the master journal group.

When either of the abovementioned requirements is not fulfilled, usually an error occurs and delta resync operation will fail. Especially in the following cases, delta resync operation will not be performed since the necessary journal data does not exist:

- When the primary data volume in the URz pair for delta resync operation is updated after creating the URz pair, but URz primary data volumes that are also used as TCz Synchronous primary data volumes are not updated in the primary site
- When the volumes in the primary site are updated after splitting TCz Synchronous pair
- When the secondary data volume is updated after splitting URz pair
- As a result of the update of the primary data volume after splitting URz pair, when the capacity of the journal data exceeds 70% of the journal volume in TCz Synchronous secondary site
- When the primary data volume in the URz pair for delta resync operation is updated and then the capacity of the journal data exceeds 70% the journal volume in the primary site of URz pair for delta resync operation
- When no volumes (including volumes after failover or failback) in the primary site are updated after creating the URz pair for delta resync operation
- When delta resync operation is performed within about one minute after a volume in the primary site is updated after the URz pair for delta resync operation is created

Note: By specifying an option, you can copy the whole data in the primary volume to the secondary volume and avoid the error when only a part of the differential data between primary and secondary data volume is stored in the journal volume. For detailed information about the option, see section Changing Options for a Journal Group.

Changing to 3DC Multi-target Configuration after Recovering from Primary Site Failures

If you follow the operation procedure in section Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site and the TCz Synchronous Secondary Site and then the system does not change to 3DC cascading configuration, you can change the system into 3DC multi-target configuration after removing failures from the primary site and other locations, The resulting 3DC multi-target system uses the former TCz secondary volume as a primary volume.

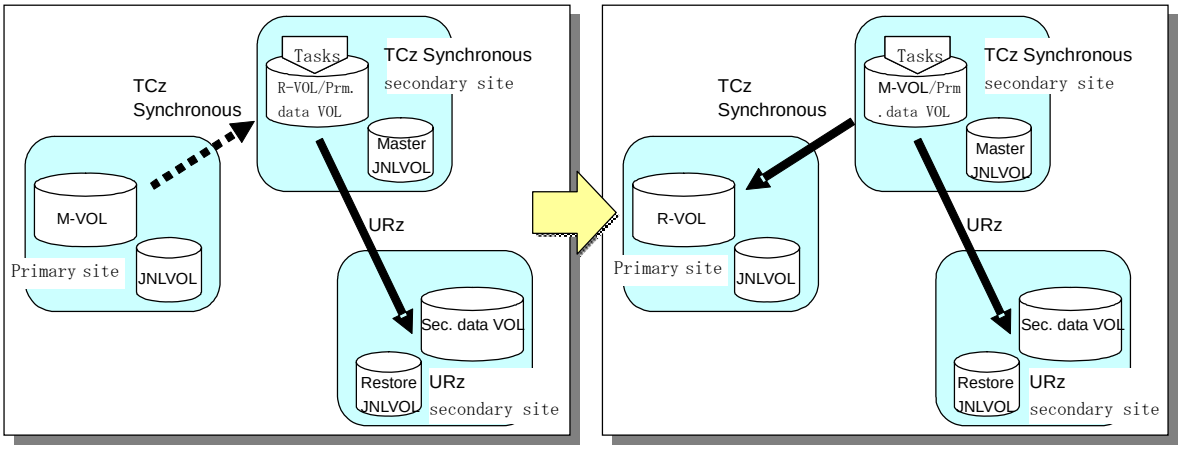
To change the system into 3DC multi-target configuration:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKDELETE** command on the journal group corresponding to the former URz pair.

   Note: **YKDELETE** is a command for releasing a pair.

2. If pair resynchronization has not been performed to reverse the primary volume and the remote volume of the TCz Synchronous pair (i.e., if the pair is suspended), use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC** command, so that the copy direction of the TCz Synchronous pair will be reversed.

   Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.



M-VOL: main volume
R-VOL: remote volume
Prm data VOL: primary data volume
Sec. data VOL: secondary data volume
JNLVOL: journal volume

Figure 3-25 Changing into 3DC Multi-target Configuration After Recovering from Primary Site Failures

Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Cascading Configuration)

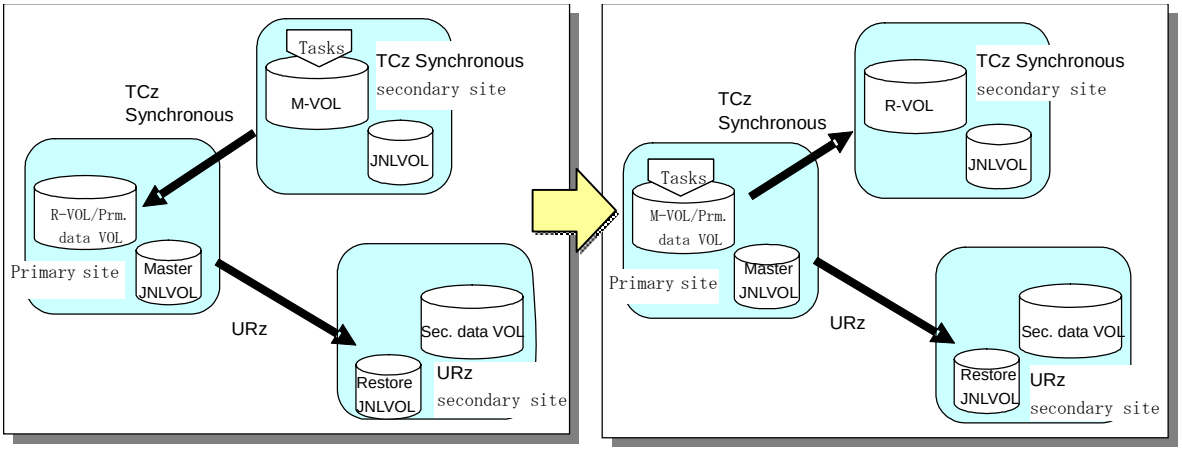
If you follow the operation procedure in section Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site and the TCz Synchronous Secondary Site and then the system is changed to 3DC cascading configuration, you can transfer your business tasks back to the primary site after removing failures from the primary site and other locations.

To transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Stop business tasks at the TCz Synchronous secondary site.
2. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND FORWARD** command to the TCz Synchronous pair.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.
3. Use the primary volume in the primary site to resume your business tasks.
4. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC FORWARD** command on the TCz Synchronous pair, so that the copy direction of the TCz Synchronous pair will be returned to the original state. The system configuration changes to the original 3DC multi-target configuration.

   Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.



M-VOL: main volume
R-VOL: remote volume
Prm data VOL: primary data volume
Sec. data VOL: secondary data volume
JNLVOL: journal volume

Figure 3-26 Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Cascading Configuration)

Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Multi-target Configuration)

If you remove failures from the primary site and other locations and then the system is changed to 3DC multi-target configuration, you can transfer your business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKDELETE** command on the current URz pair, which extends between the TCz secondary site and the URz secondary site.

   Note: **YKDELETE** is a command for releasing a pair.

2. Stop business tasks at the TCz Synchronous secondary site.
3. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND FORWARD** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.

4. Use the main volume in the primary site to resume your business tasks.
5. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC FORWARD** command on the TCz Synchronous pair, so that the copy direction of the pair will be returned to its original direction.

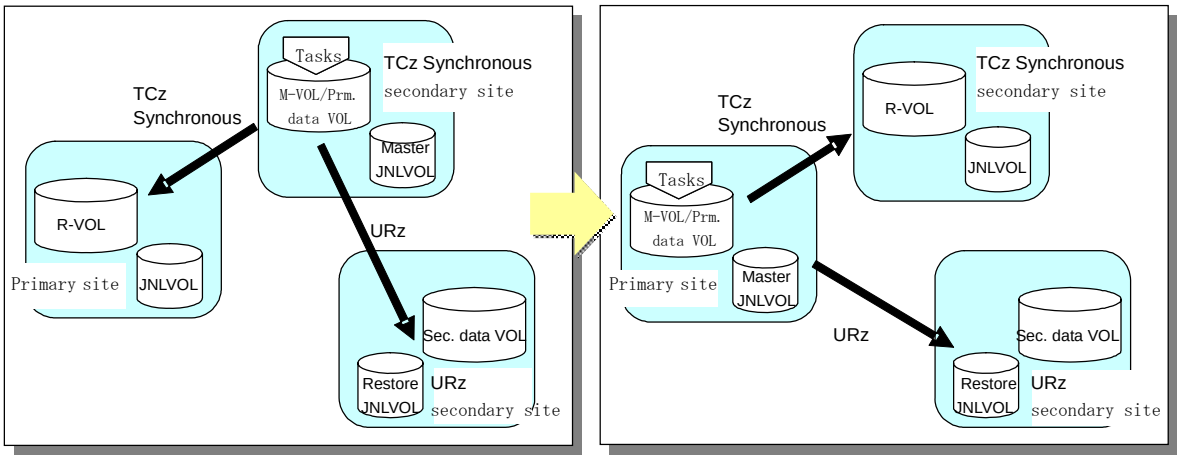
   Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.

6. Create a URz pair that consists of a volume in the primary site and a volume in the URz secondary site. Ensure that the primary data volume of the resulting pair is the volume in the primary site, and that the secondary data volume of the resulting pair is the volume in the URz secondary site.

   To create this pair, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKMAKE** command on the journal group corresponding to that pair.

   When the pair is created, the system configuration returns to the original 3DC multi-target configuration.

   Note: **YKMAKE** is a command for establishing a pair.



M-VOL: main volume
R-VOL: remote volume
Prm data VOL: primary data volume
Sec. data VOL: secondary data volume
JNLVOL: journal volume

Figure 3-27 Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Multi-target Configuration)

Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (When Delta Resync Operation is Performed in 3DC multi-target configuration)

If you remove failures from the primary site and other locations and then the system is changed to 3DC multi-target configuration, you can transfer your business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. If the TCz Synchronous pair is suspended, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command on the current TCz Synchronous pair.

The copy direction of the TCz Synchronous pair will be reversed.

2. Stop business tasks at the TCz Synchronous secondary site.
3. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND FORWARD** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   TCz Synchronous pair will be split and the copy operation stops temporarily.
4. Use the main volume in the primary site to resume your business tasks.
5. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC FORWARD** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   The copy direction of the pair will be returned to its original direction.
6. Perform delta resync operation on the volume in the TCz Synchronous secondary site.

   The status of the data volumes of URz pair changes as explained in the following table.

Table 3-14 Changes of URz Pair Status by Delta Resync Operation (When Business Tasks are Transferred from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site)

URz Pair	Pair Status before Delta Resync Operation		Pair Status after Delta Resync Operation	
	Primary Data Volume	Secondary Data Volume	Primary Data Volume	Secondary Data Volume
URz pair between TCz Synchronous primary site and URz secondary site	Hold	Hold	Duplex or Pending Duplex	Duplex or Pending Duplex
URz pair between TCz Synchronous secondary site and URz secondary site	Duplex or Suspend	Duplex or Suspend	Hold	Hold

Caution on transferring business tasks back to the primary site when using delta resync:

After you remove failures from the primary site and other locations and then the system is changed to 3DC multi-target configuration, the status of a pair between the primary site and the URz secondary site may be abnormal. If the status of the pair remains abnormal, you will be unable to transfer your business tasks back to the primary site. To solve this problem, please see Table 3-15, check the pair status and then perform a problem-solving operation before transferring business tasks back to the primary site.

Table 3-15 Pair Status and Operation after Recovery of the Primary Site

No.	If the Status of the Pair in the Primary Site is	and the Status of the Pair in the URz Secondary Site is	Please Perform the Following Operation before Transferring Business Tasks Back to the Primary Site

No.	If the Status of the Pair in the Primary Site is	and the Status of the Pair in the URz Secondary Site is	Please Perform the Following Operation before Transferring Business Tasks Back to the Primary Site
1	Pending Duplex	Hold	Make sure that the status of the pair in the primary site is **Suspend**, and then perform the operation explained in the row No. 3 of this table.
2	Duplex	Hold	Perform the operation explained in the row No. 1 of this table.
3	Suspend	Hold	***Step 1*:** Release the URz pair from the primary site. *Step 2:* Make sure that all the pairs belonging to the journal group in the primary site are released. *Step 3:* Create a URz delta resync pair that extends from the primary site to the URz secondary site. For information about requirements for creating the pair, see section 3.8.5.3.
4	Hold	Hold	The pair is in normal condition. You can transfer business tasks as described earlier in this section.
5	Hlde	Hold	Change the status of the **Hlde** pair back to **Hold**. For information about how to do this, see section Restoring a Pair of Data Volumes.
6	Simplex	Hold	***Step 1:*** Release the pair in **Hold** status from the URz secondary site. *Step 2:* Create a URz delta resync pair that extends from the primary site to the URz secondary site. For information about requirements for creating the pair, see section 3.8.5.3.

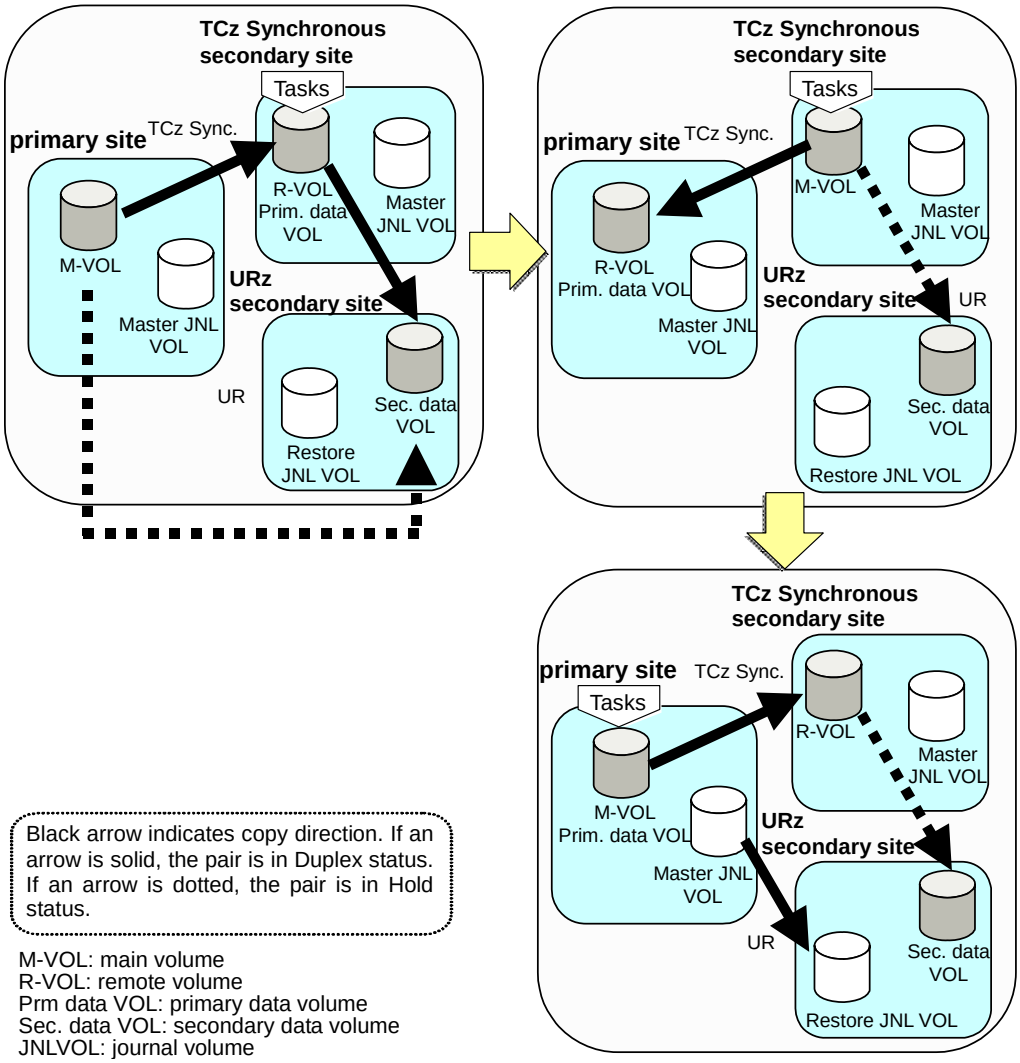


Figure 3-28 Transferring Business Tasks from the TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (When Delta Resync Operation is Performed in 3DC Multi-target Configuration)

Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site and the TCz Synchronous Secondary Site

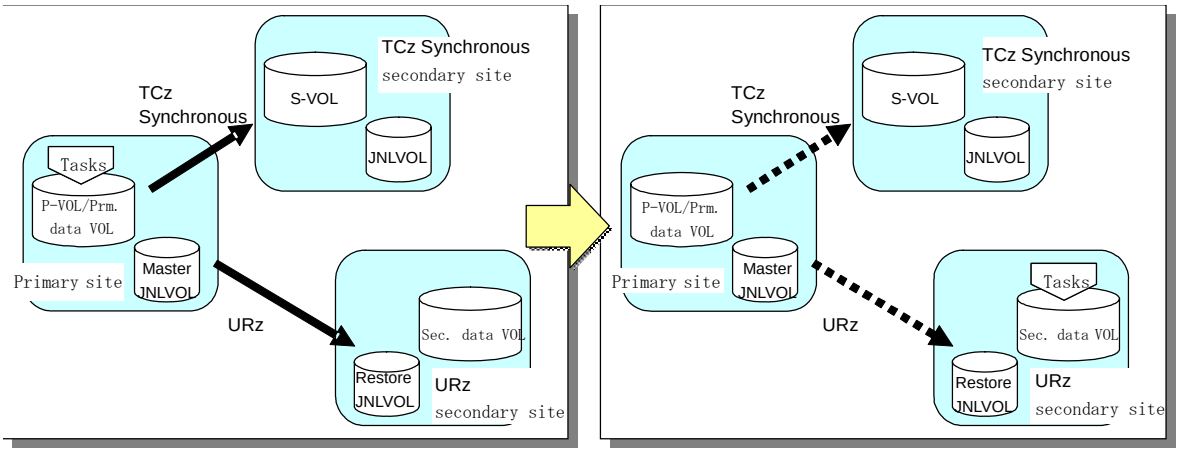
If a disaster or failure occurs in both the primary site and the TCz Synchronous secondary site in a 3DC multi-target configuration, you can resume your business tasks by using the secondary volume in the URz secondary site. After you transfer business tasks to the URz secondary site, you need to remove failures from the primary site and the TCz Synchronous secondary site, so that you will be able to transfer business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks to the URz secondary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command on the journal group corresponding to the URz pair, which extends between the primary site and the URz secondary site.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.

2. Use volumes in the URz primary site to resume your business tasks.



P-VOL: primary volume
S-VOL: secondary volume
Prm data VOL: primary data volume
Sec. data VOL: secondary data volume
JNLVOL: journal volume

Figure 3-29 Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site and the TCz Synchronous Secondary Site

Transferring Business Tasks from the URz Secondary Site to the Primary Site

If you follow the instructions in the previous section and then remove failures from the primary site and the TCz Synchronous secondary site, you can transfer your business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKDELETE** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   Note: **YKDELETE** is a command for releasing a pair.

2. Reverse the copy direction of the URz pair. To do this, use the Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command on the journal group corresponding to the URz pair.

As a result, the former secondary volume in the URz secondary site changes to the primary data volume. Also, the former primary volume in the primary site changes to the secondary data volume (see the upper-right picture in Figure 3-30).

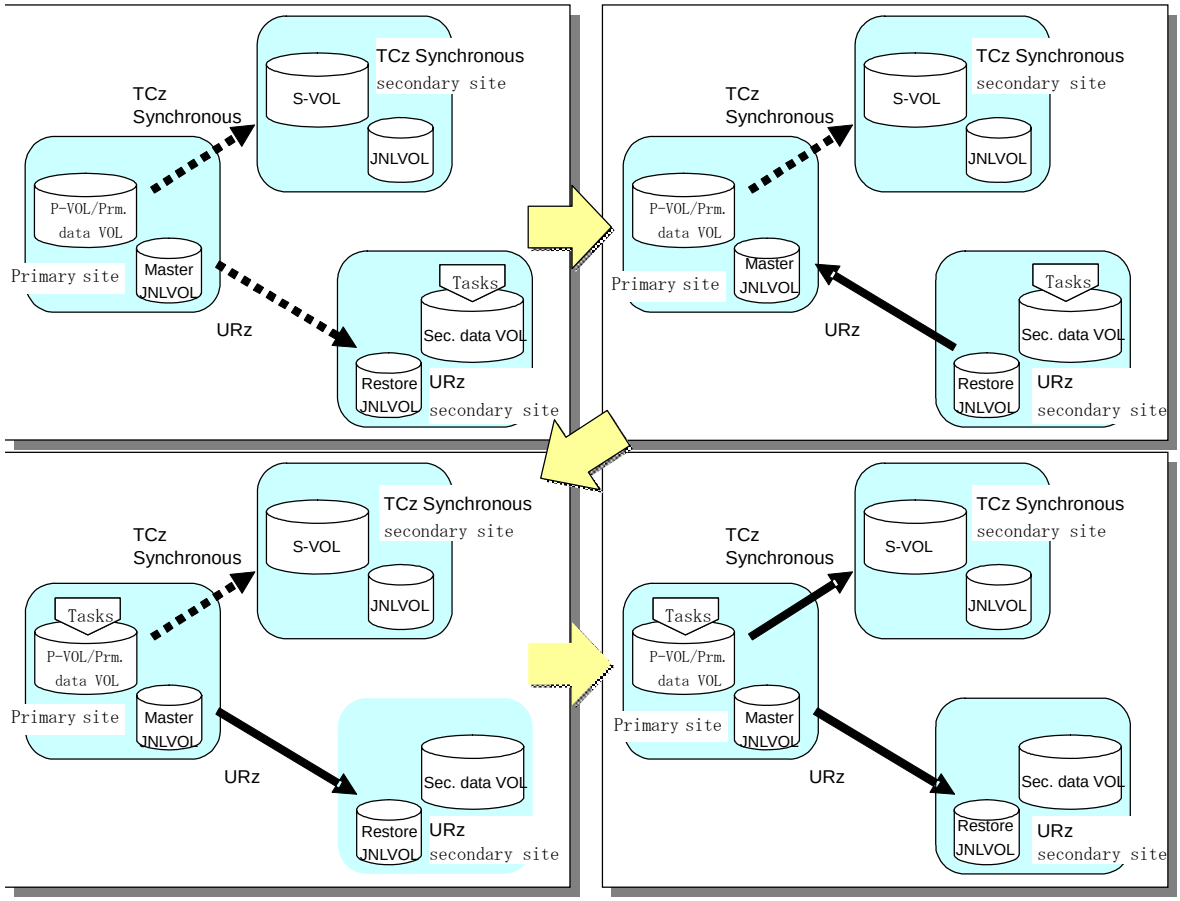
Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.

3. Stop business tasks at the URz secondary site.
4. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND FORWARD** command on the URz pair.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.
5. Use the primary volume in the primary site to resume your business tasks.
6. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the YKRESYNC FORWARD command on the URz pair, so that the copy direction of the pair will be returned to its original direction.
7. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKMAKE** command on the TCz pair.

   The system configuration returns to the original 3DC multi-target configuration (see the lower-right picture in Figure 3-30).

   Note: **YKMAKE** is a command for creating a pair.



P-VOL: primary volume
S-VOL: secondary volume
Prm data VOL: primary data volume
Sec. data VOL: secondary data volume
JNLVOL: journal volume

Figure 3-30 Transferring Business Tasks from the URz Secondary Site to the Primary Site

Planning of Journal Volumes

Why Planning is Necessary?

Data transfer speed for journal groups is affected by specifications of journal volumes that the journal groups use. Therefore, you need to think about specifications of journal volumes to be used by journal volumes, in order to achieve the data transfer speed that you want.

What to Consider for Planning

This section explains what you need to consider when deciding on journal volume specifications.

The following factors affect the speed for writing to and reading from journal volumes, particularly when a temporary communication path failure occurs between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, or when the amount of data transferred from hosts to the primary storage system is increasing:

- RAID configuration of the RAID groups that will contain journal volumes
- Types of physical volumes in the RADI groups that will contain journal volumes
- Frequency of access to non-journal volumes in the RAID groups that will contain journal volumes
- Data transfer speed required for the non-journal volumes mentioned above
- Disk usage rate for RAID groups

The following factor affects the time during which data transfer with hosts can continue without being influenced by a temporary communication path failure between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, or without being influenced by an increase in the data to be transferred from hosts to the primary storage system.

- Capacity of journal volumes

Computing Required Data Transfer Speeds for Journal Volumes

Figure 3-31 illustrates how the data transfer speed (i.e., the amount of data to be transferred per unit of time) will change as time elapses, citing different types of data transfer speed with URz. Data transfer speed between hosts and the primary storage system goes through two phases; in one phase the data transfer speed remains almost unchanged, and in another phase the data transfer speed increases temporarily.

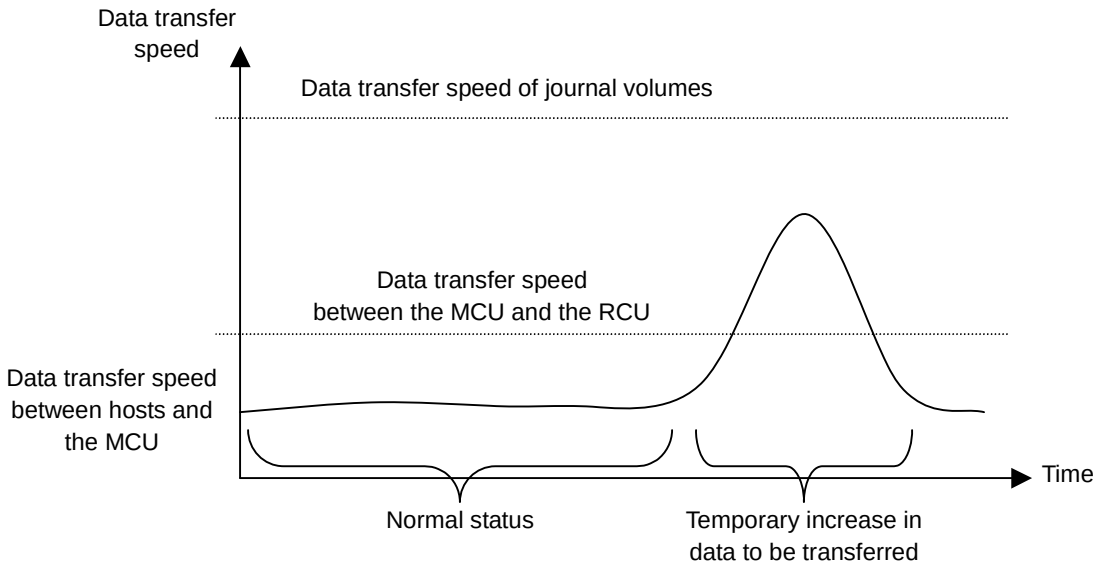


Figure 3-31 Data Transfer Speed with URz (Data Transfer Speed of Journal Volumes)

As illustrated in Figure 3-31, the data transfer speed (i.e., the speed for reading and writing) of journal volumes in the master journal group must exceed the amount of temporary increase in data to be transferred. If the data transfer speed of journal volumes is below the amount of temporary increase in data to be transferred, the journal data for the temporary increase in data to be transferred will not be stored into journal volumes timely.

In Figure 3-31, data transfer speed between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system indicates transfer speed of journal data between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system.

Planning RAID Group Configuration and Journal Group Configuration

A RAID group can consist of physical volumes of different number of revolutions, physical volumes of different capacity, and physical volumes of different RAID configurations (e.g., RAID-1 and RAID-5). Data transfer speed of RAID groups is affected by physical volumes and RAID configurations.

The data transfer speed of a journal volume depends on the data transfer speed of the RAID group that the journal volume belongs. One RAID group can consist of one or more volumes, including journal volumes. Therefore, if frequent accesses are made to non-journal volumes in a RAID group, relatively fewer accesses can be made to journal volumes in the same RAID group, and this can cause drop in the data transfer speed of journal volumes. To avoid drop in the data transfer speed of journal volumes, you will need to consider, for example, relocating the journal volumes and the frequently accessed non-journal volumes (i.e., placing the journal groups in one RAID group and placing the frequently accessed non-journal volumes in another RAID group).

Arranging Journal Volumes

The following indicates the data transfer speed of journal volumes mentioned earlier in section Computing Required Data Transfer Speeds for Journal Volumes.

If a host attempts to write data of "*aa*" kilobytes and the number of write I/Os per second is "*bb*", the data transfer speed required for journal volumes is calculated as follows:

Data transfer speed of journal volumes (MB/sec) > $aa \times bb \div 1{,}024$

The data transfer speed of journal volumes must exceed the data transfer speed from hosts to the primary storage system. You must consider the data transfer speed (i.e., the speed for writing and reading) required for journal volumes, determine physical volume configuration and RAID configuration of RAID groups, and create journal volumes in the RAID groups.

Computing the Journal Volume Capacity

In Figure 3-32, the size of the shaded area indicates the amount of journal data to be stored in journal volumes as a result of temporary increase in data transferred.

If a temporary communication path failure occurs between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, journal transfers between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system will stop temporarily. If hosts transfer data to the primary storage system while journal transfers between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system are stopped temporarily, all the data transferred from hosts to the primary storage system will be stored as journal data in journal volumes.

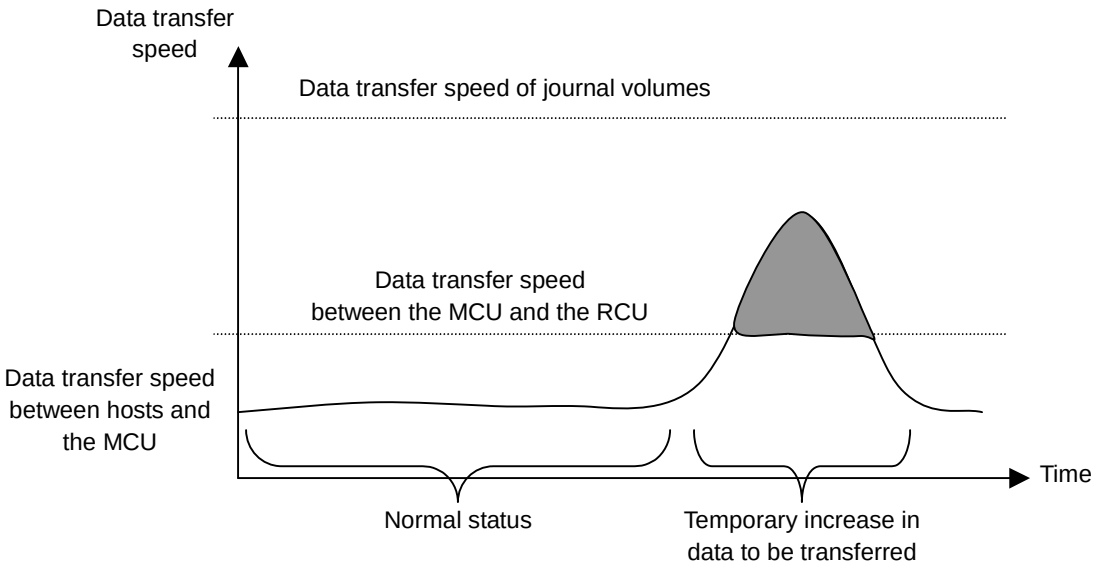


Figure 3-32 Data Transfer Speed with URz (Influence on Journal Volume Capacity)

The following factors determine the required journal volume capacity:

- the period of time during which data transfer can continue between hosts and the primary storage system when a temporary increase in transferred data occurs or when a communication path failure occurs between the primary and secondary storage system.
- the data transfer speed for the period of time that is mentioned above

To determine the journal volume capacity, use the following formula. In this formula, $V_{H\text{-}M}$ is the data transfer speed between hosts and the primary storage system. $V_{M\text{-}R}$ is the data transfer speed between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system. *t* is the length of time during which data transfer can continue.

$$\text{Journal volume capacity} > V_{H\text{-}M} - V_{M\text{-}R} \times t$$

If you want to calculate journal volume capacity that is required when a communication path failure occurs between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, please assign 0 (zero) to $V_{M\text{-}R}$.

The total capacity of journal volumes in each journal group must exceed the value illustrated above.

Planning Data Transfer Speed before Reversing Data Volumes

When a failure occurs at a host, one of the failure recovery measures is to reverse the primary data volume and the secondary data volume (i.e., change the copy direction). If you want to reverse the primary data volume and the secondary data volume, usually you must ensure that the data transfer speed is the same before and after you reverse these data volumes. Therefore, when you do planning on master journal volumes and restore journal volumes, you need to apply the same scheme to both master and restore journal volumes.

If you do not want to reverse the primary data volume and the secondary data volume, you will be able to cope with a temporary increase in data transfers and a communication path failure between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, if the master journal volume satisfies conditions mentioned earlier. Therefore, the data transfer speed and the volume capacity required for restore journal volumes are smaller than those required for master journal volumes. Note that the data transfer speed for journal volumes must exceed the data transfer speed in "normal status".

Contributing Factors for Data Transfer Speed between Storage Systems

The speed of data transfer between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system depends on the following factors:

- The bandwidth of data transfer paths
- The journal transfer speed of the DKC

The data transfer speed between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system must exceed the data transfer speed in "normal status" mentioned in Figure 3-33 below. If a temporary increase in transferred data occurs and the data transfer speed between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system is exceeded, the excess data will be stored temporarily in journal volumes.

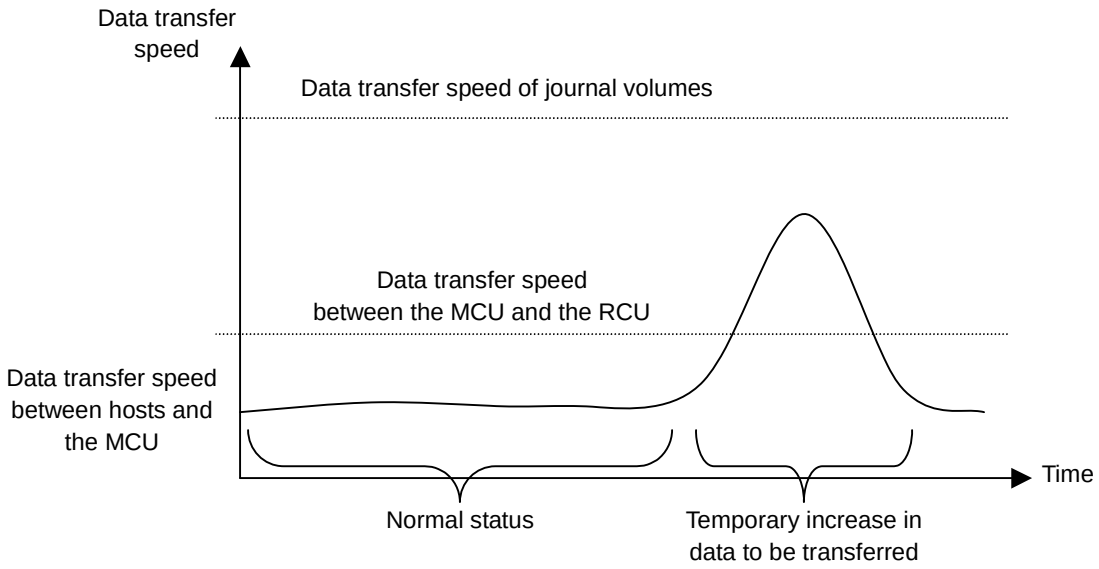


Figure 3-33 Data Transfer Speed with URz (Data Transfer Speed between the Primary Storage System and the Secondary Storage System)

Bandwidth for Data Transfer Paths

The bandwidth (i.e., the data transfer speed) of data transfer paths between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system depends on the user's environment. The bandwidth must exceed the data transfer speed in "normal status" mentioned earlier.

DKC Journal Transfer Speed

The journal transfer speed of the DKC depends on the number of paths used for transferring journals. The number of paths for transferring journals must be so enough that the journal transfer speed exceeds the data transfer speed in the "normal status" mentioned earlier. The maximum number of paths for each pair of the primary DKC and the secondary DKC is 8.

Configuration that TagmaStore USP/NSC and USP V is Connected

URz can execute remote copy operations in a system configuration that USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC is connected. Specifically, the following configurations are supported.

- System configuration for remote copy operation by URz from USP V to TagmaStore USP/NSC.
- System configuration for remote copy operation by URz from TagmaStore USP/NSC to USP V.

The following are described for the connection between USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC.

- System option mode (see section 3.8.1)
- Logical storage system (LDKC) that can be connected to TagmaStore USP/NSC
- Volume pair that can create pairs
- Connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC in 3DC remote copy configuration
- Connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC when using extended consistency groups

System Option Mode

When you execute remote copy by connecting USP V with TagmaStore USP/NSC, system option mode XXX needs to be set to OFF to. For detailed information about the system option mode XXX, see Table 3-16.

Table 3-16 System Option Mode XXX

Mode	Description
XXX	ON: The format of the serial number of the logical storage system (LDKC) 00 of USP V is five-digit alphanumeric characters (serial number of the LDKC).The serial number reported to or displayed in the hos to SVP is the is five-digit alphanumeric value. OFF: The format of the serial number of the logical storage system (LDKC) 00 of USP V is five-digit alphanumeric characters (serial number of the storage system).The serial number reported to or displayed in the hos to SVP is the is five-digit alphanumeric value. The serial number for LDKC00 and the serial number for the storage system is the same. *Note:* The default value for mode XXX is OFF.

Logical Storage System (LDKC) that Can be Connected to TagmaStore USP/NSC

When you execute remote copy by connecting USP V with TagmaStore USP/NSC, configure a logical path between LDKC of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC. In this case, the logical path can be configured only between LDKC00 of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC. Therefore, you cannot configure a logical path between LDKC01 of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC. (see Figure 3-1)

More than one TagmaStore USP/NSC can be connected to LDKC00 of USP V.

Note: There are only two LDKCs for the current version, which are LDKC00 and LDKC01. LDKC01 and TagmaStore USP/NSC cannot be connected.

Note: The steps to configure a logical path between USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC is the same with the steps to set logical paths between volumes of USP V. For detailed information about the steps to configure logical paths, see Chapter 5.

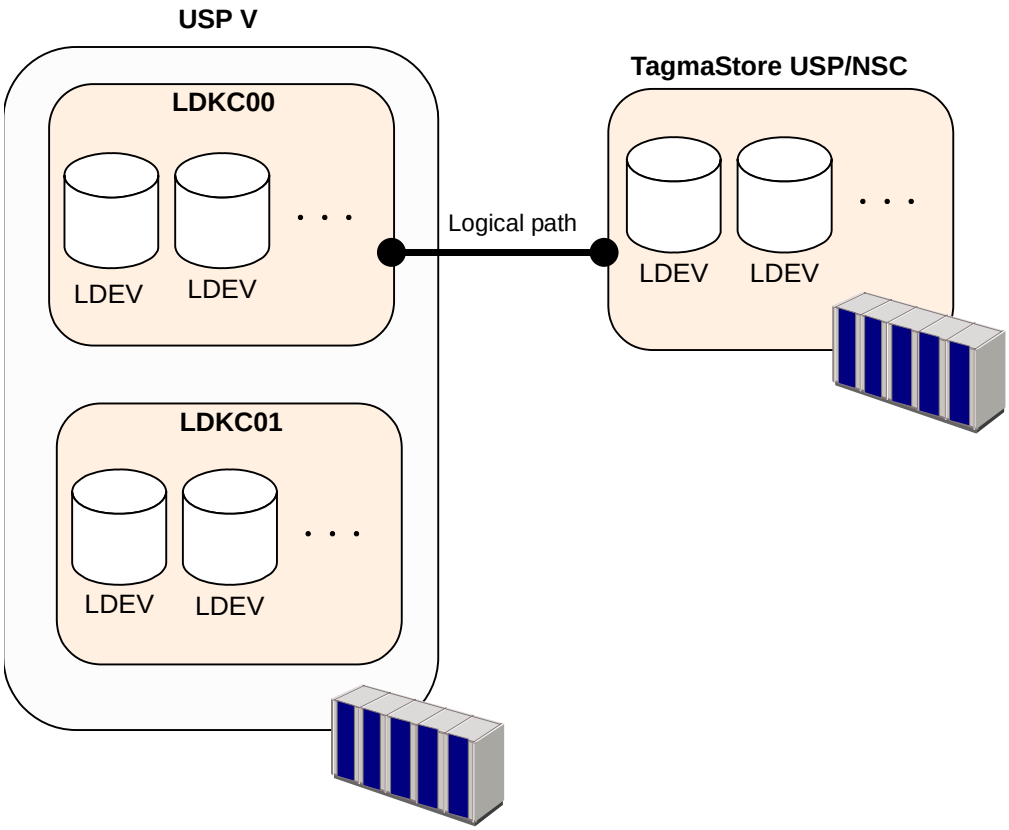


Figure 3-34 LDKC00 that Can Configure Logical Path Between USP V

Volume Pair that Can Create Pairs

When you execute remote copy by connecting USP V with TagmaStore USP/NSC, only the volumes of LDKC00 is the volumes of USP V that can be used as the volume pair of URz. The CU:LDEV number of LDKC00 takes between 00:00 to 3F:FF.

Note: 16,384 volumes of LDKC00 (The CU:LDEV number is between 0000 to 3FFF) can be used as volume pairs or remote command devices in the current version.

Note: The steps to use data volume pairs in a system configuration that USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC are connected is the same with the steps to use data volume pairs of USP V. For detailed information about the steps to use data volume pairs, see Manipulating Data Volume Pairs in Extended Consistency Groups.

Connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC for 3DC Remote Copy Configuration

USP V can execute remote copy in 3DC cascading configuration or 3DC multi-target configuration by combining URz with TCz. USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC can be connected in 3DC cascading configuration or 3DC multi-target configuration. When you connect USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC, there are no limitations for the combination of the primary and secondary sites.

Note: For detailed information about the 3DC cascading configuration, see section TCz Synchronous (3DC Cascading Configuration). For detailed information about the 3DC multi-target configuration, see section TCz Synchronous (3DC Multi-target Configuration).

Connection with TagmaStore USP/NSC When Using Extended Consistency Groups

URz can perform remote copy operations from more than one primary storage system to more than one secondary storage system using extended consistency groups. Primary storage subsystems can be a mixture of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC. Secondary subsystems can also be a mixture of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC storage subsystem. The mixture of primary storage systems and the mixture of secondary storage systems are described below.

Note: For detailed information about the extended consistency groups, see section Using Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems.

- Mixture of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC primary storage systems

  There are no limitations on the combinations of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC primary storage systems. For details on connections between the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, see the previous section.

- Mixture of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC secondary storage systems

There are no limitations on the combinations of USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC secondary storage systems. However, note that the specifications of the extended consistency groups differ depending on whether the supervisor DKC is USP V or TagmaStore USP/NSC. The specifications of the extended consistency group when TagmaStore USP/NSC is connected is described below.

– When the supervisor DKC is USP V and the subordinate DKCs are TagmaStore USP/NSC

  There are no limitations for the use of extended consistency groups when the supervisor DKC is USP V and the subordinate DKCs are TagmaStore USP/NSC. All journal groups in USP V and TagmaStore USP/NSC can be specified as extended consistency groups. Two examples of the configurations of secondary EXCTG are described next.

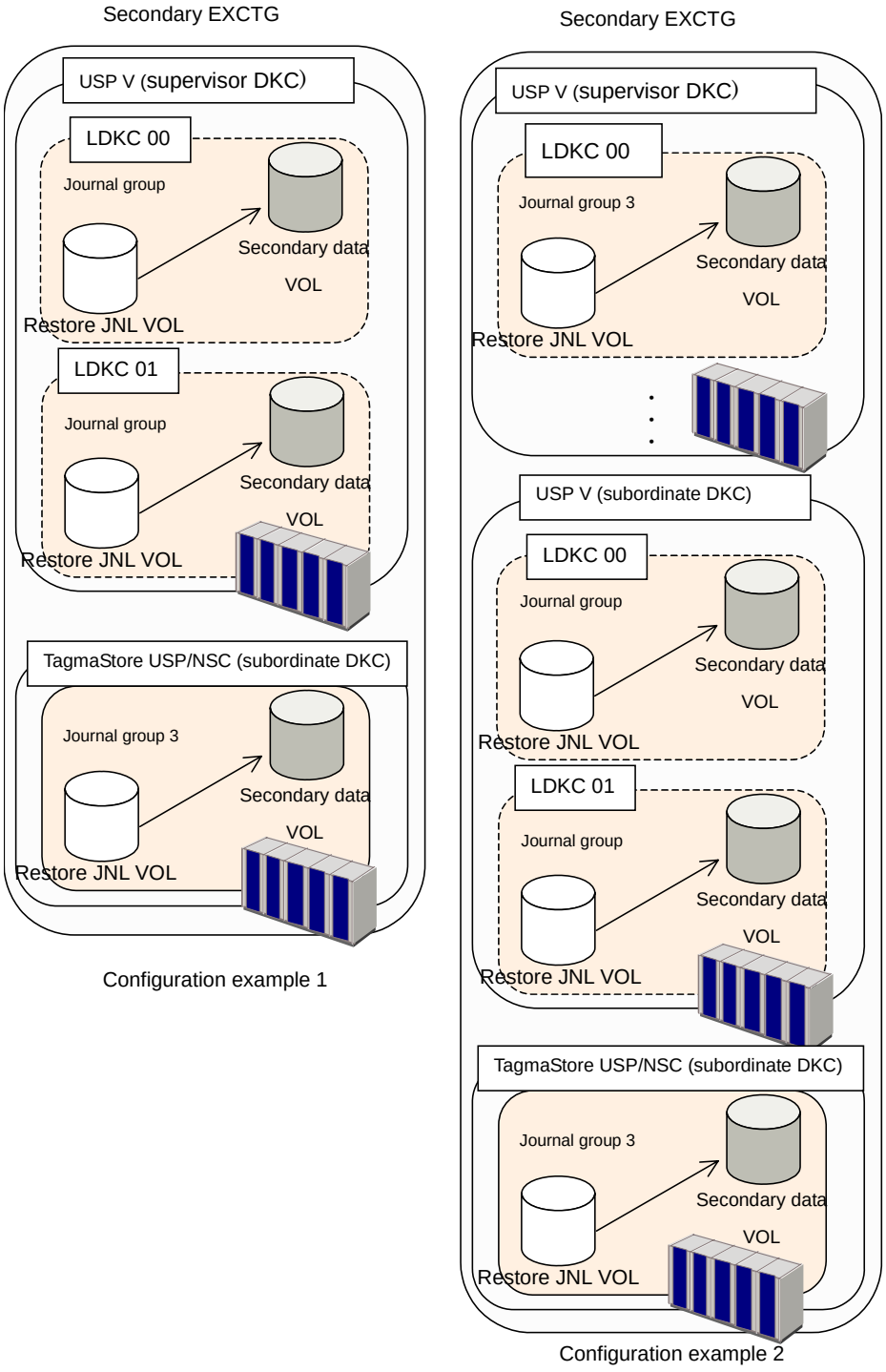


Figure 3-35 Examples of Configurations where TagmaStore USP/NSC is used as the Subordinate DKC

– When the supervisor DKC is TagmaStore USP/NSC and the subordinate DKCs are USP V

When the supervisor DKC of the secondary storage system is TagmaStore USP/NSC and the subordinate DKCs are USP V, there are limitations for journal groups that can be registered in the extended consistency group. The journal groups that can be registered in an extended consistency group and the journal groups that cannot be registered in an extended consistency group are described below.

- As described in the configuration example 1 in Figure 3.40, the journal group of LDKC00 of USP V (subordinate DKC) can be registered in the extended consistency group.
- As described in the configuration example 2 in Figure 3.40, the journal group of LDKC01 of USP V (subordinate DKC) cannot be registered in the extended consistency group.

Note: Journal groups of LDKCs other than LDKC00 cannot be registered in the extended consistency groups when the supervisor DKC is TagmaStore USP/NSC, even if the number of LDKCs is expanded in a future version.

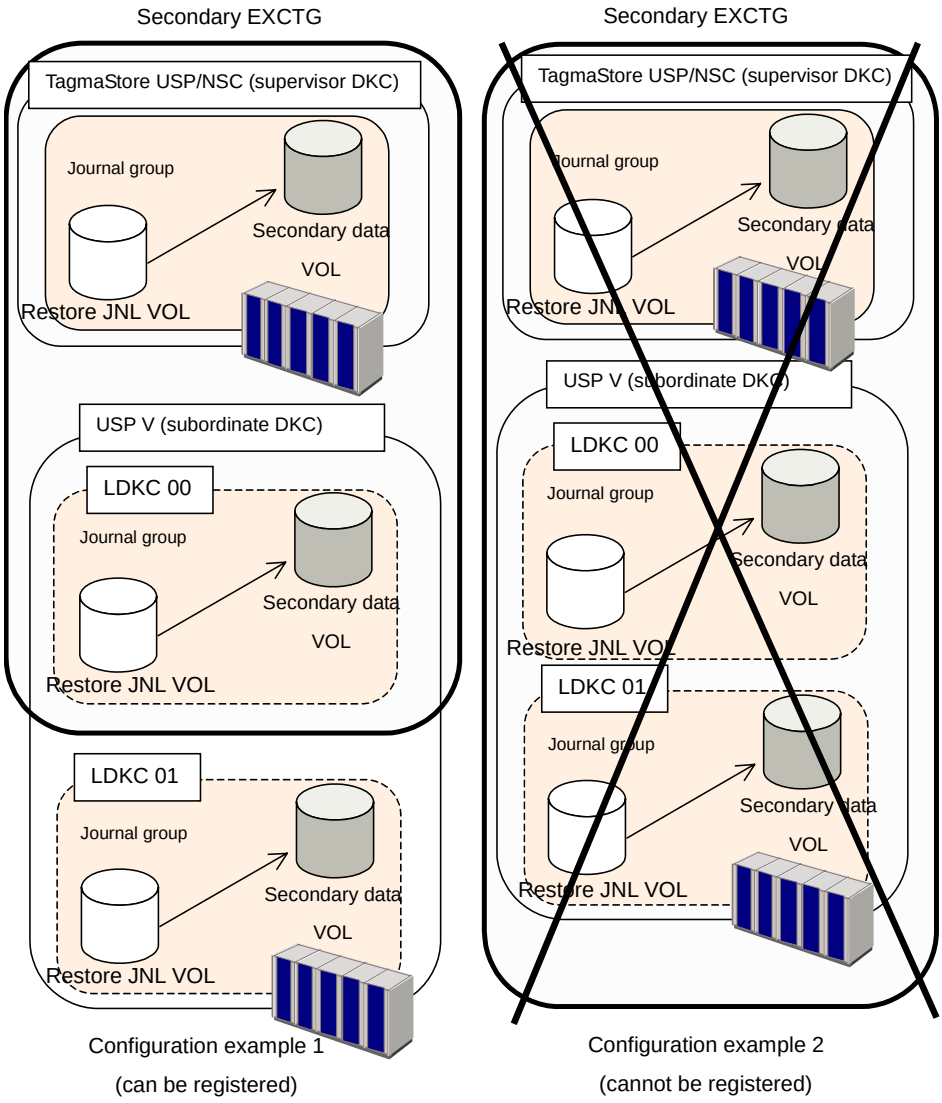


Figure 3-36 Example Configuration Where TagmaStore USP/NSC can and cannot be specified as the supervisor DKC

4

Using the Universal Replicator for z/OS® GUI

This chapter how to use the Universal Replicator for z/OS graphical user interface:

- ☐ Journal Operation Window
- ☐ Pair Operation Window
- ☐ DKC Operation Window
- ☐ Usage Monitor Window
- ☐ History Window
- ☐ Optional Operation Window
- ☐ EXCTG Operation Window

Journal Operation Window

To configure journal groups, use the Journal Operation window of URz.

To display the Journal Operation window, do either of the following:

- If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:
  a. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

     The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

     Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

  b. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **Journal Operation** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

     URz starts and the Journal Operation window is displayed.
- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Select the **Journal Operation** tab.

   The Journal Operation window is displayed.

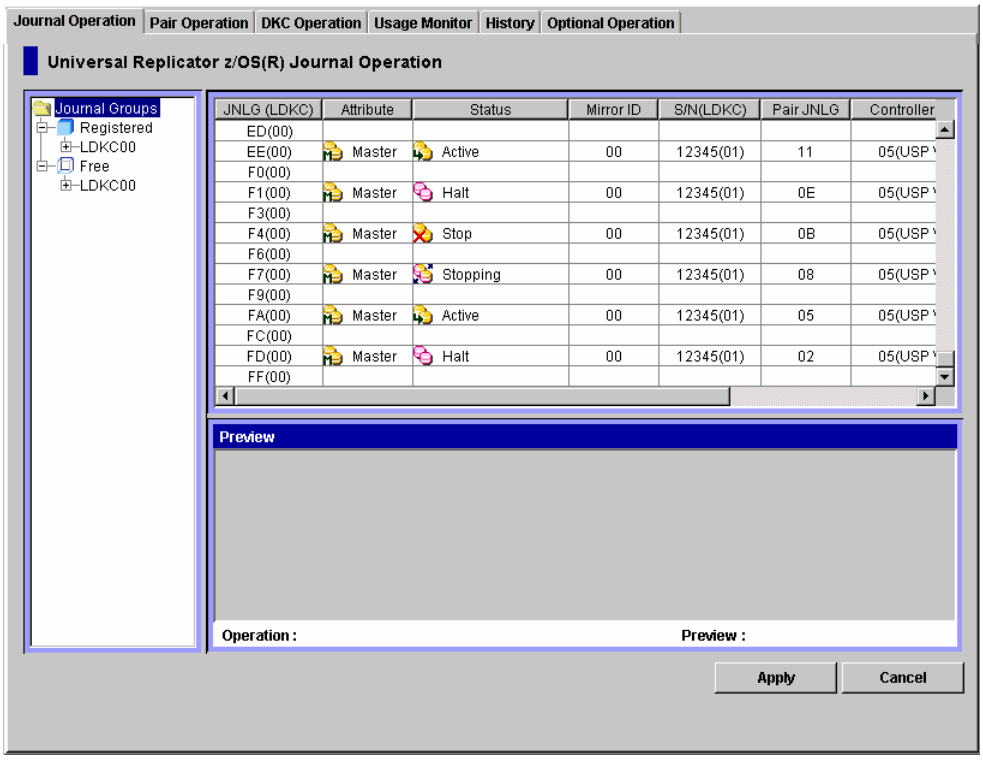


Figure 4-1 Journal Operation Window

The Journal Operation window displays the following:

- **Tree**: Lists journal groups in the local storage system, which is a storage system you are logged in. ***Note***: The tree displays journal groups used with URz, and does not display journal groups used with UR (Universal Replicator).
  - **Journal Groups**: This item is located at the top of the tree. When you select this item, the upper-right list displays journal groups in the local storage system.
  - **Registered**: When you select this item, the upper-right list displays journal groups in which journal volumes are registered.

    When you double-click this item, LDKCs are displayed in the tree. When you select an LDKC in the tree, the upper-right list displays the information about the LDKC.

    When you double-click the LDKC, the tree displays journal groups in which journal volumes are registered. When you select a journal group in the tree, information about the journal group appears in the upper-right list. If you have selected the journal group which uses multiple mirror IDs, information about the data volume which belongs to the journal group whose mirror ID is not in **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)** status.

    The journal group icons are:

    
    A journal group in initial status.
    Journal volumes are registered in this journal group, but no data volumes (primary data volumes nor secondary data volumes) are registered in this journal group.

    
    A master journal group.
    Journal volumes and primary data volumes are registered in this journal group.

    
    A restore journal group.
    Journal volumes and secondary data volumes are registered in this journal group.

  - **Free**: When you select this item, the upper-right list displays journal groups in which no journal volumes are registered.

    When you double-click this item, LDKCs are displayed in the tree. When you double-click the LDKC, the tree displays journal groups in which no journal volumes are registered.

    For instructions on how to register journal volumes in journal groups, see section Registering Journal Volumes in a Journal Group.

- Display all JNL groups:

  If this check box is cleared, the list below this check box only displays journal groups numbered 00 to 0F.

  If this check box is selected, the list below this check box displays journal groups numbered 00 to FF.

  Caution: You cannot perform the following operations onto journal groups numbered 10 to FF.

  - Registering journal volumes in journal groups
  - Deleting journal volumes from journal groups
  - Changing journal group options

– Restoring mirrors

- **Upper-right list**: If a master journal group or a restore journal group is selected in the tree, the upper-right list displays a list of *mirrors*. A mirror is a combination of a master journal group and a restore journal group.

  If another journal group is selected in the tree, the upper-list displays information about the selected journal group.

  One row in this list represents one mirror (or one journal group).

  – **JNLG (LDKC):** Indicates the number of a journal group in the local storage system and the LDKC number is enclosed in the following parentheses.

  – **Attribute**: Indicates the attribute of a journal group in the local storage system.

 **Initial**	A journal group in initial status. Journal volumes are registered in this journal group, but no data volumes (primary data volumes nor secondary data volumes) are registered in this journal group.
 **Master**	A master journal group. Journal volumes and primary data volumes are registered in this journal group.
 **Restore**	A restore journal group. Journal volumes and secondary data volumes are registered in this journal group.
Blank	Neither journal volumes nor data volumes are registered in this journal group.

Status: Indicates the status of a journal group in the local storage system.

 **Initial**	A journal group in initial status. Journal volumes are registered in this journal group, but no data volumes (primary data volumes nor secondary data volumes) are registered in this journal group. When you create a URz volume pair, data volumes will be registered in a journal group. The status of the journal group will change to Active.
 **Active**	Either of the following: • Initial copy is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized. • Initial copy is finished. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are synchronized. ***Note***: If a journal group is in **Active** status, some of the data volume pairs in the journal group might be split. If this happens, the word **Warning** is displayed. To restore such data volume pairs, use the Pair Operation window.
 **HaltAccept**	An operation for splitting the mirror has been started. The status of the journal group will immediately change to **Halting**. *Note*: HaltAccept can indicate status of restore journal groups, but cannot indicate status of master journal groups.
 **Halting**	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized. When you split a mirror, the status will change in the following order: Halting, Halt, Stopping, and finally Stop. When you delete a mirror, the status will change in the following order: Halting, Halt, Stopping, Stop, and finally Initial.
 **Halt**	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
 **Stopping**	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.

Stop	Either of the following: • An operation for splitting the mirror is finished. • The operation for deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
Hold	A URz pair for delta resync operation is created.
Hold(Failure)	An error occurred with the URz pair for delta resync operation.
Blank	No data volumes are registered in this journal group.

- **Mirror ID**: Indicates a mirror ID.

  This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.
- **S/N (LDKC)**: Indicates the serial number of the remote storage system, and the LDKC number is enclosed in the following parentheses.

  This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.
- **Pair JNLG**: Indicates the number of a journal group in the remote storage system.

  This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.
- **Controller ID**: Indicates the controller ID (model name that indicates the model) of the remote storage system.

  This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.

  Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5**.
- **Path Gr. ID**: Displays *path group IDs*, which are used to identify path groups (i.e., groups of logical paths). Up to eight logical paths can be registered in one path group.

  This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.
- **CLPR**: Displays the CLPR number for the journal group.
- **EXCTG**: Displays the following information sequentially if the journal group belongs to an extended consistency group:
  - the extended consistency group number
  - the serial number, the LDKC number(the LDKC number is enclosed by parentheses), and the controller ID at right side of slash(/)

  This column is blank if the journal group does not belong to any extended consistency group.

- **Preview**: Displays detailed information about operations that will occur when you click **Apply**.

– **List**: Displays changes that have been made in the window. When you change settings in the window, the changes will be displayed in the **Preview** list before the changes are applied to storage systems. If you are sure that information in the **Preview** is correct, select the **Apply** button to apply the settings that you have made.

  Note: When the **Preview** list displays changes that have been made, you can only perform the same type of operation that you have been doing and cannot perform most of other operations (note that you can only view detailed information about journal groups even when the **Preview** list displays changes). For example, if you are trying to delete journal groups and the **Preview** list is displaying the journal groups that you want to delete, you are unable to perform any other operations; for example, you are unable to split mirrors and restore mirrors.

– **Operation**: Indicates the operation that will occur when you select **Apply**.

Edit JNL Volumes	Register or delete journal volumes
Change JNL Option	Change journal group options
Delete JNL Groups	Delete journal group
Suspend Pair	Split a mirror
Resume Pair	Restore a mirror
Delete Pair	Delete a mirror
Remove JNLG from EXCTG (Force)	Delete journal group forcibly from an extended consistency group
Blank	Nothing will occur when you click **Apply**

– **Preview**: The number to the left of the slash (/) indicates the number of items displayed in the **Preview** list.

  The number to the right of the slash indicates the maximum number of items that can be displayed in the **Preview** list.

  For example, if **Preview 010/256** is displayed, you can add another 246 items to the **Preview** list.

- **Apply**: Applies settings in the **Preview** list to the storage systems.
- **Cancel**: Cancels settings in the **Preview** list.

Note: Information on the Journal Operation window will be updated when you do one of the following:

2. Select another tab and then reselect the **Journal Operation** tab.
3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.
4. Select the **Apply** button.
5. Select modify mode when you are in view mode.

Pair Operation Window

To manipulate pairs of primary and secondary data volumes, use the Pair Operation window.

To display the Pair Operation window, do either of the following:

- If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:
  a. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

     The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

     Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

  b. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **Pair Operation** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

     URz starts and the Pair Operation window is displayed.
- **If Universal** Replicator **for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Select the **Pair Operation** tab.

   The Pair Operation window is displayed.

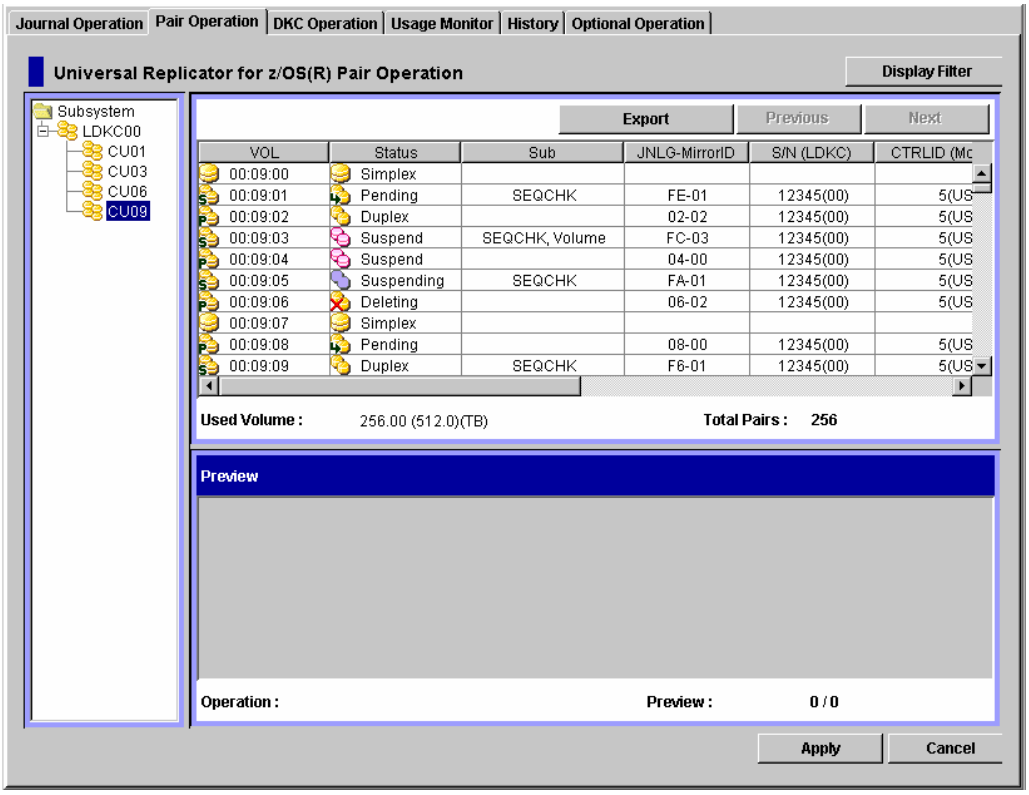


Figure 4-2 Pair Operation Window

The Pair Operation window displays the following:

- **Tree**: Lists LDKCs and lists CU images under the LDKC in the local storage system ( ).

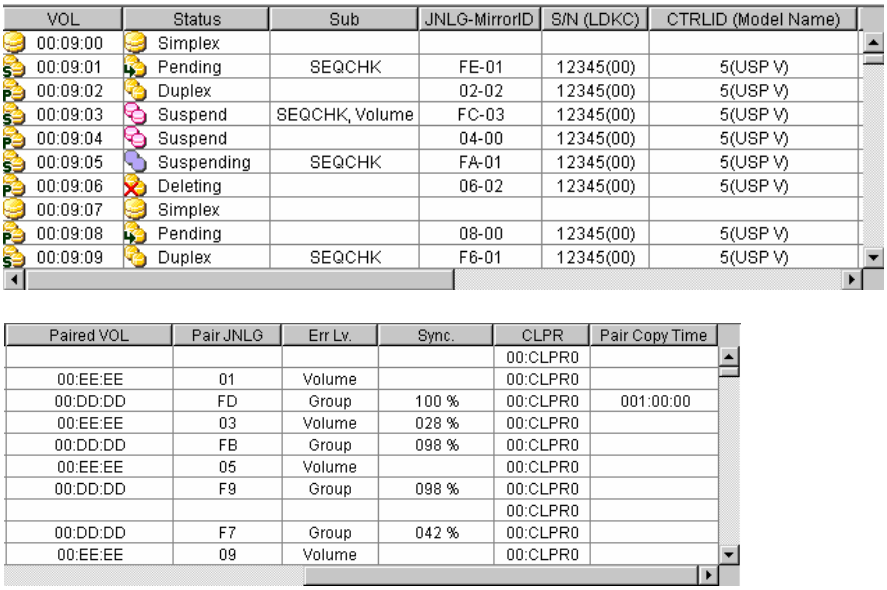
  If you select a CU image, the list displays volumes for the CU image. You can select only one CU image at one time and cannot select two or more simultaneously.

- **Upper-right buttons**: The following buttons appear at the upper-right corner of the window:
  - **Display Filter**: Displays the Display Filter window (see Figure 8-1). This window allows you to narrow information in the list, so that the list displays only the volumes that satisfy certain conditions. For detailed information, see section Filtering Information in the List in the Pair Operation Window.
  - **Export**: Saves information about volume pairs in a text file. For detailed information, see section Saving Pair Status Information into a Text File.
  - **Previous**: The list can display up to 1,024 volume pairs simultaneously. If the number of volume pairs exceeds 1,024, you can use the Previous and Next buttons to display the remaining volume pairs in the list. The Previous button displays the previous 1,024 volume pairs in the list.
  - **Next**: The list can display up to 1,024 volume pairs simultaneously. If the number of volume pairs exceeds 1,024, you can use the Previous and Next buttons to display the remaining volume pairs in the list. The **Next** button displays the next 1,024 volume pairs in the list.

- **List**: Displays volumes in the local storage system. One row represents one volume.

  By default, information in the list is arranged in order of port numbers. For volumes with more than one path, each path is displayed in a separate row.

  The maximum number of rows in the list is 1,024. If the number of volumes exceeds the number of rows, you can use the **Previous** and **Next** buttons to view information about volumes that do not appear in the list currently.



VOL	Status	Sub	JNLG-MirrorID	S/N (LDKC)	CTRLID (Model Name)
00:09:00	Simplex				
00:09:01	Pending	SEQCHK	FE-01	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:02	Duplex		02-02	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:03	Suspend	SEQCHK, Volume	FC-03	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:04	Suspend		04-00	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:05	Suspending	SEQCHK	FA-01	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:06	Deleting		06-02	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:07	Simplex				
00:09:08	Pending		08-00	12345(00)	5(USP V)
00:09:09	Duplex	SEQCHK	F6-01	12345(00)	5(USP V)

Paired VOL	Pair JNLG	Err Lv.	Sync.	CLPR	Pair Copy Time
				00:CLPR0	
00:EE:EE	01	Volume		00:CLPR0	
00:DD:DD	FD	Group	100 %	00:CLPR0	001:00:00
00:EE:EE	03	Volume	028 %	00:CLPR0	
00:DD:DD	FB	Group	098 %	00:CLPR0	
00:EE:EE	05	Volume		00:CLPR0	
00:DD:DD	F9	Group	098 %	00:CLPR0	
				00:CLPR0	
00:DD:DD	F7	Group	042 %	00:CLPR0	
00:EE:EE	09	Volume		00:CLPR0	

Note: Use the vertical and horizontal scroll bar if the information that you want to view is hidden and invisible.

Figure 4-3 The List in the Pair Operation Window

– **VOL**: Indicates volumes in the local storage system. The icons are:

	This volume not paired with any other volume. This volume is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.
P	This volume is a primary data volume.
S	This volume is a secondary data volume.

To the right of the icon appear the LDKC number, the CU image number and the LDEV number of the volume. The CU image number is located on the left of the colon. The LDEV number is located on the right of the colon.

Note: If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

– **Status**: Indicates status of volume pairs

Simplex	The volume is not currently assigned to a pair. When the initial copy is started by an Add Pair operation, the volume status changes to Pending..
Pending	The initial copy operation is in progress. Data in the primary data volume is not synchronized with data in the secondary data volume. When the initial copy is complete, the status will change to Duplex.
Duplex	The volume is paired with another volume. The two volumes are fully synchronized. All updates from the host to the primary data volume are duplicated at the secondary data volume.
Suspend	The pair has been split. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
Suspending	The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized. This pair is in transition from the Pending or Duplex status to the Suspend status.

Deleting	The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized. This pair is in transition from the Pending, Duplex, or Suspend status to the Simplex status.
Hold	A URz pair for delta resync operation is created.
Hlde	An error occurred on the URz pair for delta resync operation.

– **Sub**: Indicates either of the following statues:

SEQCHK	When the secondary data volume was using the system timer, the volume received update data without time stamp from the host computer.
Group	The pair is split. The consistency time for the secondary data volume matches the consistency time for the journal group.
Volume	The pair is split. The consistency time for the secondary data volume does not match the consistency time for the journal group.
Blank	None of the above.

– **JNLG-MirrorID**: Indicates a journal group number and a mirror ID. The number on the left of the hyphen (-) is a journal group number. The number on the right of the hyphen is a mirror ID.

This column is blank if the volume in the local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.

– **S/N(LDKC)**: displays the serial number of the remote storage system.

This column is blank if the volume of local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume..

Note: The column of **S/N(LDKC)** can be blank while the pair is in transition to the Simplex status. To display the latest information in this column, refresh the screen.

– **CTRLID(Model Name)**: Indicates the serial number and the controller ID of the remote storage system. The model name is enclosed by parentheses.

Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5**.

Note: The column of **CTRL ID(Model Name)** can be blank while the pair is in transition to the Simplex status. To display the latest information in this column, refresh the screen.

– **Paired VOL**: Indicates a data volume in the remote storage system.

This column indicates a primary data volume if the remote storage system is a primary storage system.

This column indicates a secondary data volume if the remote storage system is a secondary storage system.

This column is blank if the volume in the local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.

Note: If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Note: If a volume is a volume of TagmaStore USP/NSC, “00” is displayed the LDKC number.

– **Pair JNLG**: Indicates the journal group number for the remote storage system.

  This column is blank if the volume in the local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.

– **Err Lv.**: Indicates the range of pair split on error.

Group If an error occurs with this pair, all the pairs in the mirror where this pair belongs will be split.

Volume If an error occurs with this pair, only this pair will be split.

– **Sync.**: If the volume in the local storage system is a primary data volume, this column displays progress of an initial copy operation.

  If the volume in the local storage system is a secondary data volume, this column displays information in the following ways:

  - If the volume pair is not split, this column displays nothing.
  - If the volume pair is split and therefore is in **Suspend** status, this column usually displays synchronization rate (i.e., concordance rate) between the secondary data volume before it became split and the secondary data volume after it became split. For example, the synchronization rate (i.e., concordance rate) is 100 percent if the contents of the secondary data volume are the same before and after the volume pair became split.
    Caution: If a failure in the initial copy operation causes the volume pair to be split, this column displays nothing. If a failure occurs in the initial copy operation, the Detailed Information window (Figure 8-3) displays the phrase "Initial copy failed".
  - In the following cases, this column will be blank.
    – When the volume in the local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.
    – When the status of the volume pair is **Hold** or **Hlde**.

– **CLPR**: Indicates the number and the name of the CLPR where the data volume belongs.

– **Pair Copy Time:** The time taken for the copy operation (from the start of the operation to the end).

  Note: The time that is shown in **Pair Copy Time** differs from the time that is shown in **Copy Time** on the **History** window.

  To create a pair:

  1. MCU receives a request to create a pair.

  2. MCU receives a request to start the creating pair operation.

  3. The creating pair operation is started according to the conditions of initial copy priority and maximum initial copy activities.

Pair Copy Time on the Detailed Information dialog box shows the amount of time that has been needed from step 3 to the completion of the creating pair operation (i.e., the progress of the creating pair operation reaches 100%).
Copy Time on the **History** window shows the amount of time that has been needed from step 1 to the completion of the creating pair operation.

- **Used Volume**: Indicates the size of used volumes, and also indicates the licensed capacity. For example, if **12.34 (15.0) (TB)** is displayed, the licensed capacity for URz is 15.0 terabytes, and 12.34 terabytes of volumes are used.
  Note: If the licensed capacity is unlimited, the sized of used volume is not displayed.
- **Total Pairs**: Indicates the current total number of data volume pairs.
- **Preview**: Displays detailed information about operations that will occur when you click **Apply**.
  - **List**: Displays changes that have been made in the window. When you change settings in the window, the changes will be displayed in the **Preview** list before the changes are applied to storage systems. If you are sure that information in the **Preview** is correct, select the **Apply** button to apply the settings that you have made.

    Note: When the **Preview** list displays changes that have been made, you can only perform the same type of operation that you have been doing and cannot perform most of other operations (note that you can only view detailed information about pairs even when the **Preview** list displays changes). For example, if you are trying to release pairs and the **Preview** list is displaying the pairs that you want to release, you are unable to perform any other operations; for example, you are unable to split pairs and restore pairs.
  - **Operation**: Indicates the operation that will occur when you select **Apply**.

Add Pair	Create pairs
Suspend Pair	Split pairs
Resume Pair	Restore pairs
Delete Pair	Release pairs
Change Pair Option	Change pair option(s)
Blank	Nothing will occur when you click **Apply**

  - **Preview**: The number to the left of the slash (/) indicates the number of items displayed in the **Preview** list.

    The number to the right of the slash indicates the maximum number of items that can be displayed in the **Preview** list.

    For example, if **Preview 010/1096** is displayed, you can add another 4,086 items to the **Preview** list.
- **Apply**: Applies settings in the **Preview** list to the storage systems.

- **Cancel**: Cancels settings in the **Preview** list.

Note: Information on the Pair Operation window will be updated when you do one of the following:

2. Select another tab and then reselect the **Pair Operation** tab.
3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.
4. Select the **Apply** button.
5. Select modify mode when you are in view mode.
6. Update the Display Filter window.
7. Click the **Previous** button or the **Next** button.

DKC Operation Window

To configure storage systems and logical paths, use the DKC Operation window.

To display the DKC Operation window, do either of the following:

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:**

a. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

b. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **DKC Operation** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

URz starts and the DKC Operation window is displayed.

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Select the **DKC Operation** tab.

The DKC Operation window is displayed.

Note: DKC is an acronym for disk controller, which controls an entire storage system. URz windows use the word "DKC" to indicate a storage system. LDKC is an acronym for logical disk controller, and it also may be called logical DKC. LDKC is a controller that controls the logical storage system that exists in USP V. The term "LDKC" indicates logical storage system in the Universal Replicator for z/OS window.

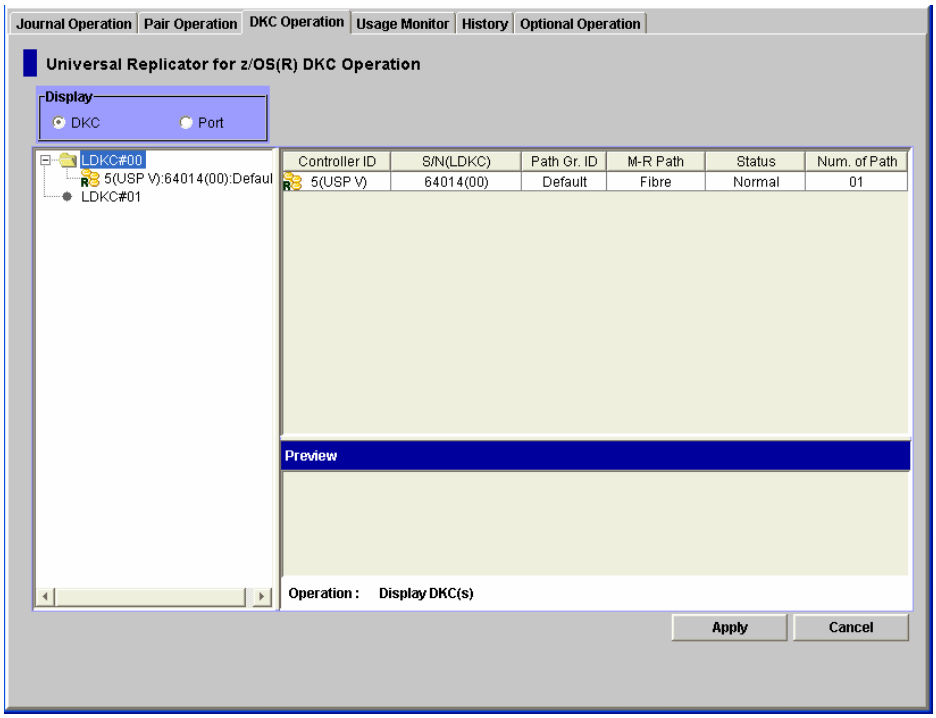


Figure 4-4 DKC Operation Window

The DKC Operation window displays the following:

- **Display**: Changes information in the DKC Operation window.

  If you select **DKC**, the DKC Operation window displays information about the remote storage systems and the logical paths.

  If you select **Port**, the DKC Operation window displays information about ports on the local storage system.

- **Tree**: Lists either of the following:
  - remote storage systems
  - channel adapters on the local storage system and port attributes

- **List**: Displays one of the following:
  - detailed information about remote storage systems
  - detailed information about logical paths
  - detailed information about ports on the local storage system

- **Preview**: Displays changes that have been made in the window. When you change settings in the window, the changes will be displayed in the **Preview** list before the changes are applied to storage systems. If you are sure that information in the **Preview** is correct, select the **Apply** button to apply the settings that you have made.

- **Operation**: Indicates the operation in progress in the DKC Operation window.

- **Apply**: Applies settings in the **Preview** box to the storage systems.
- **Cancel**: Cancels the settings displayed in the **Preview** box.

Note: Information on the DKC Operation window will be updated when you do one of the following:

2. Select another tab and then reselect the **DKC Operation** tab.
3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.
4. Select the **Apply** button.
5. Select modify mode when you are in view mode.
6. Close the **DKC Status** window.

Displaying Information about Remote Storage Systems

To display information about remote storage systems:

1. Display the DKC Operation window.
2. In the **Display** box, select **DKC**.

   The tree and the list display remote storage systems.

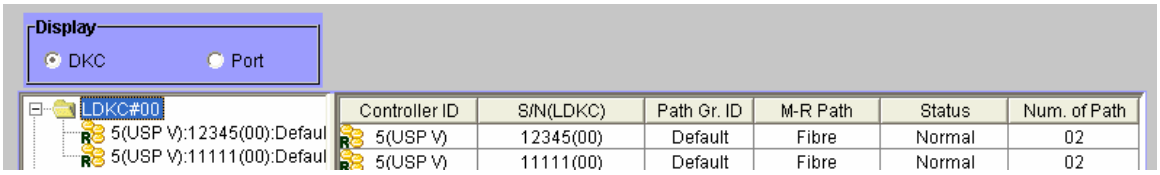


Figure 4-5 Remote Storage System Information in the DKC Operation Window

- **Tree**: Lists the remote storage systems at each of the LDKCs of the local storage systems. The following information appears to the right of the icon of the remote storage system:
  - controller ID of a remote storage system (The model name of the remote storage system)
  - serial number of the remote storage system
  - path group ID

  Note: The **LDKC#01** cannot be used in this version.

  The icon of the remote storage system indicates the status of logical paths between the local storage system and the remote storage system:

  All the logical paths are in normal status.

  A failure occurs to some of the logical paths.

- **List**: Displays information about remote storage systems:

– **Controller ID** displays the controller ID and the model name of the storage system of a remote storage system. The controller ID is a storage system family ID of a storage system. The icon indicates the status of logical paths between the local storage system and the remote storage system:


All the logical paths are in normal status.


A failure occurs to some of the logical paths.

Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5.**

– **S/N(LDKC)** displays the five-digit serial number and the LDKC number of the remote storage system. “00” is displayed for the LDKC number when the remote storage system is TagmaStore USP/NSC.

– **Path Gr. ID** displays the path group ID. All the path group IDs are displayed as Default.

– **M-R Path** indicates the channel type of the logical paths between the local storage system and the remote storage system. This column always displays **Fibre**.

– **Status** indicates whether logical paths fail.

Normal	No failure occurs to the logical paths
Failed	All the logical paths fail.
Warning	Some of the logical paths fail.

– **Num of Path** indicates the number of logical paths.

Displaying Information about Logical Paths

Logical paths are communication paths that connect the local storage system ports and the remote storage system ports.

To display information about logical paths in the DKC Operation window:

1. In the **Display** box, select **DKC**.
2. Select a remote storage system from the tree.

   The list displays logical paths. Each row in the list indicates one logical path (Figure 4-6).

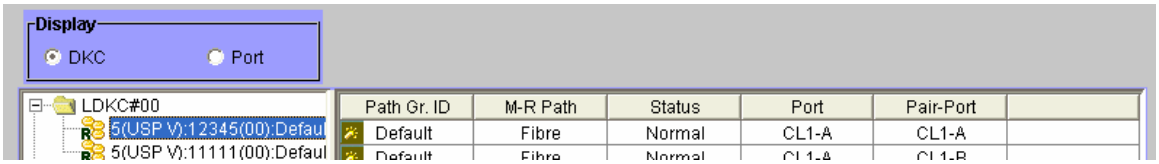


Figure 4-6 Logical Paths Information in the DKC Operation Window

The list displays the following:

- **Path Gr. ID:** Displays the path group ID.

  The icon indicates the status of the path:

The logical path is in normal status

A failure occurs to the logical path.

- **M-R Path: Indicates** the channel type of the logical paths between the local storage system and the remote storage system. This column always displays **Fibre**.
- **Status:** indicates **whether** the logical path is in normal status.

Normal The logical path is in normal status. No failure occurs at the logical path

Failed A failure occurs at the logical path.

- **Port:** Indicates a port number of the local storage system.
- **Pair-Port:** indicates a port number of the remote storage system.

Displaying Information about Ports on the Local Storage System

To display information about ports on the local storage system in the DKC Operation window:

1. In the **Display** box, select **Port**.

   The tree displays a list of channel adapters and port attributes (Figure 4-6).

2. Do either of the following in the tree:
   - Select Subsystem. The list displays all the ports on the local storage system.
   - Select a channel adapter. The list displays ports on the channel adapter.
   - Select a port attribute. The list displays ports that have the selected port attribute.

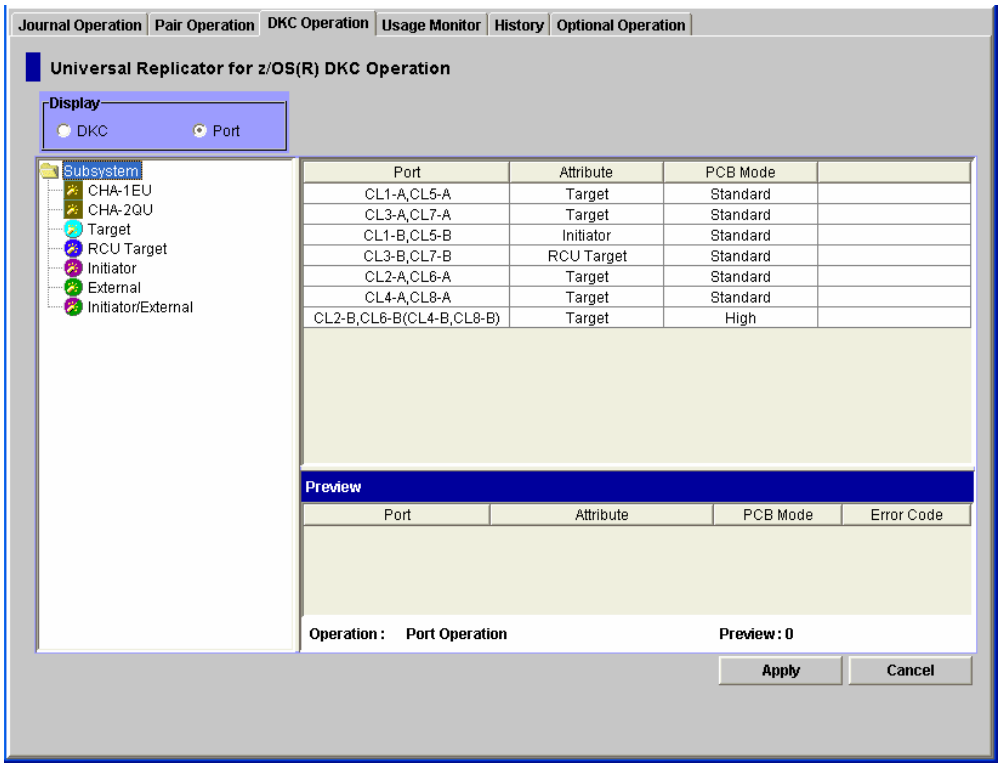


Figure 4-7 Port Information in the DKC Operation Window

- **Tree**: Lists channel adapters and ports on the local storage system. The following information appears to the right of the icon:

  The icons are:

  channel adapter (Fibre Channel interface)

  target port

 RCU target port

 initiator port

 external port.

 port in initiator/external mix mode

- **List**: Displays ports on the local storage system:
  - **Port** displays the port number.
  - **Attribute** displays the port attribute (i.e., initiator, target, RCU target, external, or initiator/external)
  - **PCB Mode** displays the mode of the port. The mode is either **Standard, High** or **MIX**.
  - **Error Code** displays an error code.

Usage Monitor Window

The **Usage Monitor** window (see Figure 4-8) displays the remote copy I/O statistics for all volumes to be monitored on the connected storage system, and displays the status of remote copy usage monitoring.

To display the Usage Monitor window, do either of the following:

- If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:
  a. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

     The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

     Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

  b. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **Usage Monitor** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

     URz starts and the Usage Monitor window is displayed.
- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

Select the **Usage Monitor** tab.

The Usage Monitor window is displayed.

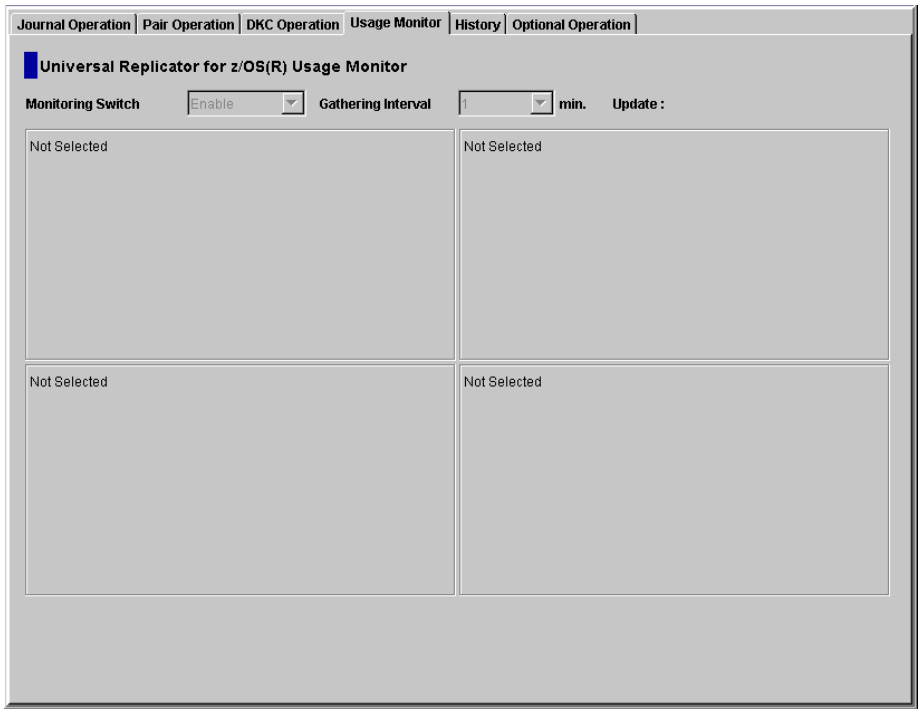


Figure 4-8 Usage Monitor Window

- **Monitoring Switch**: displays **Enable** when monitoring is on; displays **Disable** when monitoring is off.

  Note: When monitoring is stopped, the usage monitor graph is closed.

  Gathering Interval: displays the data collection interval

- **Update**: displays the most recent data sample time of the data on the graph.
- **Graph**: displays the remote I/O statistic information and the status of remote copy monitor.

History Window

The **History** window (see Figure 4-9) display history of pf operations for data volume pairs. For example, the window displays the date and time when data volume pairs are created or released.

To display the History window, do either of the following:

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started**:

1. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

   The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

   Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **History** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

   URz starts and the History window is displayed.

   Caution: Here, the History window may not display latest operation history. To view the latest operation history, go to the next step.

3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

   The operation history is updated.

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Click the **History** tab to display the History window.

   Caution: Here, the History window may not display latest operation history. To view the latest operation history, go to the next step.

2. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

   The operation history is updated.

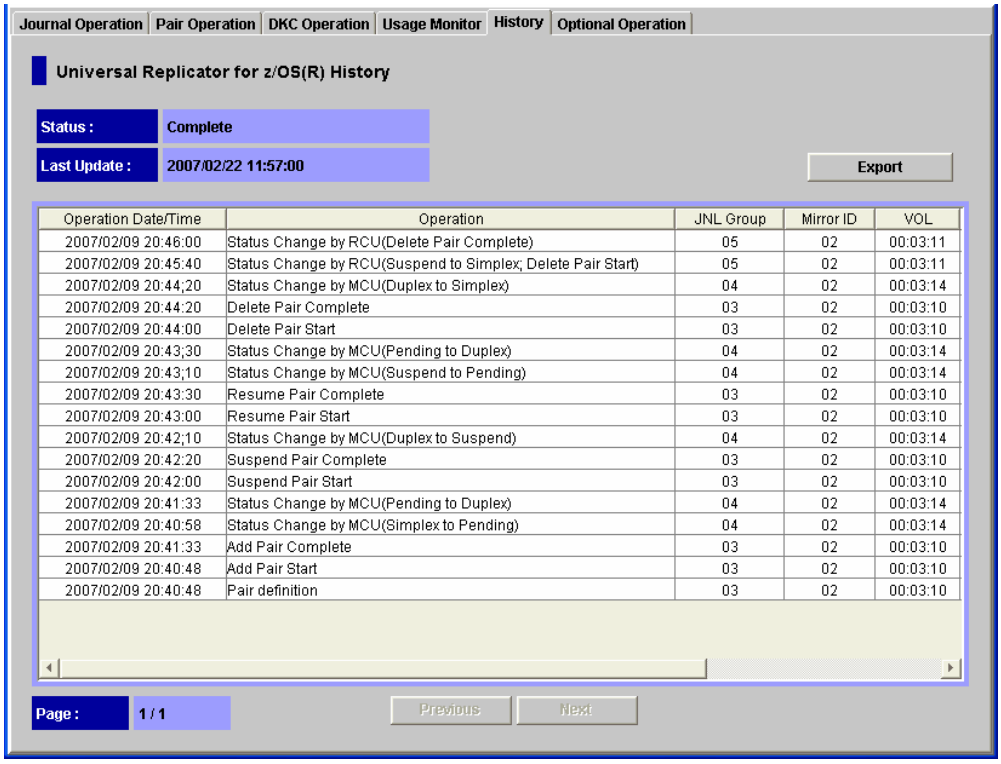


Figure 4-9 History Window

The **History** window presents:

- **Status** displays the current status of operation history:
  - **No history file exists**: Operation history does not exist.
  - **Reading a history file failed**: An attempt to read operation history failed.
  - **Updating ... n (%):** Updating of operation history is now in progress. "n (%)" indicates the progress (in %) of the updating process of operation history.
  - **Complete**: Updating of operation history has been completed.

  Note: When the updating process is in progress, the checking process automatically continues until the updating process finishes. The updating process is checked at ten-second intervals.
- **Last Update**: Displays the date and time when operation history was last updated.
- **Export**: Saves operation history in a CSV file. For detailed information, see section Saving Operation History into a Text File.

  Note: You cannot save the history file while operation history is being updated. Please save operation history in a text file after operation history is updated.

- **The list** displays history of operations on data volume pairs in the connected storage system.

  The list consists of the following columns:

  – **Operation Date/Time:** The date and time when the operation was completed.

  – **Operation**: The operations are:

    Pair definition: A data volume pair was defined.

    Add Pair Start: Creation of the data volume pair was started.

    Add Pair Complete: Creation of the data volume pair was finished.

    Resume Pair Start: Restoring of the data volume pair was started.

    Resume Pair Complete: Restoring of the data volume pair was finished.

    Suspend Pair Start: Splitting (Suspending) of the data volume pair was started.

    Suspend Pair Complete: Splitting (Suspending) of the data volume pair was finished.

    Suspend Pair(Failure): The data volume pair was split (suspended) because of a failure.

    Delete Pair Start: Release of the data volume pair was started.

    Delete Pair Complete: Release of the data volume pair was finished.

    Status Change by MCU(Simplex to Pending): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Simplex to Pending because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Simplex to Duplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Simplex to Duplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Pending to Duplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Pending to Duplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Pending to Suspend): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Pending to Suspend because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Duplex to Suspend): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Duplex to Suspend because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Duplex to Simplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Duplex to Simplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

    Status Change by MCU(Pending to Simplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Pending to Simplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by MCU(Suspend to Simplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Suspend to Simplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by MCU(Suspend to Pending): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Suspend to Pending because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by RCU(Suspend Pair Start): The status of the data volume pair was changed because an operation for splitting a pair started at the secondary storage system.

Status Change by RCU(Suspend Pair Complete): The status of the data volume pair was changed because an operation for splitting a pair finished at the secondary storage system.

Status Change by RCU(Suspend to Simplex; Delete Pair Start): An operation for releasing a pair has been started at the secondary storage system. The status of the data volume pair will change from Suspend to Simplex.

Status Change by RCU(Pending to Simplex; Delete Pair Start): An operation for releasing a pair has been started at the secondary storage system. The status of the data volume pair will change from Pending to Simplex.

Status Change by RCU(Duplex to Simplex; Delete Pair Start): An operation for releasing a pair has been started at the secondary storage system. The status of the data volume pair will change from Duplex to Simplex.

Status Change by RCU(Delete Pair Complete): The status of the data volume pair was changed because an operation for releasing a pair finished at the secondary storage system.

Ready for Delta resync: A data volume pair became ready for delta resync.

Ready for Delta resync(Failure): The failure occurred with the data volume pair which was ready for delta resync.

Status Change for Delta resync: The status of the primary data volume was changed to Hold because of a delta resync operation.

Status Change by MCU(Simplex to Hold): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Simplex to Hold because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by MCU(Hold to Duplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Hold to Duplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by MCU(Hold to Pending): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Hold to Pending because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by MCU(Hold to Simplex): The status of the data volume pair was changed from Hold to Simplex because of an operation from the primary storage system.

Status Change by RCU(Hold to Simplex, Delete Pair Start): An operation for releasing a pair has been started at the secondary storage system. The status of the data volume pair will change from Hold to Simplex.

Status Change to Hold: The status of the secondary data volume was changed to Hold because of a delta resync operation.

Unknown: The storage system could not identify the type of the operation.

- **JNL Group:** The journal group number.
- **Mirror ID:** The mirror ID.
- **VOL:** The volume manipulated during the operation. This volume is located in the local storage system.

  The number to the left of the colon (:) is the CU number. The number to the right of the colon is the LDEV number.
- **Paired VOL:** The volume paired with the manipulated volume. This volume is located in the remote storage system.

  The number to the left of the colon (:) is the CU number. The number to the right of the colon is the LDEV number.
- **EXCTG:** The extended consistency group number. This column is blank if the volume does not belong to any extended consistency group. If the Business Continuity Manager **YKMAKE** command was used to create a pair, this column may not display the extended consistency group number.
- **Copy Time:** The time taken for the operation (from the start of the operation to the end). Displayed only for **Add Pair Complete** and **Resume Pair Complete** operations.

Notes:

- The history information (i.e., rows in the list) might not be displayed in chronological descending order. To sort the information in descending (or ascending) order, click a header of the list.
- The History window can display history information of up to 524,288 operations. However, the window can only display up to 16,384 operations at one time. To display the remaining operations, click the Previous or Next button.
- The History window does not display history information older than seven days. Also, if the number of operations exceeds 524,288, the oldest operations are deleted in chronological order to keep the number at 65,535, even if the operations occurred within the last week. The history file always contains the most recent operations up to a maximum of 65,535 operations. The history information for an entire week may not always be available.

  - If a failure occurs with two or more data volume pairs at the same time, only up to two rows showing "Suspend Pair(Failure)" or "Ready for Delta resync(Failure)" will be displayed.
  - The copy time might not be displayed in the Copy Time column, even though **Paircreate Complete** or **Pairresync Complete** is displayed in the Operation column. In such case, you can confirm the copy time at the volume list in the Pair Operation window.

- **Page**: displays the number of current page and total number of pages. The display format of **Page** is "the number of current page / total number of pages". If there is no history file, "-/-" is displayed.
- **Previous**: The list displays up to a maximum of 16,384 operations at a time. If the number of operations exceeds 16,384, the **Previous** and **Next** buttons allows you to display the remaining operations. The **Previous** button allows you to display the previous 16,384 operations.
- **Next**: The list displays up to a maximum of 16,384 operations at a time. If the number of operations exceeds 16,384, the **Previous** and **Next** buttons allows you to display the remaining operations. The **Next** button allows you to display the next 16,384 operations.

Optional Operation Window

The **Optional Operation** window (see Figure 4-10) allows you to set options.

To display the **Optional Operation** window, do either of the following:

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:**

  c. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

  The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

  Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

  d. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **Optional Operation** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

  URz starts and the Optional Operation window is displayed.

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Select the **Optional Operation** tab to display the **Optional Operation** window.

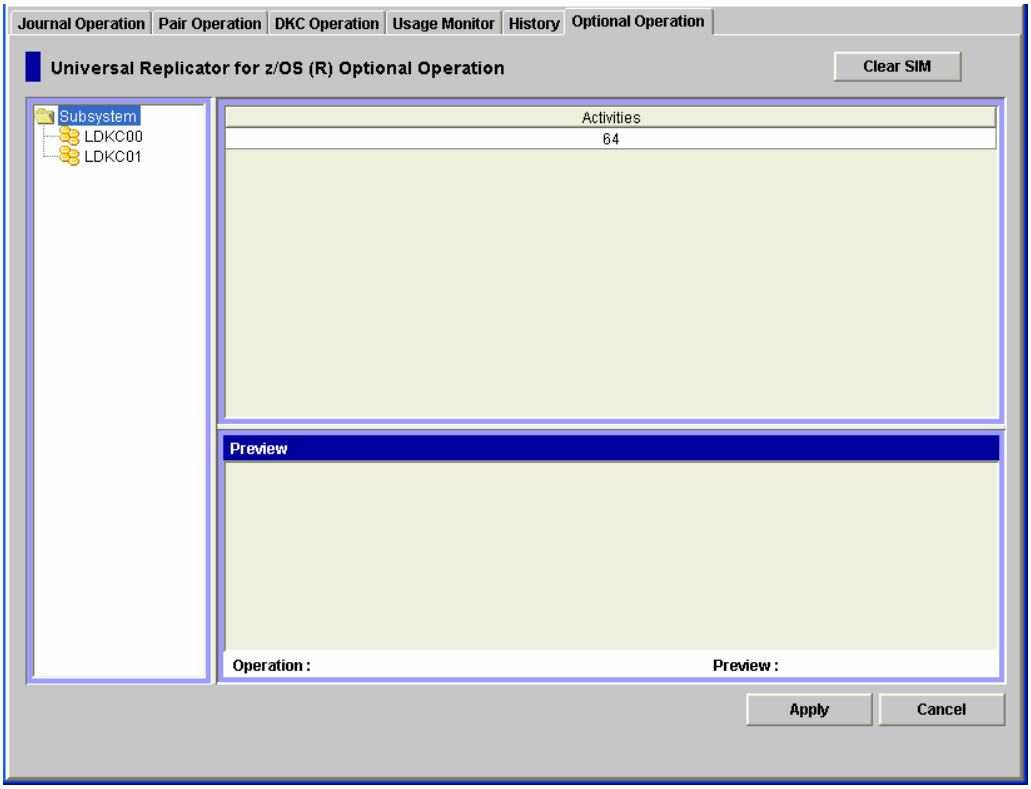


Figure 4-10 Optional Operation Window

- **Tree**: allows you to select **Subsystem**, or **LDKC**.
- The **Clear SIM** button: allows you to clear all URz SIMs (service information messages) and UR SIMs from the connected storage system
- **List**: displays storage system option settings
- **Preview List**: When you change settings in the Optional Operation window, the **Preview** list displays the changes. Here, the changes have not been applied to the storage system. If you select the **Apply** button, the changes will be applied to the storage system.
- **Operation:** Indicates the operation that will occur when you select **Apply**.

Change System Option	Change storage system options
Change SIM Report	Change whether to report SIMs to hosts
Blank	Nothing will occur when you click **Apply**

- **Preview:** The number to the left of the slash (/) indicates the number of items (i.e., rows) displayed in the **Preview** list.

  The number to the right of the slash indicates the maximum number of items (i.e., rows) that can be displayed in the **Preview** list.
- The **Apply** button: applies settings in the Preview list to the storage system.
- The **Cancel** button: cancels the settings in the **Preview** list.

Note: Information on the Optional Operation window will be updated when you do one of the following:

2. Select another tab and then reselect the **Optional Operation** tab.
3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.
4. Select the **Apply** button.
5. Select modify mode when you are in view mode.

EXCTG Operation Window

To make settings on extended consistency groups, use the EXCTG Operation window.

To display the EXCTG Operation window, do either of the following:

- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has not been started:**
  a. Use your Web browser to display the storage device list. In the storage device list, select the storage system to log in. Enter a user name and the password, and then click **OK**.

     The Storage Navigator main window is displayed.

     Note: For detailed instructions on this step, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

  b. Click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **EXCTG Operation** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.

     URz starts and the EXCTG Operation window is displayed.

  c. Select the **EXCTG Operation** tab.

     The EXCTG Operation window is displayed.
- **If Universal Replicator for z/OS has already been started:**

1. Select the **EXCTG Operation** tab.

   The EXCTG Operation window appears.

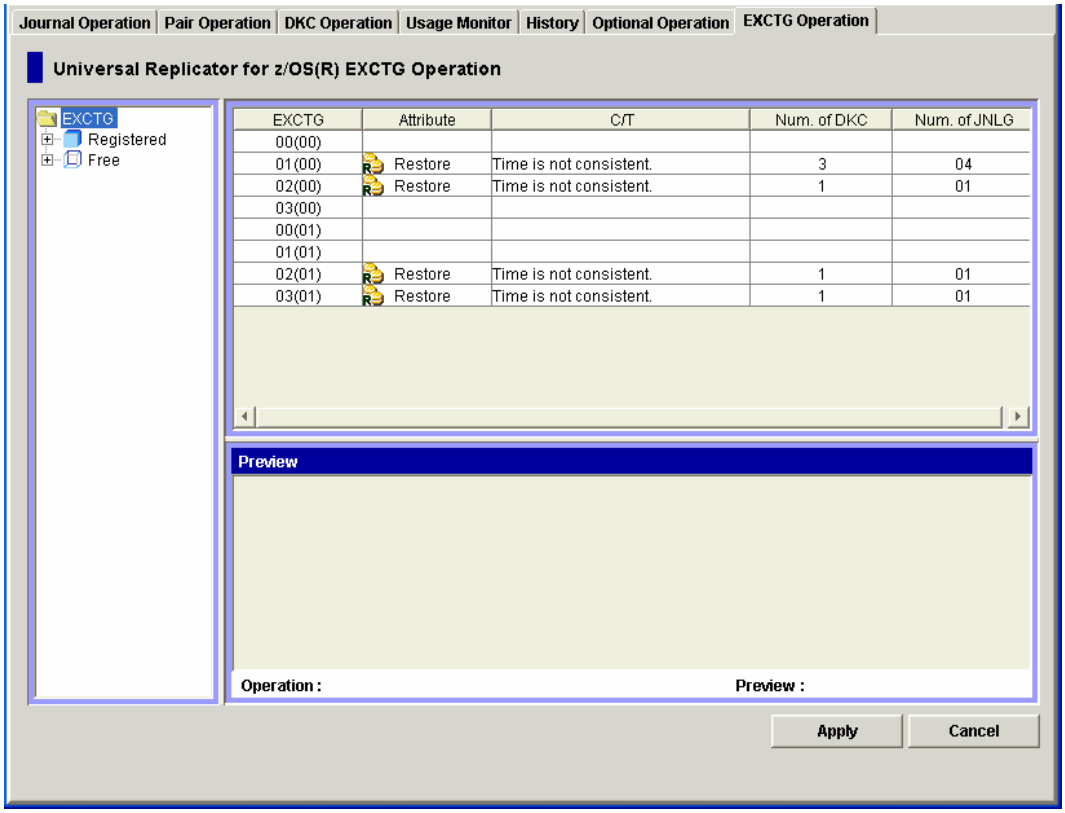


Figure 4-11 EXCTG Operation Window

The EXCTG Operation window displays the following:

- **Tree**: Lists extended consistency groups.

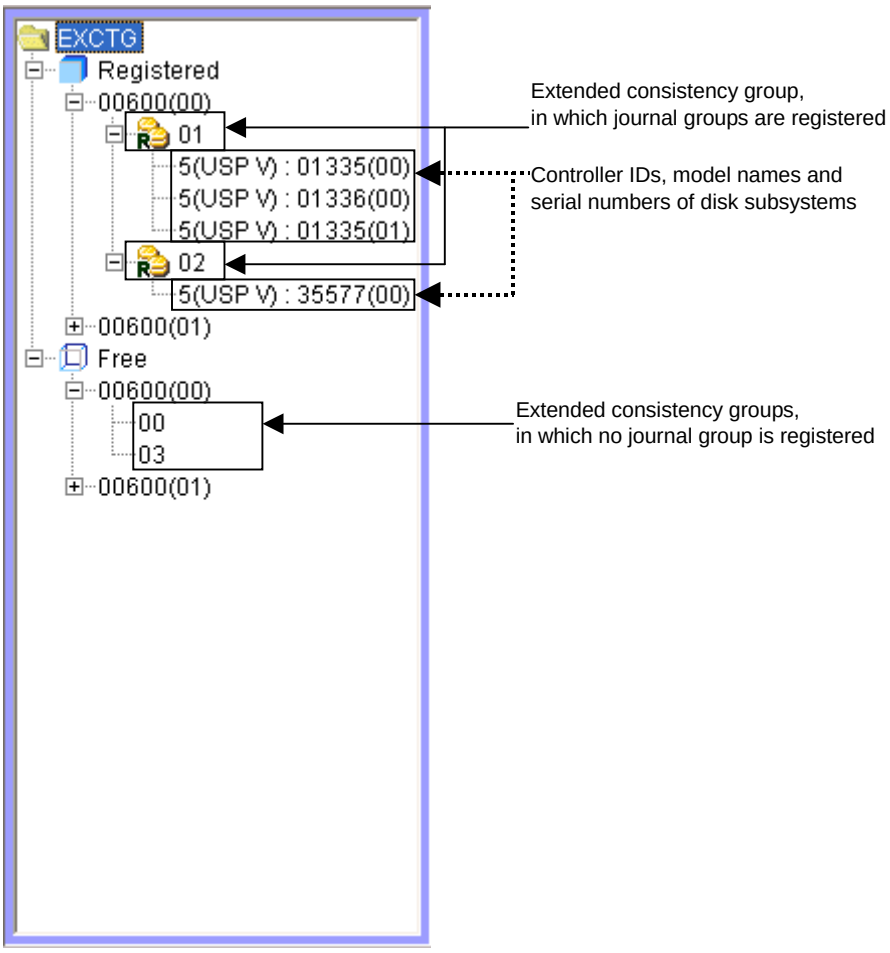


Figure 4-12 Tree of the EXCTG Operation Window

– **Registered**: When you select this item, the upper-right list displays extended consistency groups in which journal groups are registered.

  When you double-click this item, the tree displays LDKCs. When you select an LDKC in the tree, information about the extended consistency groups belonging to the LDKC appears in the upper-right list.

  When you double-click the LDKC, the tree displays extended consistency groups in which journal groups are registered. When you select an extended consistency group in the tree, information about the extended consistency group appears in the upper-right list.

  The extended consistency group icons are:

  An extended consistency group in primary site (primary EXCTG).

  An extended consistency group in secondary site (secondary EXCTG)

  If you double click the icon for an extended consistency group, the list displays storage systems registered in the extended consistency group.

– **Free**: When you select this item, the upper-right list displays extended consistency groups in which no journal groups are registered.

When you double-click this item, the tree display LDKCs. When you double-click an LDKC, the tree displays extended consistency groups in which no journal groups are registered.

- **Upper-right list**: The upper-right list displays a list of extended consistency groups, storage systems, or journal groups. For details, see sections 0, 0, and 0.
- **Preview**: Displays detailed information about operations that will occur when you click **Apply**.
  - **List**: When you change settings in the window, the changes will be displayed in the **Preview** list before the changes are applied to storage systems. The changes will be applied when you select **Apply**.
  - **Operation**: Indicates the current operation.

Add JNLG to EXCTG	Register journal groups in extended consistency groups
Remove JNLG from EXCTG	Delete journal groups from an extended consistency group

  - **Preview**: The number to the left of the slash (/) indicates the number of items displayed in the **Preview** list.

    The number to the right of the slash indicates the maximum number of items that can be displayed in the **Preview** list.
- **Apply**: Applies settings in the **Preview** list to the storage systems.
- **Cancel**: Cancels settings in the **Preview** list.

Note: Information on the EXCTG Operation window will be updated when you do one of the following:

2. Select another tab and then reselect the **EXCTG Operation** tab.
3. Click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window.
4. Select the **Apply** button.
5. Select modify mode when you are in view mode.

Displaying a List of Extended Consistency Groups

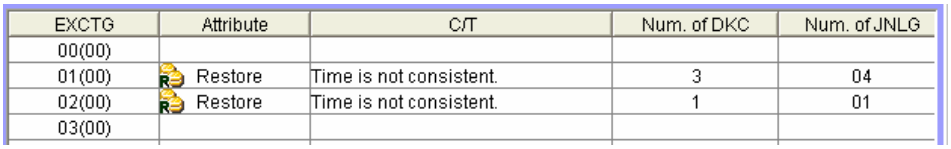
The EXCTG Operation window allows you to display a list of extended consistency groups.

To display a list of extended consistency groups:

1. Display the EXCTG Operation window.
2. Do one of the following In the tree:
   - To display all extended consistency groups, select EXCTG.
   - To display extended consistency groups in which journal groups are registered, select Registered. To display extended consistency groups belonging to an LDKC, select the LDKC from below Registered.

– To display extended consistency groups in which no journal group is registered, select **Free**. To display extended consistency groups belonging to an LDKC, select the LDKC from below **Free**.

The extended consistency groups are displayed in the upper right list (Figure 4-13).



EXCTG	Attribute	C/T	Num. of DKC	Num. of JNLG
00(00)				
01(00)	Restore	Time is not consistent.	3	04
02(00)	Restore	Time is not consistent.	1	01
03(00)				

Figure 4-13 Extended Consistency Groups in the EXCTG Operation Window

- **EXCTG**: Indicates an extended consistency group number and an LDKC number that is enclosed by parentheses. This number is a two-digit hexadecimal number.
- **Attribute**: Indicates the attribute of an extended consistency group.

An extended consistency group in primary site (primary EXCTG).

An extended consistency group in secondary site (secondary EXCTG)

This column displays the word **changing** when all journal groups in an extended consistency group are being registered.

- **C/T**: Displays the consistency time of an extended consistency group. For example, if the consistency time is 10:00 a.m., secondary data volumes in the extended consistency group are synchronized with the primary data volumes that were available as of 10:00 a.m.

  The consistency time is displayed in the following format:

  month/date/year hour/minute/second

  For the number of seconds, the number before and after the decimal point is displayed.

  This column displays the phrase **Time is not consistent** if secondary volumes in active journal groups in the extended consistency group do not have the same time stamp. For example, when a new journal group is added to the extended consistency group, this column displays **Time is not consistent** if the time stamp of a secondary data volume in this journal group is newer than the time stamp of secondary data volumes in the existing journal groups.

  Note: To maintain data update sequence, URz performs arbitration processing on journal groups in **Active** status only. URz does not perform arbitration processing on journal groups in **Stop** status.

  This column displays **There is no time stamp** for an extended journal group containing journal groups, if an initial copy operation is performed when hosts do not issue any I/O request.

This column displays **Underflow** or **Overflow** if an invalid time stamp is detected. If **Underflow** is displayed, the time stamp is below the allowable range. If **Overflow** is displayed, the time stamp is above the allowable range.

- **Num of DKC**: Indicates the number of storage systems registered in an extended consistency group.
- **Num of JNLG**: Indicates the number of journal groups registered in an extended consistency group.

Displaying a List of Storage Systems in an Extended Consistency Group

The EXCTG Operation window allows you to display a list of storage systems in an extended consistency group.

To display a list of storage systems in an extended consistency group:

1. Display the EXCTG Operation window.
2. Double-click Registered and then an LDKC below Registered in the tree.
3. Select an extended consistency group that is displayed in the tree.

   The list displays a list of storage systems registered in the extended consistency groups (Figure 4-14).

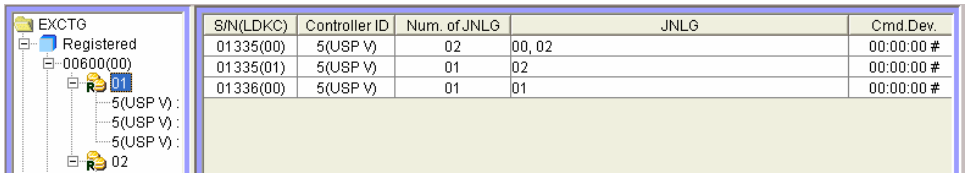


Figure 4-14 Storage Systems in the EXCTG Operation Window

- **S/N(LDKC)**: Indicates the serial number of a storage system and LDKC number that is enclosed by parentheses.
- **Controller ID**: Indicates the controller ID of a storage system and the model name of a storage system that is enclosed by parentheses.
- **Num. of JNLG**: Indicates the number of journal groups in an storage system in the extended consistency group.
- **JNLG**: Indicates journal group numbers. A journal group number is a two-digit hexadecimal number.
- **Cmd. Dev.**: Indicates a remote command device. The number on the left of the colon (:) is a CU number. The LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number are displayed.

Displaying a List of Journal Groups in an Extended Consistency Group

The EXCTG Operation window allows you to display a list of journal groups in an extended consistency group.

To display a list of journal groups in an extended consistency group:

1. Display the EXCTG Operation window.
2. In the tree, double-click Registered, an LDKC below Registered, and then select an extended consistency group.
3. Select a storage system from below the extended consistency group.

   The list displays a list of journal groups in the extended consistency groups (Figure 4-15).

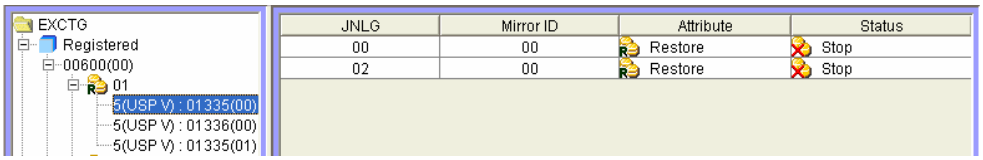


Figure 4-15 Storage Systems in the EXCTG Operation Window

- **JNLG**: Indicates journal group numbers. A journal group number is a two-digit hexadecimal number.
- **Mirror ID**: Indicates the mirror ID of a journal group.
- **Attribute**: Indicates the attribute of a journal group.

A master journal group

A restore journal group

- **Status**: Indicates the status of a journal group.

Note: If a journal group is in **Active** status and you want to know whether any data volume pair in this journal group is split, you must log in to the storage system containing the journal group, and then display the Journal Operation window to check the status of the journal group. If any data volume pair is split, the Journal Operation window displays the status of the journal group as **Active(Warning)**

5

Configuring Storage Systems and Logical Paths

This chapter explains how to configure storage systems and logical paths for Universal Replicator for z/OS in your system:

- ☐ Reviewing Storage System and Logical Paths
- ☐ Configuring Port Attributes
- ☐ Configuring Storage System Options
- ☐ Establishing the Relationship between Primary and Secondary Storage Systems (Add DKC)
- ☐ Changing Options for Logical Paths and Storage Systems
- ☐ Adding Logical Paths
- ☐ Viewing the Status of Logical Paths
- ☐ Deleting Logical Paths
- ☐ Managing SIMs
- ☐ Managing Power for Storage Systems and Network Relay Devices
- ☐ Removing the Relationship Between the Primary and the Secondary Storage Systems

Reviewing Storage System and Logical Paths

To introduce Universal Replicator for z/OS (henceforth abbreviated as *URz*) into your system and configure your system for remote copy operations, you must consider which data should be copied from which storage system to which storage system. The storage system containing data to be copied to another storage system is referred to as the *primary storage system*. The storage system to which data are copied from another storage system is referred to as the *secondary storage system*. The place where the primary storage system exists is referred to as the *primary site*. The place where the secondary storage system exists is referred to as the *secondary site*.

When performing system configurations for remote copy operations, the primary site administrator and the secondary site administrator must do the following:

- The primary site administrator must configure some of the ports on the primary storage system to connect hosts. The primary site administrator must also configure some other ports on the primary storage system to communicate with remote storage systems.
- The secondary site administrator must configure some ports on the secondary storage system to communicate with the primary storage system.
- After finishing port configurations, the primary and secondary site administrators must configure logical paths between the communication ports on the primary site and the communication ports on the secondary site, so that the two storage systems can communicate with each other.

When performing system configurations, the administrators must do the following:

- Display the DKC Operation window
- Configure port attributes
- Associate the primary and the secondary storage systems and configure logical paths between the two storage systems

When performing system configurations, the administrator should do the following when necessary:

- Change options for logical paths and storage systems
- Add logical paths
- Delete logical paths
- Displaying status of logical paths
- Delete the relationship between the primary and the secondary storage systems

Note: Throughout this chapter, the primary and the secondary storage systems are sometimes referred to as *local storage systems* or *remote storage systems*. If you are logged into the primary storage system and are using URz, the primary storage system is a *local storage system* and the secondary storage system is a *remote storage system*. If you are logged into the secondary storage system and are using URz, the secondary storage system is a *local storage system* and the primary storage system is a *remote storage system*.

Note: When performing system configuration, the administrator also needs to configure journal groups. For detailed information about configuring journal groups, see Chapter 6.

Setup Procedure for Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems

After you have installed the URz hardware and software, you can configure the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems for URz operations.

To configure the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems for URz operations:

1. Identify the volumes that will become the URz data volumes and journal volumes in primary storage system and secondary storage system. You need to know the storage system S/N and the controller ID, so that you can configure the primary storage systems and secondary storage systems correctly for your desired pairs. When you create the pairs, you will need to know the LDKC number, the CU number, and the LDEV number of each volume.
2. Connect to the USP V storage system that you want to use. For further information on *USP V* Storage Navigator installation and operations, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*, or contact your Hitachi Data Systems account team. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.

   Note: You must log in with Administrator or URz write access, and you must be in modify mode. If you are in the view mode, you can refer to the URz pair status, but you cannot modify the settings.
3. When you click **Go**, **Universal Replicator for z/OS** and then **URz Monitor** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window, URz starts and the URz window is active. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.
4. Select the **Port** radio button on the DKC Operation window, set the initiator and RCU target ports. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.

5. Select the DKC radio button on the DKC Operation window to display the Add DKC window. Set the S/N of the storage system which will be connected, controller ID, path group ID, the initiator port in this storage system, the RCU target port in the storage system which will be connected. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.
6. Select the Option button on Add DKC window, and then set the desired options of local storage system. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.
7. Specify the journal group number from the Journal Operation window. Register the journal volumes from the Edit JNL Volumes window. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.
8. Register the primary and secondary data volumes and the journal groups that are paired from the Add Pair window in Pair Operation.

   Note: URz pairs can only be registered by the primary storage system.
9. Exit the URz remote console software, and disconnect from the storage system. Operate at a primary storage system and a secondary storage system.
10. Repeat steps (3)–(9) for each storage system which will function as a URz primary storage system. After you have configured the primary storage systems, added the secondary storage systems, and configured the URz options and journal groups, you are ready to begin URz volume pair operations.

Setup Procedure (When More Than One Primary and Secondary Storage System are Used)

1. Install URz on storage systems in the primary and secondary sites.
2. Make settings on ports and journal groups of the storage systems in the primary and secondary sites.

   For details on port settings for storage systems in the secondary sites, see section Configuring Paths and Ports to Establish Connections among Secondary Storage Systems.
3. Create command devices in secondary storage systems.
4. Create remote command devices in the supervisor DKC, and then map them to command devices in the subordinate DKCs.

   For details on remote command devices to be created in the supervisor DKC, see section Creating Remote Command Devices to Establish Connections among Secondary Storage Systems.
5. Create URz volume pairs.
6. With the remote command devices created in step 4, use the supervisor DKC to register journal groups of secondary storage systems in an extended consistency group.

Configuring Port Attributes

The administrator at both the primary site and the secondary site must configure ports on the primary storage system and the secondary storage system in the following ways:

- The administrator at the primary site must configure target ports, initiator ports, and RCU target ports on the primary storage system.
- The administrator at the secondary site must configure initiator ports and RCU target ports on the secondary storage system.

Ports on USP V storage system have the *target* attribute by default. If you are configuring USP V storage systems, you must determine ports that should be used as initiator ports or RCU target ports, and then you must change the attribute of the ports from *target* to *initiator* or *RCU target*. The port attributes are explained below:

- **Target**: A target port is a Fibre Channel port used for connecting a storage system and a host. When the host issues a write request, the request will be sent to a volume via a target port on the storage system. Target ports must be configured on primary storage systems for URz operations.
- **Initiator**: An initiator port is a Fibre Channel port that sends commands to a remote storage system. Initiator ports must be configured on both primary and remote storage systems for URz operations.
- **RCU target**: An initiator port is a Fibre Channel port that receives commands from a remote storage system. RCU target ports must be configured on both primary and remote storage systems for URz operations.
- **External**: An external port is a port that is required for Universal Volume Manager copy operations. This port will not be used for URz copy operations.

  If necessary, you can change this port to an target port, an initiator port, or an RCU target port.
- **Initiator/external**: This setting shows the combination of ports that have an initiator port and an external port attributes. Only port that has an initiator port attribute within these ports can be used for URz. This attribute cannot be changed by the URz software. For details on the port to which an initiator/external mix mode is set, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Note: If initiator ports and RCU target ports are *not* configured on both primary and remote storage systems, the following problem will occur and remote copy operations will not be performed:

- The administrator at the primary site will be unable to create any pair of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume.
- The secondary storage system will be unable to read data from journal volumes in the primary storage system.

WARNING: Before changing a Fibre Channel port to an initiator port, disconnect the port from the host, release all affected data volume pairs, delete all logical paths from the initiator port to the remote storage system, and then remove all channel paths to the port.

WARNING: Before changing a Fibre Channel port from initiator to target or RCU target, delete all affected data volume pairs, release all logical paths from the initiator port to the remote storage system, and then disconnect the local storage system and the remote storage system.

Caution: Limit the number of hosts connected to a target port to 128 or fewer to avoid mistaken disconnection. If more than 128 hosts are connected to a target port, some hosts may be disconnected after changing the type from target to RCU target.

Note: The port assigned to SLPR other than SLPR0 can be set to the Target port attribute only.

To configure attributes of Fibre Channel ports, follow the procedure below. Both the primary storage system administrator and the secondary storage system administrator must perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
3. In **Display**, select **Port**.

   The tree displays channel adapters in the local storage system and port attributes.
4. Do either of the following:
   - Select a channel adapter from the tree.
   - Select a port attribute (i.e., target, RCU target or initiator) from the tree.
5. Select and right-click the port that you want to configure.
6. From the pop-up menu, select the desired port type (i.e., initiator, RCU target, or target).

   The rightmost column of the list displays "Modified" to indicate that you are modifying the attribute of the port.

   The **Preview** list displays the changes that you have made (Note that these changes are not applied to the storage system yet).
7. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to change the attribute of a port, select and right-click the port from the upper-right list and then select the new attribute.
   - If you want to cancel a change in the attribute of a port, select and right-click the port in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.

WARNING: Read and follow the important warnings and caution above before applying the port attribute changes.

8. Select **Apply** to apply port attribute changes to the storage system.

Configuring Storage System Options

The Optional Operations window allows you to change storage system option settings

To change the option settings of the storage system:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Optional Operation window is displayed.
3. Select **Subsystem** in the tree.

   The list displays storage system options (see Figure 5-1).

4. Do either of the following:
   - Right-click Subsystem in the tree, and then select Change System Option from the pop-up menu.
   - Right-click information in the list to display the pop-up menu, and select **Change System Option** from the pop-up menu.
5. In the System Option window (Figure 5-2), change storage system options.
6. Select the Set button.
7. See the **Preview** list to verify the changes that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a change, right-click the change and then select **Modify**. A window appears and allows you to modify the change.
   - If you want to cancel a change, right-click the change and then select **Cancel**.
8. Select **Apply** to apply the changes.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

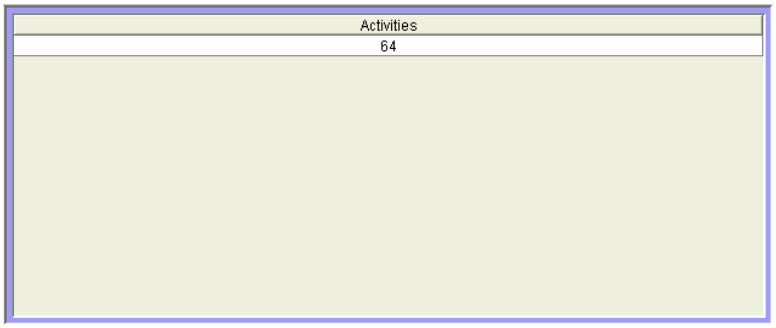


Figure 5-1 Storage System Option Settings in the Optional Operation Window

- **Activities:** The number of volumes that can be copied concurrently during an initial copy operation.

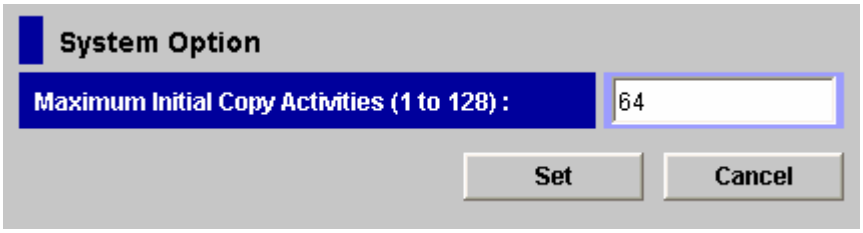


Figure 5-2 System Option Window

- **Maximum Initial Copy Activities:** Specifies the number volumes that can be copied concurrently during an initial copy operation. A value within the range of 1 to 128 can be specified. The default setting is 64 volumes.

  Maximum Initial Copy Activities can impact the performance of the primary storage system, depending on the amount of I/O activity and the number of pairs being registered at the same time. If **Maximum Initial Copy Activities** is 64 volumes, it allows you to limit the impact of initial copy activities on storage system performance. For example, if you set the maximum initial copy activities to 64 volumes and then add 65 pairs at the same time, the primary storage system starts the first 64 pairs and will not start the 65th pair until one of the pairs is synchronized. When you change the maximum initial copy activities setting, the new setting applies to pairs created after the setting was changed, not to existing pairs.
- **Set:** Closes the System Option window and then adds the settings to the **Preview** list.
- **Cancel:** Cancels the settings.

Establishing the Relationship between Primary and Secondary Storage Systems (Add DKC)

The Add DKC window (see Figure 5-3) allows you to associate the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, and also allows you to establish logical paths between the two storage systems. *Logical paths* are used to connect the primary and secondary storage systems. Both the primary storage system and the secondary storage system use logical paths to communicate with each other.

One primary storage system can be associated with up to 64 secondary storage systems. Up to eight logical paths can be configured between one primary storage system and one secondary storage system. Therefore, one primary storage system can have up to 512 logical paths to secondary storage systems.

To associate the primary and secondary storage systems and then configure logical paths between the two storage systems, both the primary storage system administrator and the secondary storage system administrator must perform this operation:

1. Make sure the remote copy connections and ports are properly configured. Also, get the serial number of the remote storage system.

   Note: To get the serial number of the remote storage system, ask the administrator of the remote storage system. The serial number will be displayed in the Storage Navigator main window when the Storage Navigator user logs into the storage system.

2. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

3. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
4. In Display, select DKC.
5. Select LDKC from the tree.
6. Right-click the upper-right list, and then select **DKC Operation** and **Add DKC**

   The Add DKC window appears (refer to Figure 5-3).

7. In the Add DKC window, enter the following:
   - the serial number of the remote storage system
   - the LDKC number of the remote storage system
     "00" is displayed when the remote storage system is TagmaStore USP/NSC.
   - the controller ID of the remote storage system (model name that indicates the model)

     Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5(USP V)**.
   - the path group ID

The path group ID is within the range of 1-FF (hexadecimal). Up to 64 path group IDs can be registered per storage system.

Note: In the current version, the path group IDs always take the default values and cannot be changed.

8. In the Add DKC window, select a primary storage system port and a remote storage system port to configure a logical path.
9. Select Option.
10. In the DKC Option window, configure logical path options and storage system options.

    For detailed information about the options, see the next section and read explanations below Figure 5-4.
11. Select Set to close the DKC Option window.
12. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
    - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting from the **Preview** list and then select **Modify**. A window appears and allows you to modify the setting.
    - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.
13. Select **Apply** to apply the settings that you have made.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

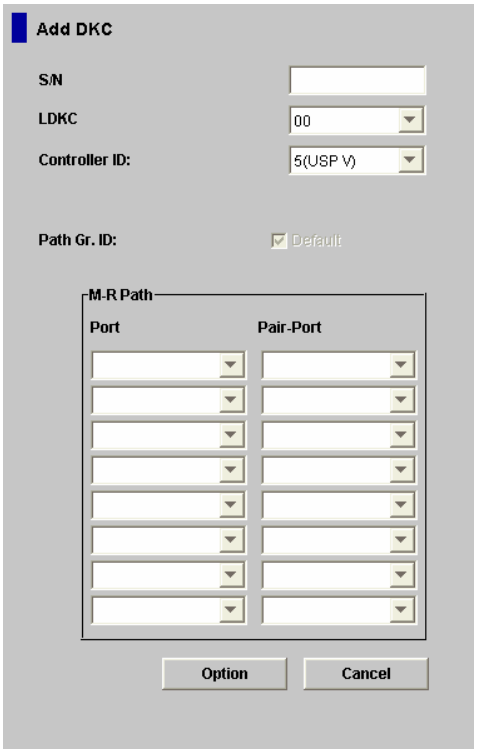


Figure 5-3 Add DKC Window

The Add DKC window displays the following:

- **S/N**: allows you to enter the five-digit serial number of the remote storage system.
- **LDKC:** allows you to enter the LDKC number of the remote storage system. “00” is displayed when the remote storage system is TagmaStore USP/NSC.

  Note: The **LDKC#01** cannot be used in this version.
- **Controller ID**: allows you to enter the controller ID (model name that indicates the model) of the remote storage system.

  Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5(USP V)**.
- **Path Gr. ID:** allows you to enter the path group ID. Path group IDs are used for identifying groups of logical paths. One path group can contain up to eight logical paths.

  Path group IDs are within the range of 1-FF (hexadecimal). If you select the **Default** check box, the default path group ID will be set.

  Note: In the current version, you cannot enter path group IDs. Also, you cannot clear the **Default** check box. The number of path group IDs per one remote storage system is always 1.
- **M-R Path**: allows you to specify logical paths from initiator ports on the local storage system to RCU target ports on the remote storage system.
- **Port**: displays a list of initiator ports on the local storage system. Select an initiator port from this drop-down list.
- **Pair-Port**: displays a list of all ports on the remote storage system. Select an RCU target port on the remote storage system from this drop-down list.

  Note: When specifying a port, you can use the keyboard to enter the port number. When you enter the port number, you can abbreviate the port number into two characters. For example, you can enter **1A** instead of **CL1-A**. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters.
- **Option**: opens the DKC Option window.
- **Cancel**: cancels the settings you made on the Add DKC window and then closes the window.

Changing Options for Logical Paths and Storage Systems

The DKC Option window (see Figure 5-4) allows you to set the logical path options and storage system options. These options will apply to the local storage system and the corresponding remote storage system.

Note: DKC is an acronym for disk controller, which controls an entire storage system. URz windows use the word "DKC" to indicate a storage system.

To change logical path options and storage system options, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
3. In **Display**, select **DKC**.
4. Select **LDKC** from the tree.

   The list displays a list of remote storage systems.
5. From the list, select and right-click the desired remote storage system,
6. From the pop-up menu, select **DKC Operation** and **Change DKC Option**.

   The DKC Option window appears (Figure 5-4).
7. On the DKC Option window, change the options as desired. For detailed information about the options, refer to explanations below Figure 5-4.
8. Select **Set** to close the DKC Option window.
9. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting from the Preview list and then select Modify. A window appears and allows you to modify the setting.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.
10. Select **Apply** to apply the settings that you have made.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

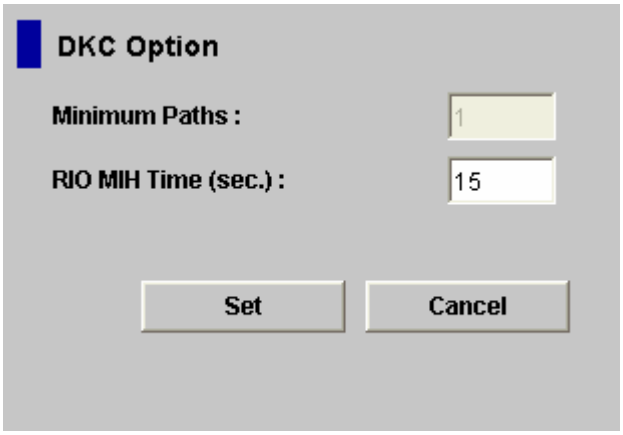


Figure 5-4 DKC Option Window

The DKC Option window displays the following:

- The **Minimum Paths** option specifies the minimum number of paths required for each remote storage system connected to the local storage system (default = 1).

  Note: You cannot change the **Minimum Paths** for the current version.

- The **RIO MIH Time** setting specifies the RIO MIH timer value, which is the wait time until data transfer from the local storage system to the remote storage system is complete. The RIO MIH time value must be from 10 to 100 seconds. The default setting is 15 seconds.

  Note: RIO MIH is an acronym for remote I/O missing interrupt handler.

Adding Logical Paths

The Add Path window (see Figure 5-5) allows you to add one or more logical paths between the local and remote storage systems.

One primary storage system can be associated with up to 64 secondary storage systems. Up to eight logical paths can be configured between one primary storage system and one secondary storage system. When you add a logical path, URz will automatically start using the new logical path to perform URz copy activities.

To add one or more new logical paths between the local and remote storage systems, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Make sure the remote copy connections are properly configured.
2. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
3. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
4. In Display, select DKC.
5. Do either of the following:

   In the tree, select a remote storage system.

   In the list, select and right-click a remote storage system and then select **Edit Path(s)** from the pop-up menu. The list displays information about logical paths.
6. Right-click the list and then select **Add Path** from the pop-up menu.

   The Add Path window appears (Figure 5-5).
7. Use the Add Path window to configure new logical paths.

   Up to eight paths can be configured.
8. Select **Set** to close the Add Path window.
9. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting from the **Preview** list and then select **Modify**. A window appears and allows you to modify the setting.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.
10. Select **Apply** to apply the settings that you have made.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

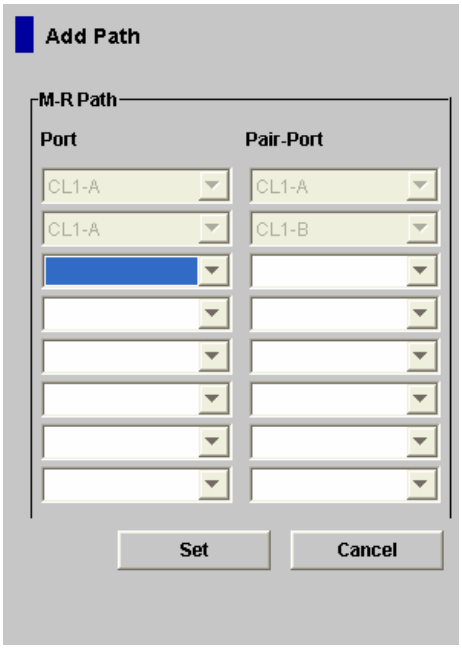


Figure 5-5 Add Path Window

The Add Path window displays the following:

- **Port**: allows you to select an initiator port on the local storage system.

  Note: When specifying a port, you can use the keyboard to enter the port number. When you enter the port number, you can abbreviate the port number into two characters. For example, you can enter **1A** instead of **CL1-A**. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters.

- **Pair-Port**: allows you to select an RCU target port on the remote storage system.

  Note: When specifying a port, you can use the keyboard to enter the port number. When you enter the port number, you can abbreviate the port number into two characters. For example, you can enter **1A** instead of **CL1-A**. You can use uppercase and lowercase letters.

- **Set**: closes the Add Path window and adds the settings to the **Preview** list.
- **Cancel**: cancels the settings.

Viewing the Status of Logical Paths

The DKC Status window (see Figure 5-6) displays the status of logical path(s).

To view the status of logical path(s), follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
2. In **Display**, select **DKC**.
3. Execute a following operation between two ways.
   - Click **LDKC** from the tree. In the upper-right list, click and right-click a remote storage system.
   - Click the remote storage system from the tree. In the upper-right list, click and right-click a logical path.
4. Select **DKC Status** from the pop-up menu.

   The DKC Status window appears (Figure 5-6).
   - If a remote storage system is selected in the list, the DKC status window displays all the logical paths between the local and the remote storage systems and shows the status for each of the paths.
   - If a logical path is selected in the list, the DKC status window only displays the status of the selected logical path.
5. Check the status of the logical path(s), and then select **Close** to close the DKC status window.

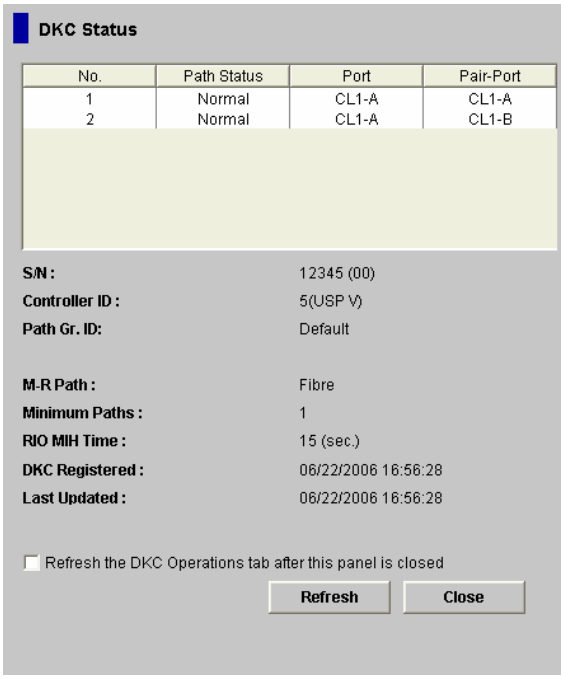


Figure 5-6 DKC Status Window

The DKC Status window displays the following:

- List:
  - **No.**: displays serial numbers used for rows in the list
  - **Path Status**: indicates status of a logical path (For details, see Table 5-1)
  - **Port:** indicates a port on the local storage system
  - **Pair-Port:** indicates a port on the remote storage system.
- **S/N**: indicates the serial number and LDKC number of the remote storage system.
- **Controller ID:** displays the controller ID (model name that indicates the model) of the remote storage system.
- **Path Gr. ID:** indicates a path group ID.
- **M-R Path**: indicates the type of channel interface between the local and the remote storage systems. This column displays **fibre**.
- **Minimum Paths**: Indicates the minimum possible number of paths between the local and the remote storage systems.
- **RIO MIH Time**: indicates the RIO MIH timer value, which is the wait time until data transfer from the local storage system to the remote storage system is complete.

  Note: RIO MIH is an acronym for remote I/O missing interrupt handler.
- **DKC Registered**: Indicates the date and time when the local and the remote storage systems are associated to each other.
- **Last Updated**: indicates the date and time when the last operation on a logical path to the remote storage system was performed.
- **Refresh the DKC Operation tab after this panel is closed**: If you select this check box, information in the DKC Operation window will be refreshed after you close the DKC Status window.
- **Refresh**: refreshes the information in the DKC Status window.
- **Close**: closes the DKC Status window.

Table 5-1 Logical Path Status

Status	Remarks
Normal	This path has been successfully established and can be used for URz remote copy activities.
Nothing	An operation for configuring or deleting this logical path is in progress.
Initialization Failed	An error occurred with initialization of connection between the local and the remote storage system. The probable causes are: • No cable is connected to the local storage system. • No cable is connected to the remote storage system. • No cable is connected to the network device that comes between the local and the remote storage system.

Communication Time Out	This status indicates one of the following: • A timeout error has occurred between the primary and the secondary storage systems. • A logic error is detected between the primary and the secondary storage systems.
Resource Shortage (Port)	The local storage system rejected the function for configuring logical path connection. All logical path resources in the local storage system might be used for other connections.
Resource Shortage (Pair-Port)	The remote storage system rejected the function for configuring logical path connection. All logical path resources in the remote storage system might be used for other connections.
Serial Number Mismatch	The serial number of the storage system connected to this logical path does not match the serial number specified by the Add DKC window.
Invalid Port	The port is not an initiator port.
Pair-Port Number Mismatch	This status indicates one of the following: • The specified port number is incorrect. • The port in the remote storage system is physically disconnected from the local storage system.
Pair-Port Type Mismatch	The port on the remote storage system is not an RCU target port.
Communication Failed	A communication timeout error has occurred on the path between the primary and the secondary storage systems.

Deleting Logical Paths

Before deleting logical path(s), make sure that the remaining number of logical paths will be greater than the minimum number of paths setting. The delete path operation will fail if the number of remaining paths is equal to or less than the minimum number of paths.

To delete logical path(s), follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
3. In **Display**, select **DKC**.
4. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, select a remote storage system.
   - In the list, select and right-click a remote storage system and then select **Edit Path(s)** from the pop-up menu. The list displays information about logical paths.
5. In the list, select the logical path(s) that you want to delete.
6. Right-click the list and then select **Delete Path** from the pop-up menu.

   A confirmation message appears.
7. Select OK to close the message.
8. In the DKC Operation window, locate the upper-right list and the **Preview** list and then check the settings that you have made.
   - The right-most column of the upper-right list displays the word "Delete" to indicate logical path(s) to be deleted.
   - The **Preview** list displays logical path(s) to be deleted.
   - If you want to cancel deleting logical path(s), select and right-click the logical path(s) in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.
9. Select **Apply** to delete logical path(s).

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

Managing SIMs

Enabling or Disabling SIM Reporting

The Optional Operation window can be used to enable CUs to report SIMs (service information messages) to hosts, or prevent CUs from reporting SIMs to hosts. For detailed information about SIMs, see 0.

To change whether CUs can report SIMs to hosts:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Optional Operation window is displayed.
3. Select **LDKC** in the tree.

   The list shows you whether each CU can report SIMs (see Figure 5-7).
4. Do either of the following to change setting on whether CUs can report SIMs:
   - To change the setting for all CUs, right-click LDKC in the tree, and then select Change SIM Report from the pop-up menu.
   - To change the setting for one or more (but not all) CUs, select and right-click one or more CUs in the list, and then select **Change SIM Report** from the pop-up menu.
   - The **Preview** list displays the changes that you have made. Note, however, that the changes have not been applied to the storage system.
5. See the **Preview** list to verify the changes.

   If you want to cancel a change, right-click the change and then select **Delete**.

   Note: When you right-click the **Preview** list, you will find a command named **Modify**. This command is grayed out and therefore cannot be used.
6. Select **Apply** to apply the changes.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

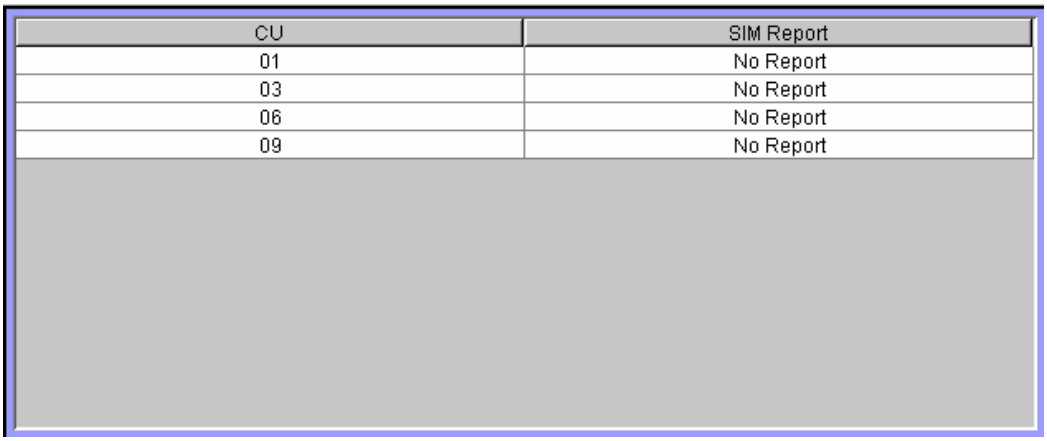


Figure 5-7 List in the Optional Operations Window Showing Whether to Report SIMs from CUs to Host

- **CU:** Displays CU numbers.
- **SIM Report:** Indicates whether to report SIMs from CUs to hosts.

Clearing Service Information Messages (SIMs)

SIMs (service information messages) are messages that are sent from USP V to hosts. For example, SIMs are sent when a failure occurs. For detailed information about SIMs, see 0.

SIMs that are sent to hosts are also saved in the SVP. If you want to clear all URz SIMs from the SVP, follow the procedure below.

Caution: If you follow the procedure below to clear all URz SIMs, UR SIMs will also be cleared at the same time. You cannot only delete URz SIMs. The SIMs of the entire storage system will be cleared.

To clear all SIMs:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the **Optional Operation** window is displayed.
3. Select **Clear SIM** at the upper right corner of the window.

   A message appears and asks whether you want to delete SIMs.
4. Select **Yes** to delete SIMs.

Managing Power for Storage Systems and Network Relay Devices

This appendix explains power management for storage system s and network relay devices during remote copy operations. In particular, this appendix discusses the following:

- What happens when power is removed from storage systems or network relay devices due to some unexpected reason (see the next section).
- What should be noted when you power off storage systems or network relay devices intentionally (see section Turning Off Power Intentionally)

Here, the term "network relay devices" refers to hardware used for connecting the primary and secondary storage systems, such as ESCON directors, channel extenders, and switches.

When Power Stops Unexpectedly

This section explains what happens when power is removed from storage systems or network relay devices due to some unexpected reason.

When the Power is Removed from the Primary Storage System

If power is removed from the primary storage system during remote copy operations, the primary storage system assumes that a failure occurs, and then splits all data volume pairs. If the primary storage system splits data volume pairs, the secondary storage system also assumes that a failure occurs, and then splits all data volume pairs.

If power is removed from the primary or secondary storage system and its backup batteries are fully discharged while data volume pairs are split, differential data (i.e., update data) will not be retained. In this unlikely case, the primary or secondary storage system assumes all the suspended data volumes are updated. If you restore the data volume pairs at the primary site, all the primary data volumes will be copied to the secondary data volumes.

When the Power is Removed from the Secondary Storage System

If power is removed from the secondary storage system during remote copy operations, the secondary storage system assumes that a failure occurs, and then splits all data volume pairs. If the secondary storage system splits data volume pairs, the primary storage system also assumes that a failure occurs, and then splits all data volume pairs.

If power is removed from the primary or secondary storage system and its backup batteries are fully discharged while data volume pairs are split, differential data (i.e., update data) will not be retained. In this unlikely case, the primary or secondary storage system assumes all the suspended data volumes are updated. If you restore the data volume pairs at the primary site, all the primary data volumes will be copied to the secondary data volumes.

When the Power is Removed from Network Relay Devices

If power is removed from a network relay device during remote copy operations, the primary and secondary storage systems assume that a failure occurs, and then split all data volume pairs.

Turning Off Power Intentionally

This section explains what should be noted when you power off storage systems or network relay devices intentionally.

When You Power Off the Primary Storage System

If you want to power off the primary storage system during remote copy operations, you must ensure, before powering off the storage system, that all data volume pairs or mirrors (i.e., pairs of journal groups) are split, and that the status of all the data volume pairs is **Suspend**.

If more than one primary and secondary storage systems are used with extended consistency groups, you must split all data volume pairs in the extended consistency groups before powering off the primary storage systems. When powering off the primary storage systems, you must power off the supervisor DKC first, and then the subordinate DKCs.

Caution: If you want to power off the primary storage system, please contact your Hitachi account team and ask them to power off the storage system.

If data volume pairs are split and the primary storage system is powered off as mentioned above, you can resume remote copy operations by taking the following steps:

1. Power on the primary storage system.

   If more than one primary storage system is to be used with extended consistency groups, power on the subordinate DKCs first, and then the supervisor DKC.

2. If the primary storage system is ready to resume remote copy operations, please restore the data volume pairs that have been split, and then confirm that the status of the data volume pairs is **Pending duplex** or **Duplex**. This operation must be performed at the primary site.

After you take these steps, remote copy operations will be resumed. The primary storage system will be able to respond to *read journal commands* issued by the secondary storage system.

Note: If you want to power off both the primary and secondary storage systems at the same time, please see the next section.

Note: If you turn the power off without changing the status of all data volume pairs to **Suspend**, and then you turn the power back on, the status of all data volume pairs could be suspended according to a failure.

When You Power Off the Secondary Storage System

If you want to power off the secondary storage system during remote copy operations, you must ensure, before powering off the storage system, that all data volume pairs or mirrors (i.e., pairs of journal groups) are split, and that the status of all the data volume pairs is **Suspend**.

If more than one primary and secondary storage systems are used with extended consistency groups, you must split all data volume pairs in the extended consistency groups before powering off the secondary storage systems. When powering off the secondary storage systems, you must power off the supervisor DKC first, and then the subordinate DKCs.

Caution: If you want to power off the secondary storage system, please contact your Hitachi account team and ask them to power off the storage system.

If data volume pairs are split and the secondary storage system is powered off as mentioned above, you can resume remote copy operations by taking the following steps:

1. Power on the secondary storage system.

   If more than one secondary storage system is to be used with extended consistency groups, power on the subordinate DKCs first, and then the supervisor DKC.
2. If the secondary storage system is ready to resume remote copy operations, please restore the data volume pairs that have been split, and then confirm that the status of the data volume pairs is **Pending** or **Duplex**. This operation must be performed at the primary site.

After you take these steps, remote copy operations will be resumed. The secondary storage system will be able to issue *read journal commands* to the primary storage system.

Note: If you want to power off both the primary and secondary storage systems at the same time, please see the next section.

Important: If you turn the power off without changing the status of all data volume pairs to **Suspend**, and then you turn the power back on, the status of all data volume pairs could be suspended according to a failure.

When You Power Off the Primary and Secondary Storage Systems at the Same Time

If you want to power off the primary and secondary storage systems at the same time, the primary storage system must be powered off before the secondary storage system is powered off. If you want to power on the primary and secondary storage systems again, the secondary storage system must be powered on before the primary storage system is powered on.

If more than one primary and secondary storage systems are used with extended consistency groups, you must first power off all the primary storage systems, and then the secondary storage systems. When you power on the primary and secondary storage systems again, you must first power on all the secondary storage systems, and then the primary storage systems.

The following is the procedure for powering off the primary and secondary storage systems at the same time:

1. Split data volume pairs that will be affected by powering off of the primary and secondary storage systems.

   For example, if two primary storage systems and one secondary storage systems are connected to each other and you want to power off one of the primary storage system and the secondary storage system, you must split data volume pairs that are defined between the remaining one primary storage system and the primary storage system, because these data volume pairs will be affected by powering off of the storage systems.
2. After the splitting of the pairs finishes, confirm that the status of all the pairs is changed to Suspend at the primary storage system.
3. Power off the primary storage system as described previously. Do not power on the primary storage system yet.
4. Power off the secondary storage system as described previously.
5. Power on the secondary storage system.
6. If the secondary storage system is ready to resume remote copy operations, power on the primary storage system.
7. If the primary storage system is ready to resume remote copy operations, resume the data volume pairs that have been split at the primary storage system. Confirm that the status of the data volume pairs is changed to **Pending** or **Duplex**.

Note: After you turned the power on or off both the primary and secondary storage system at the same time, if a status of a data volume pair of primary storage subsystem is Suspend and a status of a data volume pair of secondary storage subsystem is Duplex, you must suspend the data volume pair of secondary storage system by using Storage Navigator. After confirming that the statuses of the data volume pair of primary storage system and secondary storage system are Suspend, restore the data volume pair that has been split at the primary storage system.

When You Power Off Network Relay Devices

If you want to power off a network relay device during remote copy operations, you must ensure, before powering off the device, that all data volume pairs or mirrors (i.e., pairs of journal groups) are split, and that the status of all the data volume pairs is **Suspend**.

If data volume pairs are split and the network relay device is powered off as mentioned above, you can resume remote copy operations by taking the following steps:

1. Power on the network relay device.
2. If the network relay device is ready for remote copy operations, please restore the data volume pairs that have been split, and then confirm that the status of the data volume pairs is **Pending** or **Duplex**. This operation must be performed at the primary site.

Removing the Relationship Between the Primary and the Secondary Storage Systems

To remove the relationship between the primary and the secondary storage systems and then remove all the logical paths between the two storage systems. both the primary storage system administrator and the secondary storage system administrator must perform this operation:

1. Make sure that all affected URz volume pairs have been deleted.
2. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.
3. For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
4. Ensure that the DKC Operation window is displayed.
5. In **Display**, select **DKC**.
6. Select **LDKC** from the tree.
7. The list displays a list of remote storage systems.
8. Select and right-click remote storage system(s) from the list.
9. Select **DKC Operation** and **Delete DKC** from the pop-up menu.
10. A confirmation message appears.
11. Select **OK** to close the message.
12. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
    - The **Preview** list displays the specified remote storage system(s). One row indicates one remote storage system.
    - If you want to cancel removal of the relationship, select and right-click remote storage system in the **Preview** list and then select **Cancel**.
13. Select **Apply** to remove the relationship.

6

Configuring Journal Groups

This chapter describes the introduction of the URz in your system and explains how to configure your system for remote copy operations:

- ☐ Reviewing Administrator Tasks for Managing Journals
- ☐ Registering Journal Volumes in a Journal Group
- ☐ Deleting Journal Volumes from a Journal Group
- ☐ Displaying Detailed Information about a Journal Group
- ☐ Changing Options for a Journal Group
- ☐ Deleting a Journal Group
- ☐ Splitting a Mirror (Suspending a copy operation)
- ☐ Restoring a Mirror (Resuming a copy operation)
- ☐ Deleting Data Volumes from a Mirror (Ending a copy operation)

Reviewing Administrator Tasks for Managing Journals

To introduce URz in your system and configure your system for remote copy operations, the primary site administrator and the secondary site administrator must configure *journal groups*, as well as ports and logical paths. Also, these administrators must register journal volumes in journal groups. During URz remote copy operations, data in primary data volumes are copied via journal volumes to secondary data volumes.

When configuring journal groups, the administrators must do the following:

- Display the Journal Operation window
- Register journal volumes in journal groups

When configuring journal groups, the administrator should do the following when necessary:

- Delete journal volumes from journal groups
- View detailed information about journal groups
- Change journal group options
- Delete journal groups

When URz is used for remote copy operations, the administrator should do the following when necessary:

- Split mirrors
- Restore mirrors
- Delete data volumes (i.e., the primary and the secondary data volumes) from mirrors
- Delete journal groups from an extended consistency group forcibly

Note: Throughout this chapter, the primary and the secondary storage systems are sometimes referred to as *local storage systems* or *remote storage systems*. If you are logged into the primary storage system and are using URz, the primary storage system is a *local* storage system and the secondary storage system is a *remote* storage system. If you are logged into the secondary storage system and are using URz, the secondary storage system is a *local* storage system and the primary storage system is a *remote* storage system.

Registering Journal Volumes in a Journal Group

To be able to perform remote copy operations with URz, the primary site administrator must register journal volumes in journal groups in the primary storage system. Also, the secondary site administrator must register journal volume in journal groups in the secondary storage system. One journal group can contain up to 16 journal volumes.

To register journal volumes, follow the procedure below. Both the primary storage system administrator and the secondary storage system administrator must perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed.
3. In the tree of the Journal Operation window, do either of the following:
   - If you want to register new volumes to a journal group in which journal groups are already registered, select the journal group from below **Registered**.
     Caution: You can register volumes only when the attribute of the journal group is **Initial** or when the status of the journal group is **Active**, or **Stop**, **Hold**, or **Hold(Failure)**.
   - If you want to register volumes to a journal group in which journal groups have not been registered, select the journal group from below **Free**.

   Note: You cannot select more than one journal group.
4. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, right-click the selected journal group and then select **Edit JNL Volumes** from the pop-up menu.
   - In the upper-right list, right-click the desired journal group and then select **Edit JNL Volumes** from the pop-up menu.
5. In the **Free Volumes** list of the Edit JNL Volumes window (Figure 6-1), select the volumes that you want to register.

   In the **Free Volumes** list, one row represents one volume. If you cannot find the volumes that you want to register, do any of the following:
   - Select the **PG** radio button, enter a parity group number in the text boxes to the right, and then select **Show**. The list displays volumes in the specified parity group. Finally, select the volumes that you want to register.

- To register external volumes, select the **PG(Ext.)** radio button, enter a parity group number in the text boxes to the right, and then select **Show**. The list displays volumes in the specified parity group. Finally, select the volumes that you want to register. ***Note***: Parity group numbers for external volumes start with the letter "E", but you do not need to enter "E" in the text boxes. For example, if you want to specify the parity group number "E1-2", you only need to enter 1 and 2 into the text boxes.
- Select the **CU** radio button, select a CU number from the drop-down list to the right. The list displays volumes in the specified CU. Finally, select the volumes that you want to register.

6. Select **Add**.

   The **JNL Volumes** list displays the volumes that you want to register. The **Operation** column of the list displays **Add**.

7. Specify the **Timer Type** option.

   Caution: You can specify the **Timer Type** option only when no journal volume is registered. If journal volumes are already registered, please go on to the next step because you cannot specify the **Timer Type** option.

8. Select **Set** to close the Edit JNL Volumes window.
9. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to add volumes to register, select and right-click a volume in the Preview list and then select Modify. A window appears and allows you to add volumes.
   - If you want to cancel registering a volume, select and right-click the volume and then select Cancel.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 9 to add volumes to other journal groups.
10. Select **Apply** to register journal volumes.

    After volumes are registered, the journal groups will be displayed below **Registered** in the tree.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

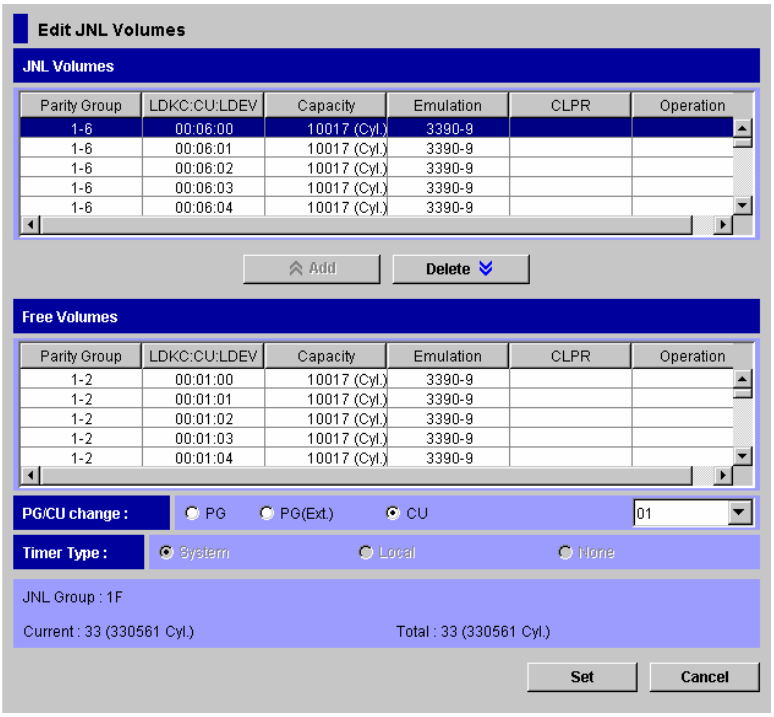


Figure 6-1 Edit JNL Volumes Window

The Edit JNL Volumes window displays the following:

- **JNL Volumes**: Displays information about journal volumes.
  - **Parity Group**: indicates the parity group where a journal volume belongs.

    Note: If the letter "E" is displayed at the beginning of a parity group name, the journal volume is an external volume.
  - **LDKC:CU:LDEV**: Indicates the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number of a journal volume.

    Note: If a sharp symbol (#) is displayed at the end of a volume, the volume is an external volume.
  - **Capacity**: Indicates the capacity of a journal volume. The unit is cylinders if the volume is a mainframe volume. The unit is gigabytes if the volume is an open-systems volume.
  - **Emulation**: Indicates the emulation type of a journal volume.
  - **CLPR**: Indicates the number and the name of the CLPR where the journal volume belongs.
  - **Operation**: Displays one of the following:

Blank	This column usually displays a blank.
Add	Indicates a volume to be added to a journal group
Delete	Indicates a volume to be deleted from a journal group

- **Add**: Use this button when you register volumes in a journal groups. When registering volumes, you select the volumes from **Free Volumes** and then select **Add** to add the volumes to **JNL Volumes**.
- **Delete**: Use this button when you delete volumes from a journal groups. When deleting volumes, you select the volumes from **JNL Volumes** and then select **Delete**.
- **Free Volumes**: Displays information about *free volumes*, which are *not* registered in journal groups.

  Note: LUN Expansion (LUSE) volumes are not displayed. Mainframe volumes of less than 50 cylinders are not displayed, either.

  – **Parity Group**: indicates the parity group where a volume belongs.

  – **LDKC:CU:LDEV**: Indicates the LDKC number the CU number and the LDEV number of a volume.

  Note: If a sharp symbol (#) is displayed at the end of a volume, the volume is an external volume.

  – **Capacity**: Indicates the capacity of a volume. The unit is cylinders if the volume is a mainframe volume. The unit is gigabytes if the volume is an open-systems volume.

  – **Emulation**: Indicates the emulation type of a volume.

  – **CLPR**: Indicates the number and the name of the CLPR where the volume belongs.

  – **Operation**: Displays one of the following:

Blank	This column usually displays a blank.
Add	Indicates a volume to be added to a journal group
Delete	Indicates a journal volume to be deleted from a journal group

- **PG/CU change**: The following radio buttons enables you to switch information in the **Free Volumes** list.

  – **PG**: Use this radio button if you want the **Free Volumes** list to display volumes belonging to a parity group.

  If you select this radio button, specify a parity group number in the text boxes to the right, and then select the **Show** button, **Free Volumes** will display volumes in the specified parity group (see Figure 6-2).

  – **PG(Ext.)**: Use this radio button if you want the **Free Volumes** list to display external volumes belonging to a parity group.

  If you select this radio button, specify a parity group number in the text boxes to the right, and then select the **Show** button, **Free Volumes** will display volumes in the specified parity group.

  – **CU**: Use this radio button if you want the **Free Volumes** list to display volumes belonging to a CU.

  If you select this radio button and then select a CU from the drop-down list to the right, **Free Volumes** will display volumes in the selected CU (see Figure 6-3).

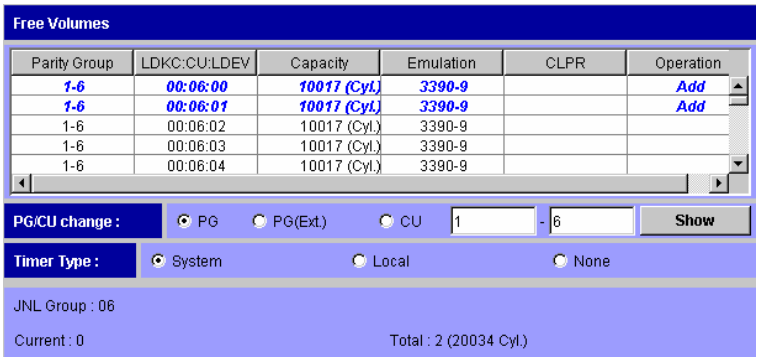


Figure 6-2 The Free Volumes List and the PG Button in the Edit JNL Volumes Window

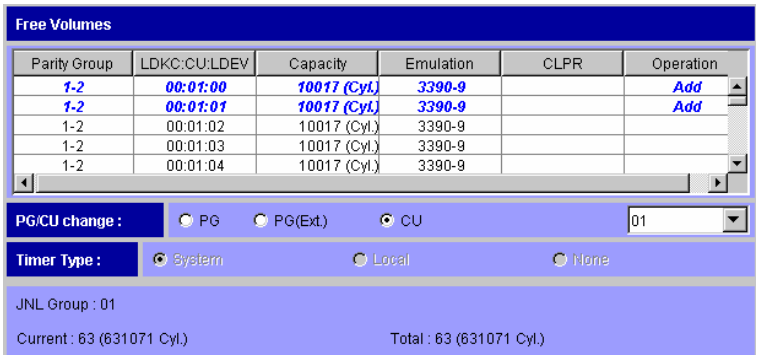


Figure 6-3 The Free Volumes List and the CU Button in the Edit JNL Volumes Window

- **Timer Type**: Indicates the type of clock used for consistency time.
  - **System**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used.
  - **Local**: The system clock is not used.
  - **None**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used. The difference between **System** and **None** is explained in section Timer Type Option.

  Cautions:

  - You can specify the Timer Type option only when no journal volume is registered. If journal volumes are already registered, you cannot specify the Timer Type option.
  - Ensure that the same timer type is specified in both the primary and the secondary sites.
- **JNL Group**: Indicates the number of a journal group.
- **Current**: Indicates the number and the capacity of journal volumes that currently exist in the journal group.

  Note: If the number of journal volumes is 0, the capacity does not display.

- **Total**: Estimates the number and the capacity of journal volumes after addition or deletion, and then displays the estimated number and the capacity.

  Note: If the number of journal volumes is 0, the capacity does not display.

- **Set**: Applies the settings in the window to the Journal Operation window (Figure 4-1).
- **Cancel**: Cancels the settings.

Deleting Journal Volumes from a Journal Group

To delete journal volumes from the primary storage system, log into the primary storage system and then perform the following operation.

To delete journal volumes from the secondary storage system, log into the secondary storage system and then perform the following operation.

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed.
3. In the tree of the Journal Operation window, select a journal group from below **Registered**.

   Note: You cannot select more than one journal group.

4. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, right-click the selected journal group and then select **JNL Volumes** from the pop-up menu.
   - In the upper-right list, select and right-click the desired journal group and then select **JNL Volumes** from the pop-up menu.

   Caution: As a general rule, you can delete journal volumes only when the attribute of the journal group is **Initial** or when the status of the journal group is **Stop**. or **Hold(Failure)**. However, when one journal group uses multiple mirror IDs, you can delete journal volumes only in the case shown in the following table.

Table 6-1 Requirement to Delete Journal Volumes (When One Journal Group Uses Two Mirror IDs)

Status of Journal Group		Can the Journal Volumes be Deleted?
Mirror ID 1	Mirror ID 2	
Active	Hold	No.
Active	Hold(Failure)	No.
Stop	Hold	Yes.
Stop	Hold(Failure)	Yes.

5. In the **JNL Volumes** list of the Edit JNL Volumes window (Figure 6-1), select the volumes that you want to delete.

   In the **JNL Volumes** list, one row represents one volume.

6. Select **Delete**.

   The volumes that you want to delete will be displayed in blue italics. The **Operation** column of the list displays **Delete**.

7. Select **Set** to close the Edit JNL Volumes window.

8. See the **Preview** list to check the volumes that you want to delete.
   - If you want to add volumes to delete, select and right-click a volume in the Preview list and then select Modify. A window appears and allows you to specify volumes to delete.
   - If you want to cancel deleting a volume, select and right-click the volume and then select Cancel.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 8 to specify volumes that should be deleted from other journal groups.
9. Select **Apply** to delete journal volumes.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

Displaying Detailed Information about a Journal Group

To display detailed information about journal groups in the primary storage system, log into the primary storage system and then perform the following operation.

To display detailed information about journal groups in the secondary storage system, log into the secondary storage system and then perform the following operation.

1. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed.
2. In the tree of the Journal Operation window, select a journal group.

   Note: You cannot select more than one journal group.
3. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, right-click the selected journal group and then select JNL Groups and JNL Status from the pop-up menu.
   - In the upper-right list, right-click the desired journal group and then select **JNL Groups** and **JNL Status** from the pop-up menu.
4. In the JNL Group Detail window (Figure 6-4), view detailed information about the journal group.
5. After you finish viewing the information, select **Close** to close the JNL Group Detail window.

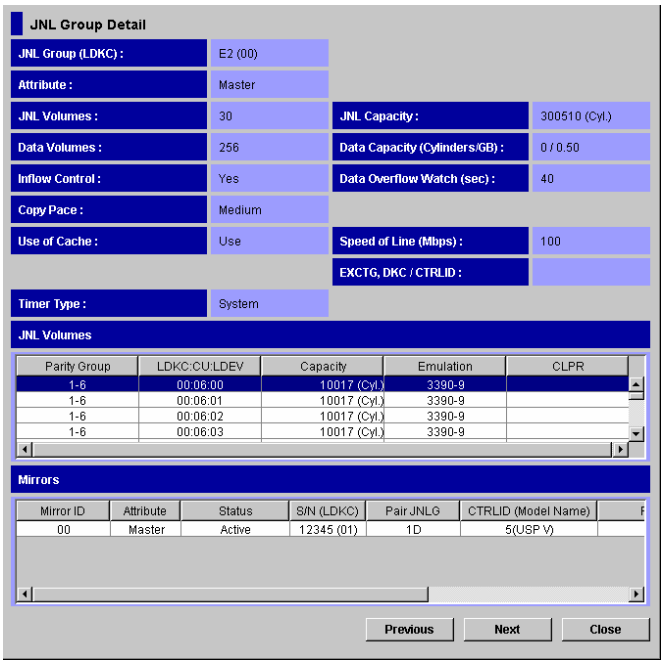


Figure 6-4 JNL Group Detail Window

The JNL Group Detail window displays the following:

- **JNL Group(LDKC)**: Indicates the number of a journal group and the LDKC number. The LDKC number is enclosed in the parentheses following the serial number.
- **Attribute**: Indicates the attribute of the journal group. When one journal group uses multiple mirror IDs, **Attribute** indicates the attribute of the data volume in the journal group whose mirror ID is not **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)**.

Initial A journal group in initial status.

Journal volumes are registered in this journal group, but no data volumes (primary data volumes nor secondary data volumes) are registered in this journal group.

Master A master journal group.

Journal volumes and primary data volumes are registered in this journal group.

Restore A restore journal group.

Journal volumes and secondary data volumes are registered in this journal group.

Blank Neither journal volumes nor data volumes are registered in this journal group.

- **JNL Volumes**: Indicates the number of journal volumes registered in the journal group.
- **JNL Capacity**: Indicates the total capacity of all the registered journal volumes. The unit is cylinders for mainframe volumes. The unit is gigabytes for open-systems volumes.
- **Data Volumes**: Indicates the number of data volumes associated with the journal group. When one journal group uses multiple mirror IDs, **Data Volumes** indicates the number of the data volumes in the journal group whose mirror ID is not **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)**.
- **Data Capacity**: Indicates the total capacity of all the data volumes. The capacity is expressed in cylinders and gigabytes. When one journal group uses multiple mirror IDs, **Data Capacity** indicates the total capacity of the data volumes in the journal group whose mirror ID is not **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)**.
- **Inflow Control**: Indicates whether to restrict inflow of update I/Os to the journal volume (in other words, whether to slow delay response to hosts).

  Yes indicates inflow will be restricted. **No** indicates inflow will not be restricted.
- **Data Overflow Watch**: Indicates the time (in seconds) for monitoring whether metadata and journal data are full.

  Note: **Data Overflow Watch** displays nothing when one of the following conditions is satisfied:

  – Inflow Control is No.

  – **Copy Pace**: Indicates the pace for an initial copy activity for one volume.

  One of the following is displayed: **High**, **Medium**, or **Low**.

  Notes:

  - By default, the pace for an initial copy activity is **Low**.
  - **Copy Pace** displays nothing if the journal group is a restore journal group.

- **Use of Cache**: Indicates whether to store journal data in the restore journal group into the cache.
  - **Use**: Journal data will be stored into the cache.

    Note: When there is insufficient space in the cache, journal data will also be stored into the journal volume.
  - **Not Use**: Journal data will not be stored into the cache.

  Caution: This setting does not take effect on master journal groups. However, if the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command is used to change a master journal group into a restore journal group, this setting will take effect on the journal group. If you set **Use**, this setting only takes effect on the journal volumes of RAID-5 or RAID-6 that are in the journal group. For external volumes, non-RAID-5 journal volumes, and non-RAID-6 journal volumes, **Use** works the same as **Not Use**.
- **Delta resync Failure**: Indicates the processing that would take place when delta resync operation cannot be performed.
  - **Entire**: Whole data in primary data volume will be copied to secondary data volume when delta resync operation cannot be performed.
  - **None**: No processing will take place when delta resync operation cannot be performed. Therefore, the secondary data volume will not be updated.
- **Speed of Line**: Indicates the line speed of data transfer. The unit is Mbps (megabits per second).

  One of the following is displayed: **256**, **100**, or **10**.

  Caution: This setting does not take effect on master journal groups. However, if the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command is used to change a master journal group into a restore journal group, this setting will take effect on the journal group.
- **Timer Type**: Indicates the type of clock used for consistency time.
  - **System**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used.
  - **Local**: The system clock is not used.
  - **None**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used. The difference between **System** and **None** is explained in section Timer Type Option.
- **EXCTG, DKC/CTRLID**: Displays the following information sequentially if the journal group belongs to an extended consistency group:
  - the extended consistency group number
  - the serial number and the LDKC number (the LDKC number is enclosed by parentheses)

– A slash (/), the controller ID

This column is blank if the journal group does not belong to any extended consistency group.

- **JNL Volumes**: Displays a list of registered journal volumes.
  - **Parity Group**: indicates the parity group where a journal volume belongs.
  - **LDKC:CU:LDEV**: Indicates the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number of a journal volume.
  - **Capacity**: Indicates the capacity of a journal volume. The unit is cylinders if the volume is a mainframe volume. The unit is gigabytes if the volume is an open-systems volume.
  - **Emulation**: Indicates the emulation type of a journal volume.
  - **CLPR**: Indicates the number and the name of the CLPR where the journal volume belongs.
- **Mirrors**: Displays a list of mirrors.
  - **Mirror ID**: indicates a mirror ID.

    This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither Master nor Restore.
  - **Attribute**: indicates the attribute of a mirror ID.

Initial A mirror in initial status. No data volumes are registered in the journal groups of local storage system.

Master A mirror to whom primary data volumes of local storage system are registered.

Restore A mirror to whom secondary data volumes of local storage system are registered.

  - **Status**: Indicates the status of a journal group (or a mirror) in the local storage system.

Initial A journal group in initial status.
Journal volumes are registered in this journal group, but no data volumes (primary data volumes nor secondary data volumes) are registered in this journal group.
When you create a URz volume pair, data volumes will be registered in a journal group. The status of the journal group will change to Active.

Active Either of the following:

- Initial copy is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
- Initial copy is finished. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are synchronized.

Note: If a journal group is in **Active** status, some of the data volume pairs in the journal group might be split. If this happens, the word **Warning** is displayed. To restore such data volume pairs, use the Pair Operation window.

HaltAccept An operation for splitting the mirror has been started. The status of the mirror will immediately change to **Halting**.
Note: HaltAccept can indicate status of restore journal groups, but cannot indicate status of master journal groups.

Halting	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized. When you split a mirror, the status will change in the following order: Halting, Halt, Stopping, and finally Stop. When you delete a mirror, the status will change in the following order: Halting, Halt, Stopping, Stop, and finally Initial.
Halt	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
Stopping	An operation for splitting or deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
Stop	Either of the following: • An operation for splitting the mirror is finished. • The operation for deleting the mirror is in progress. The primary data volume and the secondary data volume are not synchronized.
Hold	A URz pair for delta resync operation is created.
Hold(Failure)	An error occurred with the URz pair for delta resync operation.
Blank	Neither journal volumes nor data volumes are registered in this journal group.

  - **S/N(LDKC)**: Indicates the serial number and the LDKC number of the remote storage system.

    This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither **Master** nor **Restore**.
  - **Pair JNLG**: Indicates the number of a journal group in the remote storage system.

    This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither **Master** nor **Restore**.
  - **Controller ID**: Indicates the controller ID (model name that indicates the model) of the remote storage system.

    This column is blank if the attribute of the journal group is neither **Master** nor **Restore**.

    Note: The controller ID for a USP V storage system is **5**.
  - **Path Watch Time**: Indicates the time for monitoring blockade of paths to the remote storage system. If the status of the mirror where secondary data volumes in local storage system are registered is **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)**, this column will be blank.
  - **Volume**: Indicates the number of data volumes that are registered in the mirror.
  - **Capacity**: Indicates the total capacity of data volumes that are registered in the mirror.
- **Previous**: Displays detailed information about the previous journal group.
- **Next**: Displays detailed information about the next journal group.
- **Close**: Closes the JNL Group Detail window.

Changing Options for a Journal Group

To change options for a journal group, follow the procedure below. Both the primary storage system administrator and the secondary storage system administrator must perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed (see section Changing Options for a Journal Group).

3. Do either of the following:

   – In the tree, right-click a journal group from below **Registered** and then select **JNL Groups** and **Change JNL Option** from the pop-up menu.

   – In the upper-right list, right-click the desired journal group and then select **JNL Groups** and **Change JNL Option** from the pop-up menu.

   Caution: You can select **Change JNL Option** only when one of the following conditions is satisfied:

   – The attribute of the journal group is Initial.

   – The status of the journal group is Active.

   – The status of the journal group is Stop.

   – The status of the journal group is Hold.

   – The status of the journal group is **Hold(Failure)**.

   When one journal group uses multiple mirror IDs, whether you can or cannot select **Change JNL Option** depends on the status of the journal group whose mirror is not in **Hold** or **Hold(Failure)** status.

4. In the Change JNL Option window (Figure 6-5), change journal group options and then select **Set**.

   Caution: If the status of the journal group is **Active**, or if the status of the master journal group is **Hold**, you can change only the **Line of Speed** option.

   Note: If you have selected two or more journal groups in step 3, and want to make some options in the Change JNL Options window unchanged, then you must specify blank for the options. If you specify blank for an option, the option value will remain unchanged. If you specify a value other than blank, the specified value will be set to the selected journal groups.

5. See the **Preview** list in the Journal Operation window to check the settings that you have made.

   – If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting in the Preview list and then select Modify.

   – If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.

6. Select **Apply** to apply the settings.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

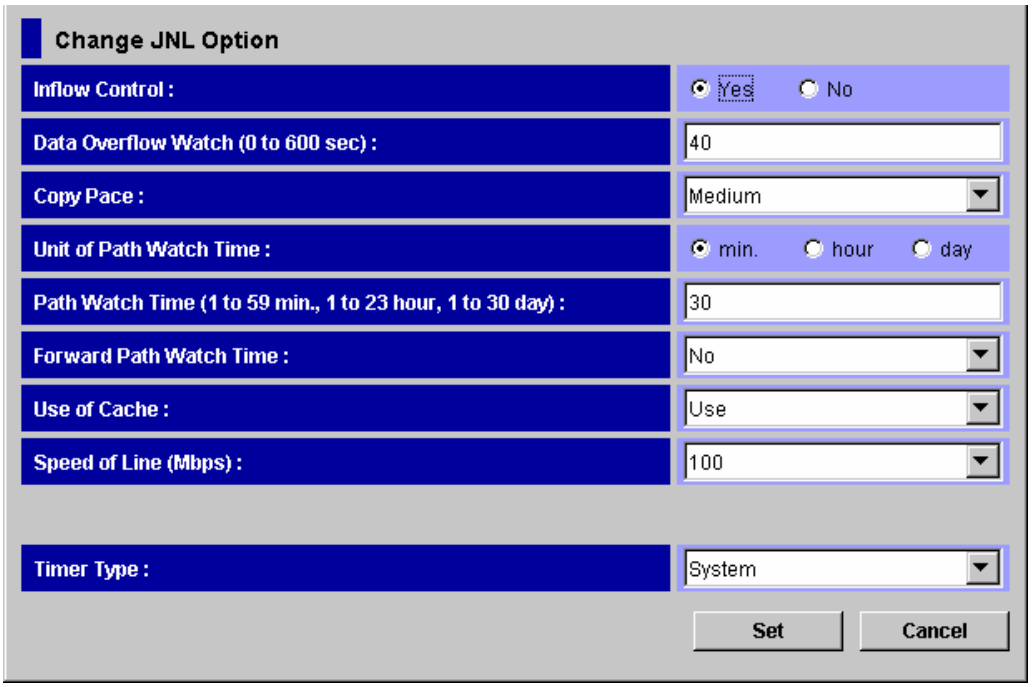


Figure 6-5 Change JNL Option Window

The Change JNL Option window displays the following:

- **Inflow Control**: Allows you to specify whether to restrict inflow of update I/Os to the journal volume (in other words, whether to slow delay response to hosts).

  Yes indicates inflow will be restricted. **No** indicates inflow will not be restricted.

  Note: If **Yes** is selected and the metadata or the journal data is full, the update I/Os may stop.

- **Data Overflow Watch**: Allows you to specify the time (in seconds) for monitoring whether metadata and journal data are full. This value must be within the range of 0 to 600 seconds.

  Note: If **Inflow Control** is **No**, **Data Overflow Watch** does not take effect and does not display anything.

- **Copy Pace**: Allows you to specify the pace (speed) for an initial copy activity for one volume. The default is **Low**.

  – **Low**: The speed of the initial copy activity is slower than **Medium** and **High**.

– **Medium**: The speed of the initial copy activity is faster than **Low** and slower than **High**.

  If you want to specify **Medium**, please ensure that the amount of update I/Os (i.e., write requests from hosts to primary data volumes) is 10 MB/s or less per one parity group. If it exceeds 10 MB/s, data volume pairs may become split (suspended).

- **High**: The speed of the initial copy activity is faster than **Low** and **Medium**.

  If you want to specify **High**, please ensure that update I/Os (i.e., write requests from hosts to primary data volumes) will not occur. If update I/Os occur, data volume pairs may become split (suspended).

Note: The secondary storage system administrator cannot specify this option.

- **Unit of Path Watch Time**: Allows you to specify the unit of path watch time. You can specify one of the following: **minute**, **hour**, or **day**.
- **Path Watch Time**: Allows you to specify the interval from when a path gets blocked to when a mirror gets split (suspended).

  This value must be within the range of 1 to 59 minutes, 1 to 23 hours, or 1 to 30 days. You can specify a numeric value in **Path Watch Time**.

  Note: Make sure that the same interval is set to both the master and restore journal groups in the same mirror, unless otherwise required. If the interval differs between the master and restore journal groups, these journal groups will not be suspended simultaneously. For example, if the interval for the master journal group is 5 minutes and the interval for the restore journal group is 60 minutes, the master journal group will be suspended in 5 minutes after a path gets blocked, and the restore journal group will be suspended in 60 minutes after a path gets blocked.

  Caution: If the DKCMAIN microprogram version is 50-05-03-00/00 or higher, the path watch time setting does not take effect because the system option mode 449 is set to ON at the factory setting. To make the path watch time setting take effect, please ask the Support Center to set the mode 449 to OFF.

  Note: If you want a mirror to get split (suspended) immediately after a path gets blocked, please ask the Support Center to set the system option mode 448 to ON and set the system option mode 449 to OFF. For detailed information about the modes 448 and 449, see Table 6-2.

Table 6-2 System Option Modes

Mode	Description
448	**ON**: If the SVP detects a blocked path, the SVP assumes that an error occurred, and then immediately splits (suspends) the mirror. OFF: If the SVP detects a blocked path and the path does not recover within the specified period of time, the SVP assumes that an error occurred, and then splits (suspends) the mirror. *Note*: The mode 448 setting takes effect only when mode 449 is set to OFF.

449	**ON**: The SVP does not detect blocked paths. OFF: The SVP detects blocked paths and monitors the time until the mirrors get split (suspended).

- **Forward Path Watch Time**: Allows you to specify whether to forward the Path Watch Time value of the master journal group to the restore journal group. If the Path Watch Time value is forwarded from the master journal group to the restore journal group, the two journal groups will have the same Path Watch Time value.
  - **Yes**: The Path Watch Time value will be forwarded to the restore journal group.
  - **No**: The Path Watch Time value will not be forwarded to the restore journal group. No is the default.
  - **Blank**: The current setting of **Forward Path Watch Time** will remain unchanged.

  Caution:

  This option cannot be specified in the secondary site.
  Select **Yes** in the primary site of URz pair for delta resync operation since you need to set path watch time in the secondary site to perform delta resync operation.

- **Use of Cache**: Allows you to specify whether to store journal data in the restore journal group into the cache.
  - **Use**: Journal data will be stored into the cache.

    Note: When there is insufficient space in the cache, journal data will also be stored into the journal volume.
  - **Not Use**: Journal data will not be stored into the cache.
  - **Blank**: The current setting of **Use of Cache** will remain unchanged.

  Caution: This setting does not take effect on master journal groups. However, if the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command is used to change a master journal group into a restore journal group, this setting will take effect on the journal group. If you set **Use**, this setting only takes effect on the journal volumes of RAID-5 or RAID-6 that are in the journal group. For external volumes, non-RAID-5 journal volumes, and non-RAID-6 journal volumes, **Use** works the same as **Not Use**.

- **Speed of Line**: Allows you to specify the line speed of data transfer. The unit is Mbps (megabits per second).

  You can specify one of the following: **256**, **100**, or **10**.

  Caution: This setting does not take effect on master journal groups. However, if the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command is used to change a master journal group into a restore journal group, this setting will take effect on the journal group.

- **Delta resync Failure**: Allows you to specify the processing that would take place when delta resync operation cannot be performed.

  - **Entire**: Whole data in primary data volume will be copied to secondary data volume when delta resync operation cannot be performed. The default is **Entire**.
  - **None**: No processing will take place when delta resync operation cannot be performed. Therefore, the secondary data volume will not be updated.

  Caution: This option cannot be specified in the secondary site.

- **Timer Type**: Allows you to specify the type of clock used for consistency time.
  - **System**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used.
  - **Local**: The system clock is not used.
  - **None**: The system clock of the mainframe host is used. The difference between **System** and **None** is explained in section Timer Type Option.

  Notes:
  - Ensure that the same timer type is specified in both the primary and the secondary sites.
  - If At-Time Split function is used when URz and SIz are used in conjunction, the **Timer Type** cannot be changed.
  - You can only specify **None** if the journal group belongs to an extended consistency group.
- **Set**: Applies the settings in the window to the Journal Operation window (Figure 4-1).
- **Cancel**: Cancels the settings.

Deleting a Journal Group

To delete a journal group from the primary storage system, log into the primary storage system and then perform the following operation.

To delete a journal group from the secondary storage system, log into the secondary storage system and then perform the following operation.

Note: You cannot delete master journal groups and restore journal groups You can only delete journal groups whose attribute is **Initial**.

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed (see section Journal Operation Window).
3. Do either of the following:
   - In the upper-right list, right-click a journal group whose attribute is Initial.
   - In the tree, select and right-click a journal group in initial status ().
4. Select **JNL Groups** and **Delete JNL** from the pop-up menu.
5. See the **Preview** list to check the journal groups that you want to delete.
   - If you want to cancel deleting a journal group, select and right-click the journal group and then select **Cancel**.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 5 to specify other journal groups.
6. Select **Apply** to apply the settings.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

Splitting a Mirror (Suspending a copy operation)

A mirror is a combination of a master journal group and a restore journal group. If you split a mirror, the copying of data from the master journal group to the restore journal group will suspended.

To split a mirror, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed (see section Journal Operation Window).
3. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, select a master journal group ( ) or a restore journal group ( ) from below Registered.
   - In the tree, select **Subsystem** or **Registered** and then select a master journal group ( ) or a restore journal group ( ) from the list to the right.

   The list displays a list of mirrors. One row in the list represents one mirror.
4. Locate mirrors that are in Active status.
5. From the mirrors, select and right-click the mirror(s) that you want to split.
6. From the pop-up menu, select JNL Groups and Suspend Pair.
7. In the Suspend Pair window (Figure 6-6), specify parameters and then select Set.
8. See the **Preview** list to check the mirrors that you want to split.
   - If you want to modify parameters of a mirror, select and right-click the mirror and then select Modify.
   - If you want to cancel splitting a mirror, select and right-click the mirror and then select Cancel.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 8 to specify other mirrors.
9. Select **Apply** to split the mirror(s).

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

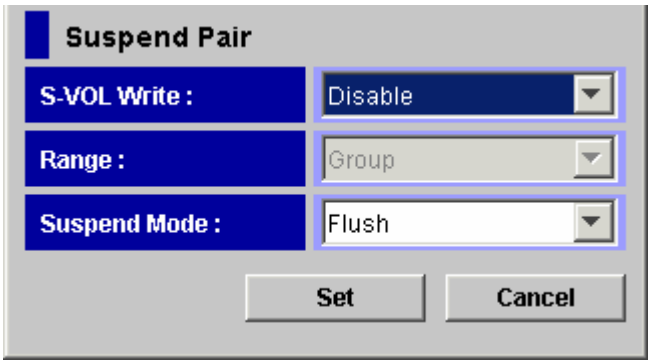


Figure 6-6 Suspend Pair Window

The Suspend Pair window displays the following:

- **S-VOL Write**: Allows you to specify whether hosts can issue read I/O and write I/O to the secondary data volume after the mirror is split. The default is **Disable**.

  If you select **Enable**, hosts can issue read I/O and write I/O to the secondary data volume after you split the mirror.

  If you select **Disable**, hosts cannot issue read I/O and write I/O to the secondary data volume after you split the mirror.

  This parameter takes effect only when the selected volume is a master journal group.

- **Range**: Allows you to specify the split range. This parameter is always set to **Group** and cannot be changed.

- **Suspend Mode**: Allows you to specify how to handle update data that are not reflected to the secondary data volume. The default is **Flush**.

  – If you select **Flush**, update data will be reflected to the secondary data volume when you split the mirror.

    When the secondary storage system receives a request for splitting a mirror, all the journal data (i.e., update data) that the mirror retains will be written to the secondary data volume. After that, the status of the mirror will change from **Suspending** to **Suspend** if the mirror does not retain any journal data for a certain period of time.

  – If you select **Purge**, update data will not be reflected to the secondary data volume when you split the mirror. If you restore the mirror, the update data will be reflected to the secondary data volume.

Restoring a Mirror (Resuming a copy operation)

A mirror is a combination of a master journal group and a restore journal group. If you split a mirror, the copying of data from the master journal group to the restore journal group will be suspended. To restart the copying of data, you need to restore the mirror. As for mirror in **Hold** status, you need to restore the mirror in order to restart the copying of data.

To restore a mirror, follow the procedure below. Only the primary storage system administrator can perform this operation; the secondary storage system administrator cannot perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed (see section Journal Operation Window).
3. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, select a master journal group () or a restore journal group () from below Registered.
   - In the tree, select **Journal Groups** or **Registered** and then select a master journal group () from the list to the right.

   The list displays a list of mirrors. One row in the list represents one mirror.
4. Locate mirrors that are in Stop, **Hold**, or **Hold(Failure)** status.
5. From the mirrors, select and right-click the mirror(s) that you want to restore.

   When you select the mirror in Stop status, the copying of data will be restarted after the recovery.

   The result of this operation differs according to the status of the selected mirror.
   - When you select the mirror in **Stop** status, the copying of data will be restarted after the recovery.
   - When you select the mirror in **Hold** status, delta resync operation will be performed after the recovery.
   - When you select the mirror in **Hold(Failure)** status, the status will change to **Hold** after the recovery.
6. From the pop-up menu, select JNL Groups and Resume Pair.
7. See the **Preview** list to check the mirrors that you want to restore.
   - If you want to cancel restoring a mirror, select and right-click the mirror and then select Cancel.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 7 to specify other mirrors.
8. Select **Apply** to restore the mirror(s).

Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

Deleting Data Volumes from a Mirror (Ending a copy operation)

A mirror is a combination of a master journal group and a restore journal group. If you delete data volumes (i.e., the primary data volume and the secondary data volume) from a mirror, the copying of data from the master journal group to the restore journal group will end.

To delete data volumes from a mirror, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed.
3. Do either of the following:
   - In the tree, select a master journal group () or a restore journal group () from below Registered.
   - In the tree, select **Journal Groups** or **Registered** and then select a master journal group () or a restore journal group () from the list to the right.

   The list displays a list of mirrors. One row in the list represents one mirror.
4. Locate mirrors that are not in Initial status.
5. From the mirrors, select and right-click the mirror(s) from which you want to delete data volumes.
6. From the pop-up menu, select **JNL Groups** and **Delete Pair**.
7. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Cancel.
   - If necessary, you can repeat steps 3 to 7 to specify other mirrors.
8. Select **Apply** to delete data volumes from the mirror(s).

Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

7

Using Extended Consistency Groups

This chapter explains how to perform remote copy operations between more than one primary and secondary storage system, as well as how to register journal groups in extended consistency groups (abbreviated as EXCTG):

- ☐ Registering Journal Groups in an Extended Consistency Group
- ☐ Manipulating Data Volume Pairs in Extended Consistency Groups
- ☐ Removing Journal Groups from an Extended Consistency Group
- ☐ Forcibly Removing Journal Groups from an Extended Consistency Group

If you want to perform remote copy operations between more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage system, you must register journal groups in extended consistency groups (abbreviated as EXCTG). To register journal groups in extended consistency groups, use the EXCTG Operation window.

- Displaying the EXCTG Operation window (see section EXCTG Operation Window)
- Registering journal volumes in an extended consistency group (see the next section)
- Removing journal volumes from an extended consistency group (see section Removing Journal Groups from an Extended Consistency Group)

Registering Journal Groups in an Extended Consistency Group

If you want to perform remote copy operations between more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage system, you must register journal groups in an extended consistency group, which is abbreviated as EXCTG.

- **Notes on configuring an extended consistency group:**

  You must confirm that the journal groups to be registered must be in **Active** or **Stop** status.

  You must not register master and restore journal groups in the same extended consistency group.

- **Configuring primary EXCTG:**

  You need to configure a primary EXCTG, because the primary EXCTG will be necessary if you need to reverse the primary and secondary sites after a failure occurs. If you reverse the copy direction when no primary EXCTG is configured, data update sequence will be maintained on journal group basis, but not on extended consistency group basis.

  For details on reversing copy direction, see section Transferring Operations Back to the Primary Site.

- **Configuring secondary EXCTG:**

  You need to configure a secondary EXCTG when you use more than one primary storage system and more than one secondary storage system. URz uses the secondary EXCTG to maintains data update sequence of master journal groups that are paired with restore journal groups in secondary EXCTG. If no secondary EXCTG is configured, data update sequence will not be maintained, and data consistency will not be maintained between the primary storage systems and the secondary storage systems.

To register journal groups in an extended consistency group:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the EXCTG Operation window is displayed.
3. In the EXCTG Operation window (Figure 4-11), select and right-click an extended consistency group in the tree or in the list.
4. Select **Add JNLG to EXCTG** from the pop-up menu.

   The Add JNL Group window appears (Figure 7-1).

5. If you do not want to register journal groups of the supervisor DKC, clear the check box of far left of the DKCs (DKC-1 to DKC-4). If you want to register journal groups of the supervisor DKC, select the check box of far left of the DKCs (DKC-1 to DKC-4).
6. Select one from the DKCs (DKC-1 to DKC-4).

   Notes:

   – The word "DKC" represents a storage system.

   – If you want to register journal groups of the supervisor DKC, please move on to step 11 after this step.

7. Enter the serial number of the storage system.

   Note: If the serial number is already displayed and unchangeable, you do not need to enter it.

8. Enter the LDKC number.

   Note: If the LDKC number is already displayed and unchangeable, you do not need to enter it.

9. Select the control ID.
10. Specify the LDKC number and the LDEV number of the remote command device.

    Note: If the LDKC number and the LDEV number are already specified and unchangeable, you do not need to specify them.

11. From the **JNLG** list on the left, select one or more journal groups that you want to register.
12. Select **->Add**.

    The selected journal groups move to the **JNLG** list on the right.

    Note: If the **JNLG** list on the right contains any journal group that you do not want to register, please select the journal group from the list and then click **<-Cancel**.

13. From **Mirror ID**, select a mirror ID.

    Note: If a mirror ID is already specified and unchangeable, you do not need to select it.

14. If necessary, repeat steps 6 to 13.
15. Select **Set** to close the Add JNL Group window.

16. See the **Preview** list to check the settings that you have made.

    Note: If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting in the **Preview** list and then select **Modify**. A window appears and allows you to modify the setting.

17. Select **Apply** to register journal groups.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

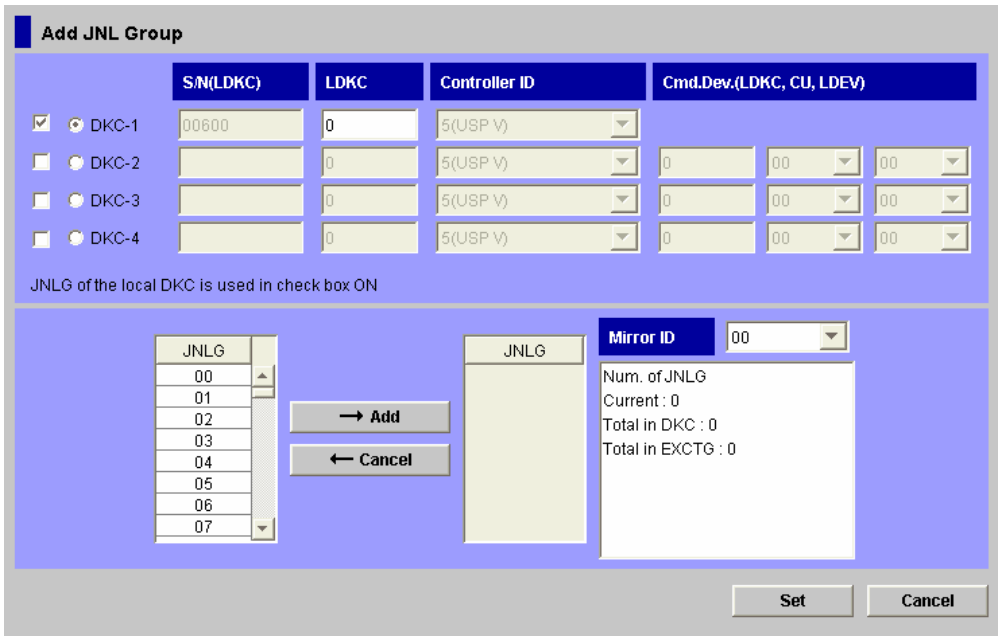


Figure 7-1 Add JNL Group Window

The Add JNL Group window displays the following:

- **JNLG of the local DKC is used in check box ON**: Allows you to specify whether to register journal groups of the supervisor DKC by selecting the check box of far left of DKCs (DKC-1 to DKC-4).

  The check box is selected on DKC-1 by default. Clear this check box if you do not want to register journal groups of the supervisor DKC.

- **DKC-1** to **DKC-4**: Represent four storage systems.

- **S/N(LDKC)**: Allows you to specify the serial number of a storage system.

  Notes:

  – If **JNLG of the local DKC is used in check box ON** is selected, the serial number of the supervisor DKC is already specified and unchangeable.

  – If **JNLG of the local DKC is used in check box ON** is cleared, you cannot specify the serial number of the supervisor DKC.

  - You cannot set the same serial number to **DKC-1** through **DKC-4**.
- **LDKC**: Indicates the LDKC number of a storage system.
- **Controller ID**: Indicates the controller ID of a storage system.

  Notes:

  - The controller ID is unchangeable, if **JNLG of the local DKC is used in check box ON** is selected.
  - The controller ID for USP V is **5**.
- **Cmd. Dev.(LDKC, CU, LDEV)**: The text box on the left allows you to specify the LDKC number of the remote command device. The drop-down list on the center allows you to specify the CU number of the remote command device. The drop-down list on the right allows you to specify the LDEV number of the remote command device.

  Note: When you register a journal group of the supervisor DKC, the LDKC, the CU and LDEV numbers cannot be specified.
- **JNLG**: Displays journal groups.

  There are two lists named **JNLG** in the Add JNL Group window. If you want to register journal groups in an extended consistency group, you must move the journal groups from the left list to the right list.
- **->Add**: Allows you to move journal groups selected in the left **JNLG** list to the right **JNLG** list.
- **<-Cancel**: Allows you to move journal groups selected in the right **JNLG** list to the left **JNLG** list.
- **Mirror ID**: Allows you to specify a mirror ID.
- **Num of JNLG**: Displays the number of journal groups:
  - **Current**: The number of journal groups already registered in the storage system.
  - **Total in DKC**: The number of journal groups in the storage system after journal groups are registered or removed.
  - **Total in EXCTG**: The number of journal groups in the extended consistency group after journal groups are registered or removed.
- **Set**: Applies the settings in the window to the **Preview** list of the EXCTG Operation window.
- **Cancel**: Cancels the settings.

Manipulating Data Volume Pairs in Extended Consistency Groups

Business Continuity Manager allows you to split, restore, or release all data volume pairs in the specified extended consistency group collectively.

When you specify an extended consistency group and split data volume pairs in the specified group collectively, you can specify "Flush" or "Purge" as the suspend mode:

– If you specify "Flush", all pairs in the extended consistency group can be split while consistency of data update sequence will be maintained within that group.

– If you specify "Purge", consistency of data update sequence will not be maintained within the extended consistency group. However, consistency of data update sequence will be maintained within each journal group. Furthermore, the pairs will be split faster than when "Flush" is specified.

If you wish to split, restore or release data volume pairs in an extended consistency group, you can split, restore or release all data volume pairs that belongs to a specific journal group in the extended consistency group collectively. If you collectively split data volume pairs that belong to a specific journal group in the extended consistency group, the supervisor DKC will execute arbitration processing on the other journal groups. For example, in the case described in Figure 7-2 below, if you collectively split all data volume pairs that belongs to journal group 1, the supervisor DKC executes arbitration processing on journal groups 2 and 3, and therefore consistency of data update sequence will be maintained only within the primary storage systems 2 and 3 and the secondary storage systems 2 and 3. If you restore data volume pairs in journal group 1, the supervisor DKC will execute arbitration processing on journal groups 1 and 3.

Note: When you collectively split data volumes pairs in a specific journal group in an extended consistency group, you cannot use the **REVERSE** option of the Business Continuity Manager **YKSUSPND** command.

Removing Journal Groups from an Extended Consistency Group

The EXCTG Operation window allows you to remove journal groups from an extended consistency group.

To remove journal groups from an extended consistency group, follow the procedure below. To perform this operation, you must be logged in to the supervisor DKC:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the EXCTG Operation window is displayed.
3. In the EXCTG Operation window (Figure 4-11), do one of the following:
   - From the list, select and right-click the journal group(s) that you want to remove.
   - If you want to remove all journal groups from all extended consistency groups, select and right-click Registered from the tree.
   - If you want to remove all journal groups from an extended consistency group, select and right-click the extended consistency group from the tree or the list.
   - If you want to remove all journal groups from a storage system, select and right-click the storage system from the tree or the list.
   - If you want to remove all journal groups from an extended consistency group belonging to an LDKC, select and right-click the LDKC from the tree.
4. From the pop-up menu, select JNL Groups and Remove JNLG from EXCTG.
5. See the **Preview** list to check the journal group(s) to be removed.

   Note: If you want to cancel removal of a journal group, select and right-click the journal group and then select **Cancel**.
6. Select **Apply** to remove the journal group(s).

   Notes:
   - If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select Error Detail. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.
   - If you cannot remove journal groups, follow the instructions in the next section to remove the journal groups forcibly.

- Removing Journal Groups from Extended Consistency Groups

You can remove journal groups from an extended consistency group anytime, regardless of the status of the journal groups. Also, if you delete all data volumes from a journal group in an extended consistency group, the journal group will automatically be removed from the extended consistency group.

Removal of journal groups from an extended consistency group does not stop remote copy operations, but does affect consistency in data update sequence. In the example in Figure 7-2 below, if you remove the journal group 1 from the secondary EXCTG, the remote copy operation from the primary storage system 1 to the secondary storage system 1 will continue. However, consistency in data update sequence will only be maintained among the primary storage systems 2 and 3 and the secondary storage systems 2 and 3.

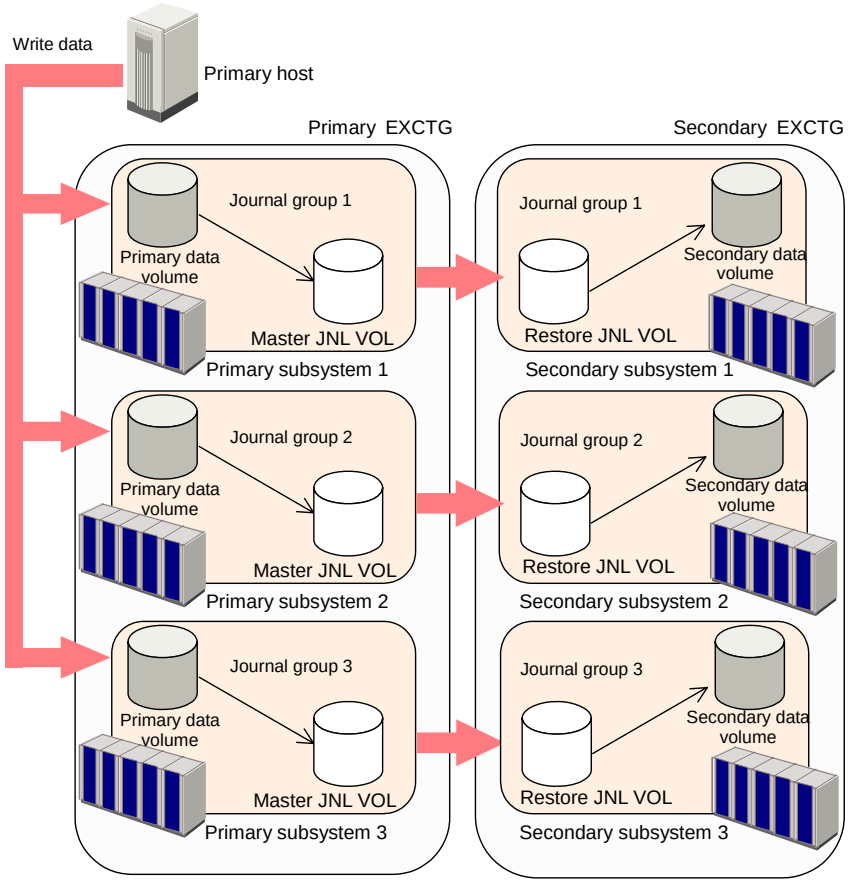


Figure 7-2 Example 1: Remote Copy Operations Among Three Primary Storage Systems and Three Secondary Storage Systems

Forcibly Removing Journal Groups from an Extended Consistency Group

The Journal Operation window allows you to remove journal groups forcibly from an extended consistency group.

Caution: To remove journal groups from an extended consistency group, you must first log in to the supervisor DKC and then follow the instructions in the previous section. Follow the procedure below only when you cannot remove the journal groups due to a communication failure between storage systems or some other reason.

To remove journal groups forcibly from an extended consistency group:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Journal Operation window is displayed.
3. From the list, select and right-click the journal group(s) that you want to remove forcibly.
4. From the pop-up menu, select **JNL Groups** and **Remove JNLG from EXCTG (Force)**.
5. See the **Preview** list to check the journal group(s) to be removed.
   - If you want to cancel removal of a journal group, select and right-click the journal group and then select **Cancel**.
6. Select **Apply** to remove the journal group(s) forcibly from the extended consistency group.

Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

8

Performing Pair Operations

This chapter explains how to perform remote copy operations with URz, including how to create pairs of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume:

- ☐ Filtering Information in the List in the Pair Operation Window
- ☐ Creating a Pair of Data Volumes
- ☐ Displaying Detailed Information about a Pair of Data Volumes
- ☐ Saving Pair Status Information into a Text File
- ☐ Changing Options for a Data Volume Pair
- ☐ Splitting a Pair of Data Volumes
- ☐ Restoring a Pair of Data Volumes
- ☐ Releasing a Pair of Data Volumes
- ☐ Recovering a Pinned Track

To perform remote copy operations with URz, you must create pairs of *a primary data volume* and *a secondary data volume*. A primary data volume is a data volume to be copied. A secondary data volume is a data volume that is the copy destination for a primary data volume. To manipulate pairs of these data volumes, use the Pair Operation window of URz.

Note: This manual sometimes uses the term "volume pair" when referring to a pair of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume.

Filtering Information in the List in the Pair Operation Window

The Display Filter window (Figure 8-1) enables you to filter information in the list in the Pair Operation window. The list will display only the volumes that satisfy certain conditions.

To filter information in the list in the Pair Operation window:

1. In the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2), select Display Filter.
2. Use the Display Filter window to specify information that you want to display in the list.
3. Select **Set** to close the Display Filter window.

   The list in the Pair Operation window displays the specified information only.

Notes:

- To restore the list to the default status (i.e., the status before filtering), select **Reset** in the Display Filter window and then Set in the same window.
- If you change settings in the Display Filter window, the changes will remain effective during the URz session until you reset the settings.

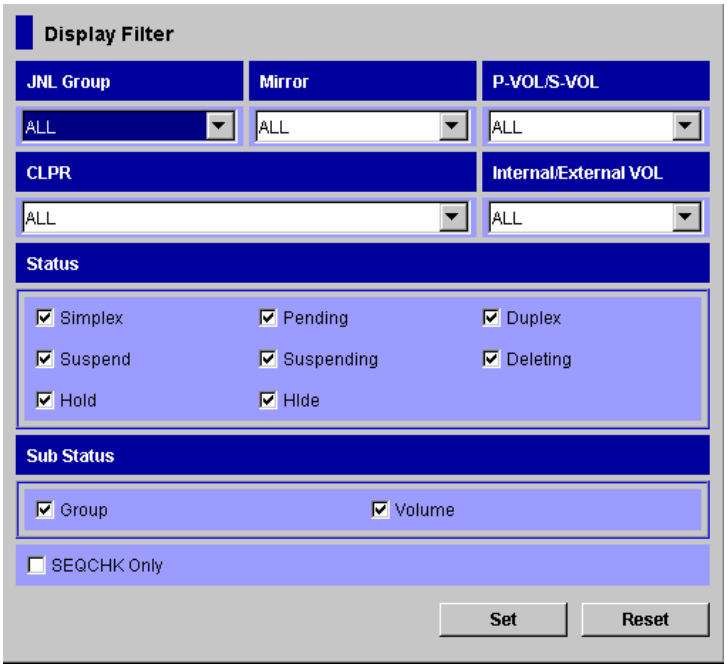


Figure 8-1 Display Filter Window

The Display Filter window displays the following:

- **Host Group**: Allows you to select the host group to be displayed.

  If you select **ALL**, all host groups will be displayed in the list.
- **JNL Group**: Allows you to select the journal group to be displayed.

  If you select **ALL**, all journal groups will be displayed in the list.
- **Mirror**: Allows you to select the mirror to be displayed.

  If you select **ALL**, all mirrors will be displayed in the list.
- **P-VOL/S-VOL**: Allows you to select the type of volumes to be displayed.

  If you select **P-VOL**, primary data volumes will be displayed in the list.

  If you select **S-VOL**, secondary data volumes will be displayed in the list.

  If you select **ALL**, all primary data volumes and all secondary data volumes will be displayed in the list.
- **CLPR**: Allows you to select the CLPR to be displayed.

  If you select **ALL**, all CLPRs will be displayed in the list.
- **Internal/External VOL**: Allows you to specify whether internal volumes or external volumes will be displayed in the list.

  If you select **ALL**, all the internal and external volumes will be displayed in the list.
- **Status**: Allows you to specify pair statuses. The volumes of the specified statues will be displayed in the list.

- **Sub Status**: Allows you to specify consistency status.

  The volume pairs in the specified status will be displayed in the list.

  For detailed information about consistency status, see section Suspend Types and Table 2-6.

- **SEQCHK Only**: Allows you to specify whether to display only the volume pairs in SEQCHK status.

  If this check box is selected, volumes in Simplex status will not be displayed in the list.

- **Set**: Applies the settings in the Display Filter window to the list.

- **Reset**: Restores all options in the Display Filter window to the default state.

  All the drop-down lists will display **ALL**. All the check boxes will be selected.

Creating a Pair of Data Volumes

Using the Add Pair window, the administrator of the primary storage system must create pairs of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume. When creating a pair, the administrator can specify options for initial copy activities.

Before creating one or more pairs, the administrator must make sure that:

- The volumes to be used as secondary data volumes are offline to all hosts.
- Ports have already been configured (see section Configuring Port Attributes)
- The primary storage system is associated with the secondary storage system (see section Establishing the Relationship between Primary and Secondary Storage Systems (Add DKC))

After all these points are confirmed, the administrator of the primary storage system can follow the procedure below to create a pair of a primary data volume and a secondary data volume. Note that the administrator of the secondary storage system cannot perform the following operation.

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
3. In the tree, select a CU image number.
4. In the list, select and right-click the volume that you want to use as a primary data volume.

   Notes:

   – Volumes with the  icon are already used as primary data volumes.

   – You can select and right-click more than one volume if you want to create more than one pair at one time. Note that you will need to choose all the secondary data volumes from the same secondary storage system.
5. From the pop-up menu, select **Add Pair**.

   The Add Pair window appears (Figure 8-2).
6. In **DKC**, specify the secondary storage system.
7. In S-VOL, specify the secondary data volume.

   – Use the left drop-down list to specify a CU number.

   – Use the right drop-down list to specify an LDEV number.

Note: If more than one primary data volume is specified in the list, you can specify secondary data volumes in three ways. For detailed information, refer to the explanation about the **Select Other S-VOL(s)** option later in this section.

8. Use the **Mirror** drop-down lists to specify the following items sequentially:
   - Master journal group
   - Mirror ID
   - Restore journal group
9. Do one of the following to make settings on the initial copy operation:
   - Select Entire if you want to start the initial copy operation immediately after the pair is created.
   - Select None if you do not want to start the initial copy operation immediately after the pair is created.
   - Select **Delta** if you want to create a URz pair for delta resync operation.

   Note: You need to meet the requirements listed in section Requirements for Creating URz Pair for Delta Resync Operation to create a URz pair for delta resync operation.
10. Use Error Level to specify the range used for splitting a pair when a failure occurs.
11. Use CFW to specify whether to copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
12. Select Set to close the Add Pair window.
13. See the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window to check the settings that you have made.
    - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Modify.
    - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.
14. Select **Apply** to start pair creation and the initial copy operation.

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.
15. In the list of the **Pair Operations** window, verify that the status of the pair is correct.

    If you selected **Entire** or **None** in step 10, the status of the pair will be **Pending** or **Duplex**. If you selected **Delta**, the status of the pair will be **Hold**.
16. To monitor the progress of the Add Pair operation(s), click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window to update the information in the list, or use the Detailed Information window (see Figure 8-3) to monitor the detailed status of each pair.

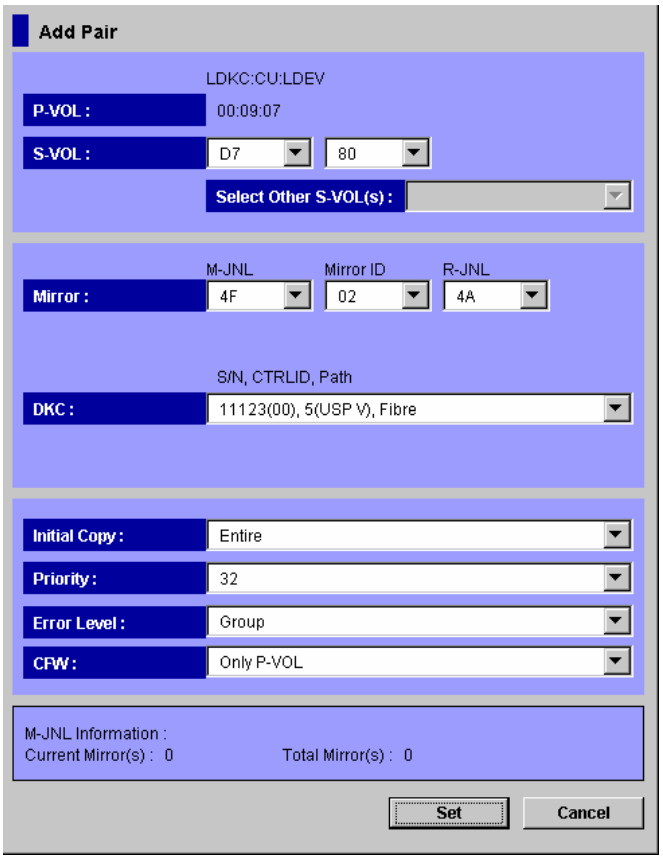


Figure 8-2 Add Pair Window

The Add Pair window displays the following:

- **P-VOL**: Indicates a primary data volume. The numbers are the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number of the primary data volume.

  Notes:

  – **P-VOL** displays only one primary data volume even when two or more primary data volumes are selected in the Pair Operation window. **P-VOL** only displays the primary data volume that has the smallest volume number.

  – If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

- **S-VOL**: Allows you to select a secondary data volume. When specifying a secondary data volume, you must use the two drop-down lists to select the CU image number and the LDEV number of the secondary data volume.

  Note: You can select only one secondary data volume even when two or more primary data volumes are selected in the Pair Operation window. URz automatically specifies the other secondary data volumes. For detailed information, refer to the explanation about the **Select Other S-VOL(s)** option later in this section.

Note: If you selected more than one primary data volume, select the secondary data volume for the primary data volume being displayed. The secondary data volumes for the rest of the primary data volumes are automatically assigned according to the volume number. For example, if you select three primary data volumes and select *01* as the S-VOL for the first primary data volume, the secondary data volumes for the two other primary data volumes will be *02* and *03*.

Note: When creating more than one pair at a time, make sure that the S-VOLs to be assigned automatically are available. If an S-VOL is not available, you will have to select the S-VOL individually.

- **Select Other S-VOL(s)**: Specify how URz automatically will assign secondary data volumes if two or more primary data volumes are selected in the Pair Operation window.
  - **Increment**: URz increments volume numbers of the resulting secondary data volumes one by one. For example, if the volume numbers of the three primary data volumes are *01*, *02*, and *03*, the volume numbers of the resulting secondary data volumes will be *11*, *12*, *and 13* if you select the volume number *11* with the **S-VOL** drop-down list.
  - **Input Next**: URz users can specify a volume number for each primary data volume. For example, if two primary data volumes are selected, the URz user must select **Input Next**, specify the secondary data volume for the first primary data volume with **S-VOL**, and then click **Set**. Next, the user must specify the secondary data volume for the second primary data volume with **S-VOL**, and then click **Set**.
  - **Relative to P-VOL**: URz calculates the difference between volume numbers of two adjacent primary data volumes, and then determines volume numbers of secondary data volumes.

    For example, if the volume numbers of the three primary data volumes are *01*, *05*, and *06*, the volume numbers of the resulting secondary data volumes will be *02*, *06*, *and 07* if you select the volume number *02* with the **S-VOL** drop-down list.

  Note: If you select and right-click more than one volume in the **Preview** list and then select **Modify**, the Add Pair window appears and the **Select Other S-VOL(s)** drop-down list displays **No Change**. If you want to change the setting with this drop-down list, select another item from the drop-down list.
- **Mirror**: Assigns a master journal group to the primary data volume, assigns a restore journal group to the secondary data volume, and also assigns a mirror ID to the volume pair.
  - **M-JNL**: Assigns a master journal group to the primary data volume.

    Note: **M-JNL** does not display journal group numbers used by Universal Replicator.
  - **Mirror ID**: Assigns a mirror ID to the volume pair.
  - **R-JNL**: Assigns a restore journal group to the secondary data volume.

Note: **R-JNL** does not display journal group numbers used by Universal Replicator.

- **DKC**: Allows you to select the serial number (the LDKC number) and the controller ID (model name that indicates the model) of the secondary storage system. This option also allows you to specify the path type (i.e., channel type).

  Note: The secondary storage system must be the same for all pairs being created during one operation.

- **Initial Copy**: Allows you to specify whether to start the initial copy operation after the volume pair is created. The default is **Entire**.
  - **Entire**: The initial copy operation will start after the volume pair is created. When the initial copy operation executes, all data on the primary data volume will be copied to the secondary data volume.
  - **None**: The initial copy operation will not start after the volume pair is created. The primary storage system starts copying of update data as needed.

    Caution: The user must ensure that the primary data volume and secondary data volume are already identical when using **None**.
  - **Delta**: No initial copy operation will start after the volume pair is created. The status of the volume pair will change to **Hold** which means that the pair is for delta resync operation.

- **Priority**: Allows you to specify priority (scheduling order) of the initial copy operations (1-256). The default setting is 32.

  Note: If the time out error occurs during the Add Pair operation, the copy operation may not be executed correctly in the order that you have set with the **Priority** parameter. The time out error may be caused by the CU configuration or a remote copy path error. Review the error, release the pair with the error, and then retry the Add Pair operation.

- **Error Level**: Allows you to specify the range used for splitting a pair when a failure occurs. The default is **Group**.
  - **Group**: If a failure occurs with a pair, all pairs in the mirror where the pair belongs will be split.
  - **Volume**: If a failure occurs with a pair, only the pair will be split.

- **CFW**: Allows you to specify whether to copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume. The default is **Only P-VOL**.
  - **Only P-VOL**: Does not copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
  - **Copy to S-VOL**: Copies cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.

- **M-JNL Information**: Displays information about the master journal.
  - **Current Mirror(s)**: Indicates the number of mirrors registered in the master journal.

  - **Total Mirror(s)**: Indicates the sum of the following:

    (1) The number of mirrors registered in the master journal.

    (2) The number of mirrors to be added by the Add Pair window

    (3) The number of mirrors for volumes in the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window.

- **Set**: Applies the settings to the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2).
- **Cancel**: Discards the settings.

Displaying Detailed Information about a Pair of Data Volumes

The Detailed Information window allows you to view detailed information about a pair of data volumes.

To display detailed information about a pair of data volumes, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
2. In the tree of the Pair Operation window, select and right-click a pair.

   Note: You cannot select more than one pair.
3. From the pop-up menu, select Pair Status.
4. In the Detailed Information window (Figure 8-3), view detailed information about the pair.
5. After you finish viewing the information, select **Close** to close the Detailed Information window.

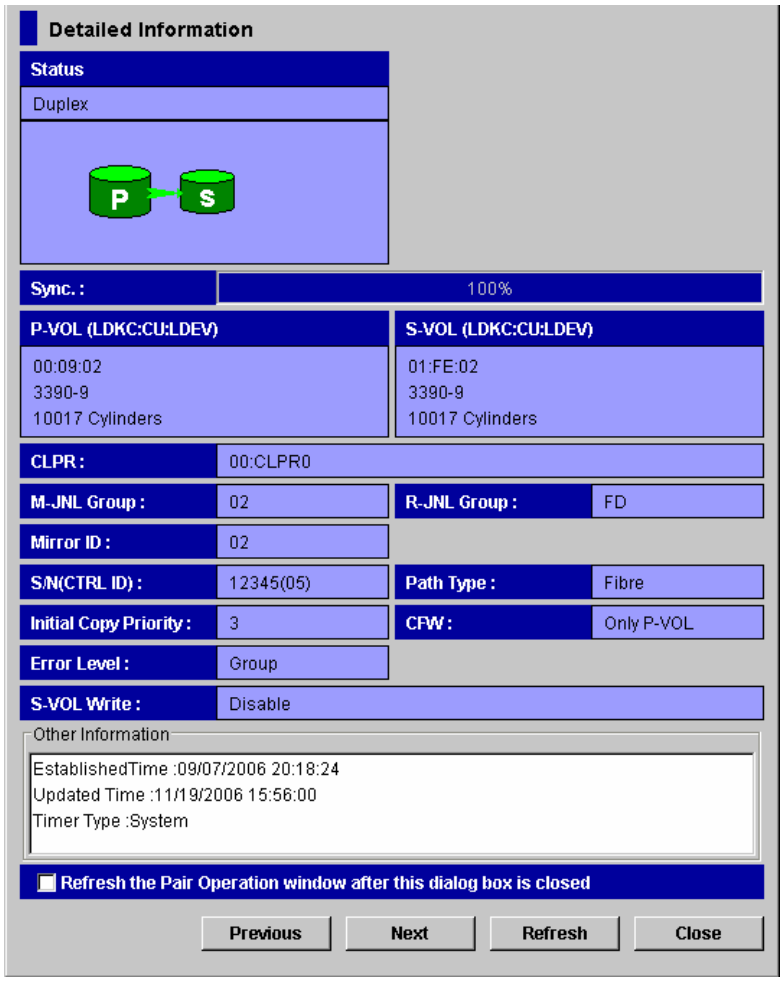


Figure 8-3 Detailed Information Window

The Detailed Information window displays the following:

- **Status**: Indicates the status of the pair. If the pair is split (or suspended), **Status** also displays the suspend type. If the pair is waiting for initial copy, **Status** also displays the word **(Queuing)**.
- **Sync.**: If the volume in the local storage system is a primary data volume, **Sync.** displays progress of an initial copy operation.

  If the volume in the local storage system is a secondary data volume, **Sync.** displays information in the following ways:

  – If the volume pair is not split, Sync. displays nothing.

– If the volume pair is split and therefore is in **Suspend** status, **Sync.** usually displays synchronization rate (i.e., concordance rate) between the secondary data volume before it became split and the secondary data volume after it became split. For example, the synchronization rate (i.e., concordance rate) is 100 percent if the contents of the secondary data volume are the same before and after the volume pair became split.
Caution: If a failure in the initial copy operation causes the volume pair to be split, **Sync.** displays nothing. If a failure occurs in the initial copy operation, the Detailed Information window (Figure 8-3) displays the phrase "Initial copy failed".

– In the following cases, this column will be blank.

When the volume in the local storage system is neither a primary data volume nor a secondary data volume.

When the status of the volume pair is **Hold** or **Hlde**.

- **P-VOL (LDKC:CU:LDEV)**: Indicates the primary data volume.

  The first line displays the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number of the primary data volume. If the primary data volume exists in the local storage system, the first line also displays the CLPR number and the CLPR name.

  The second line displays the device emulation type.

  The third line displays the volume capacity.

  Note: If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

  Note: If a volume is a volume of TagmaStore USP/NSC, “00” is displayed as the LDKC number.

- **S-VOL (LDKC:CU:LDEV)**: Indicates the secondary data volume.

  The first line displays the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number of the secondary data volume. If the secondary data volume exists in the local storage system, the first line also displays the CLPR number and the CLPR name.

  The second line displays the device emulation type.

  The third line displays the volume capacity.

  Note: If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

  Note: If a volume is a volume of TagmaStore USP/NSC, “00” is displayed as the LDKC number.

- **CLPR**: Indicates the CLPR number and the CLPR name of the volume in the local storage system.

- **M-JNL Group**: Indicates the master journal group.

- **R-JNL Group**: Indicates the restore journal group.
- **Mirror ID**: Indicates the mirror ID.
- **S/N(CTRL ID)** : displays the five-digit serial number and the controller ID of the secondary storage system. The controller ID is enclosed by parentheses.
- **Initial Copy Priority**: Indicates priority (scheduling order) of the initial copy operations. The value can be within the range of 1 to 256 (disabled when the status becomes Duplex).
- **CFW**: Indicates whether to copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume. The default is **Only P-VOL** .
  - **Only P-VOL**: Does not copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
  - **Copy to S-VOL**: Copies cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
- **Error Level**: Indicates the range used for splitting a pair when a failure occurs. The default is **Group**.
  - **Group**: If a failure occurs with a pair, all pairs in the mirror where the pair belongs will be split.
  - **Volume**: If a failure occurs with a pair, only the pair will be split.
- **S-VOL Write**: Indicates whether write I/O to the secondary data volume is enabled or disabled (enabled only when the pair is split).
- **Other Information**: Displays the following:
  - **Established Time**: Indicates the date and time when the volume pair was created.
  - **Updated Time**: Indicates the date and time when the volume pair status was last updated.
  - Displays **Reverse Resync** if "reverse resync" will be performed on the pair. Displays nothing if "reverse resync" will not be performed on the pair.
  - **Consistency Time**: Indicates time stamp transferred by the host computer if the secondary data volume uses the system timer.

    Displays the phrase "**differs from C/T of the JNL group**" if the pair is split and the consistency time for the secondary data volume does not match the consistency time for the journal group.
  - **Timer Type**: Indicates the type of timer used by the data volume.

System	The system clock of the mainframe host is used.
Local	The system clock of the SVP is used.
None	No system clock is used.

  - **SEQCHK**: The word **SEQCHK** is displayed if the secondary data volume uses the system timer and receives update data without time stamp from the host computer.

- **Refresh the Pair Operation window after this window is closed**: If this check box is selected, the Pair Operation window will be updated when the Detailed Information window closes.
- **Previous**: Displays the pair status information for the previous pair in the list (the pair in the row above).

  Note: The Display Filter settings can affect how **Previous** or **Next** is recognized.

  Note: The list displays a maximum of 1,024 rows at once. The **Previous** and **Next** buttons on the Detailed Information window can only be used for the currently displayed 1,024 rows.
- **Next**: Displays the pair status information for the next pair in the list (the pair in the row below)

  Note: The Display Filter settings can affect how **Previous** or **Next** is recognized.

  Important: The list displays a maximum of 1,024 rows at once. The **Previous** and **Next** buttons on the Detailed Information window can only be used for the currently displayed 1,024 rows.
- **Refresh**: Updates the pair status information.
- **Close**: Closes the Detailed Information window.

Saving Pair Status Information into a Text File

The export function of URz enables you to save information about pair status into a text file.=The example of the text file is described in Figure 6-4.

Note: You can use the export function only while the client file access is enabled. When the client file access is not enabled, the **Export** button is not displayed on the Pair Operation window. For the further information of the client file access settings, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

The following is an example of a snapshot file.

```
<Pair Status at 2007/03/17 19:19:58>
Vol       Status    Sub   JNG  Mr  S/N(LDKC) CNTL  Vol       JNG   Type   ErrLv   Sync   CLPR
CopyTime
00:09:00  Pending         FE   01  11111(00) 05    00:EE:EE  01    S-VOL  Volume  80     00:CLPR0
00:09:01  Duplex          02   02  11111(00) 05    00:DD:DD  FD    P-VOL  Group   100    00:CLPR1
001:00:00
00:09:02  Pending         FC   03  11111(00) 05    00:EE:EE  03    S-VOL  Volume  80     00:CLPR2
```

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (13) (14)

(1) Volume in the local storage system.
The LDKC number, the CU number, and the LDEV number

(2) Status of the pair

(3) Sub status (i.e., consistency status) of the pair

(4) Journal group number in the local storage system

(5) Mirror ID

(6) Serial number of the remote storage system

(7) Controller ID and model name of the remote storage system

(8) Volume in the remote storage system
The number to the left of the colon (:) is a CU number.
The number to the right of the colon is an LDEV number.

(9) Journal group number in the remote storage system

(10) Type of volumes in the local storage system
P-VOL: primary data volume
S-VOL: secondary data volume

(11) Error level

(12) Progress of copy operation. . Or, synchronization rate (i.e., concordance rate) between the data volume before the pair was split and the data volume after the pair was split.

(13) CLPR number and CLPR name

(14) Copy time

Note: If a volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.

Note: "00" is displayed as the LDCK number when the volume is a volume of TagmaStore USP/NSC.

Figure 8-4 Example of an Exported Text File

To save information about a data volume pair in a text file:

1. If necessary, follow the instruction in section Filtering Information in the List in the Pair Operation Window to filter information in the list.
2. In the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2), click **Export**.

   A message appears and asks whether you want to save volume pair information in a file.
3. Select **OK** to close the message.

   A window appears and prompts you to save a file.
4. Enter the name of the file and then select **Save**.

A message appears when URz finishes saving the file.

5. Select **OK** to close the message.

   If **Subsystem** or an LDKC is selected in the tree, you can abort the exporting by clicking the **Cancel** of the dialog box that is displayed during exporting processing.

Changing Options for a Data Volume Pair

The Change Pair Option window allows you to change options for a pair of data volumes.

To change the pair options, follow the procedure below. Note that only the administrator of the primary storage system can perform the following operation. The administrator of the secondary storage system cannot perform the following operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

2. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
3. In the list, select and right-click the desired pair(s).

   Caution: You can only change options for pairs in **Duplex**, or **Suspend**, **Hold**, or **Hlde** status. If you select a pair in another status, you cannot go on to the subsequent steps.

4. From the pop-up menu, select **Change Pair Option**.

   The Change Pair Option window appears (Figure 8-5).

5. In the Change Pair Option window, change pair options and select **Set**.

   Note: If two or more pairs are selected in the list, the drop-down list on the window may display blank for option values. If you do not want to change the current option value for each of the pairs, ensure that the drop-down list displays blank. If you select a value other than blank from the drop-down list, the selected value will be set to each of the pairs.

6. See the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Modify.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.

7. Select **Apply** to apply the changes that you have made.

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

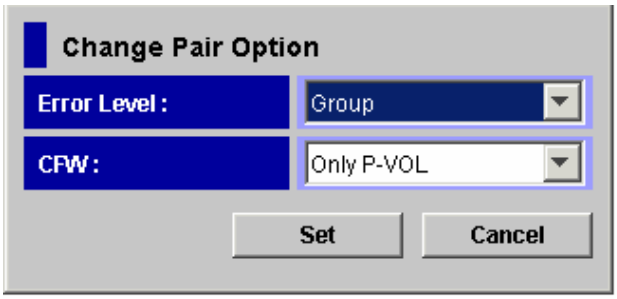


Figure 8-5 Change Pair Option Window

The Change Pair Option window displays the following items that can be configured:

- **Error Level**: Allows you to specify the range used for splitting a pair when a failure occurs.
  - **Group**: If a failure occurs with a pair, all pairs in the mirror where the pair belongs will be split.
  - **Volume**: If a failure occurs with a pair, only the pair will be split.

  When the Change Pair Option window appears, the window displays the current option value.
- **CFW**: Allows you to specify whether to copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
  - **Only P-VOL**: Does not copy cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.
  - **Copy to S-VOL**: Copies cache-fast-write data to the secondary data volume.

  When the Change Pair Option window appears, the window displays the current option value.
- **Set**: Applies the settings to the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2).
- **Cancel**: Discards the settings.

Splitting a Pair of Data Volumes

After the initial copy operation finishes, you can use the Suspend Pair window to split the pair of data volumes.

To split one or more pairs, follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
3. In the tree, select a CU number.
4. In the list, select and right-click the pair that you want to split.

   The pair status must be Duplex.
5. From the pop-up menu, select **Suspend Pair**.

   The Suspend Pair window appears (Figure 8-6).
6. In the Suspend Pair window, select the desired pairsplit options for the pair(s).
7. Select Set to close the Suspend Pair window.
8. See the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Modify.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.
9. Select **Apply** to split pair(s).

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.
10. In the list of the **Pair Operations** window, verify that the pair has been split successfully. If the pair has been split, the status of the pair is **Suspend**.

    Note: To restore a pair that has already been split, use the **Resume Pair** command.

    Note: In either of the following conditions, the secondary data volume may become suspended due to a failure:
    - You split a pair when the primary data volume is reserved by a mainframe host.

– The primary data volume becomes reserved when you split the pair.

If the secondary data volume is suspended due to a failure, you can restore the pair by using the **Resume Pair** command.

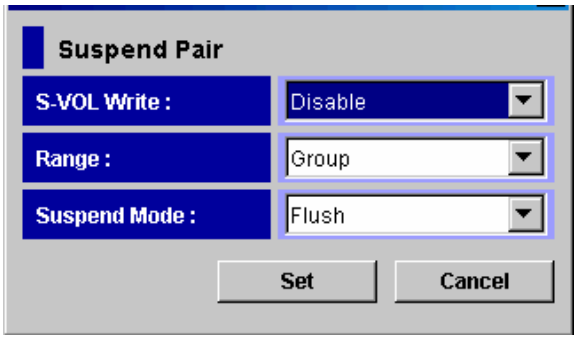


Figure 8-6 Suspend Pair Window

The Suspend Pair window displays the following:

- **S-VOL Write**: Allows you to specify whether to permit hosts to write data to the secondary data volume. The default is **Disable** (i.e., do not permit):
  - **Disable**: Hosts cannot write data to the secondary data volume while the pair is split.
  - **Enable**: Hosts can write data to the secondary data volume while the pair is split. This option is available only when the selected volume is a primary data volume.
- **Range**: Allows you to specify the split range. The default is **Volume** if two or more pairs in the same mirror are selected. The default is **Group** if not.
  - **Volume**: Only the specified pair(s) will be split. *Note:* If you select pairs with Duplex status and other than Duplex status in the same mirror, an unexpected suspension may occur during the pair operations (Suspend Pair, Delete(release) Pair, and Resume Pair) under heavy I/O load conditions. You can estimate whether the I/O load is heavy or not from frequency of host I/Os. The suspend pair operations should be performed under light I/O load conditions.
  - **Group**: All pairs in the same mirror(s) as the selected pair(s) will be split.

  Note: If the following two conditions are satisfied and you select **Apply**, a warning message will be displayed and processing cannot be continued:
  - The **Preview** list contains two or more pairs belonging to the same mirror.
  - The **Range** column displays **Group** for at least one of the above pairs.

  To be able to continue processing, do either of the following:
- Ensure that the **Range** column displays **Volume** for all pairs in the same mirror.

- In the **Preview** list, select all but one pair in the same mirror, right click the selected pairs, and then select **Delete**.
- **Suspend Mode**: Allows you to specify how to deal with update data that has not been copied to the secondary data volume. The default is **Flush**:
  - **Flush**: When you split the pair, update data will be copied to the secondary data volume.

    When the secondary storage system receives a request for splitting a pair, all the journal data (i.e., update data) that the pair retains will be written to the secondary data volume. After that, the status of the pair will change from **Suspending** to **Suspend** if the pair does not retain any journal data for a certain period of time.
  - **Purge**: When you split the pair, update data will not be copied to the secondary data volume. If you restore the pair later, the update data will be copied to the secondary data volume.
- **Set**: Applies the settings to the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2).
- **Cancel**: Discards the settings.

Restoring a Pair of Data Volumes

The Resume Pair window (Figure 8-7) allows you to restore a pair that has been split. In addition, the window allows you to recover a mirror and start data copying of URz pair in **Hold** status in order to perform delta resync operation.

Note: If the primary or secondary storage system is powered off and its backup batteries are fully discharged while pairs are suspended, the primary/secondary data volume bitmaps will not be retained. In this unlikely case, the primary/secondary storage system will mark all cylinders/tracks of all suspended volumes as modified, so that the primary storage system will perform the equivalent of an entire initial copy operation when the pairs are resumed.

The administrator of the primary storage system can follow the procedure below to restore one or more pairs that have been split, or to perform delta resync operation. Note that the administrator of the secondary storage system cannot perform the following operation.

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
3. If any pair was suspended due to an error condition (use the Detailed Information window to view the suspend type), make sure that the error condition has been removed. The primary storage system will not resume the pair(s) until the error condition has been removed.
4. In the tree, select a CU image number.
5. In the list, select and right-click the pair that you want to restore.

   The result of this operation differs according to the status of the selected mirror.

   – When you select the pair in Suspend status, the split pair will recover.
   – When you select the pair in Hold status, delta resync operation will be performed.
   – When you select the pair in **Hlde** status, the status will change to **Hold**.
6. From the pop-up menu, select **Resume Pair**.

   The Resume Pair window appears (Figure 8-7).
7. In the Resume Pair window, select the desired options for the pair(s).
8. Select **Set** to close the Resume Pair window.
9. See the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window to check the settings that you have made.

- If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Modify.
- If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.

10. Select **Apply** to restore pair(s).

    Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.

11. In the list of the **Pair Operations** window, verify that the pair(s) has been restored successfully.

    If the pair has been restored successfully, the status of the pair is Pending or Duplex.

    - If the pair has been restored successfully, the status of the pair is Pending or Duplex.
    - If delta resync operation has been performed successfully, the status of the pair is Pending or Duplex.
    - If the operation to change pair status has been performed successfully, the status of the pair changes to **Hold**.

12. To monitor the progress of restoring pair(s), click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window to update the information in the list, or use the Detailed Information window to monitor the detailed status of each pair.

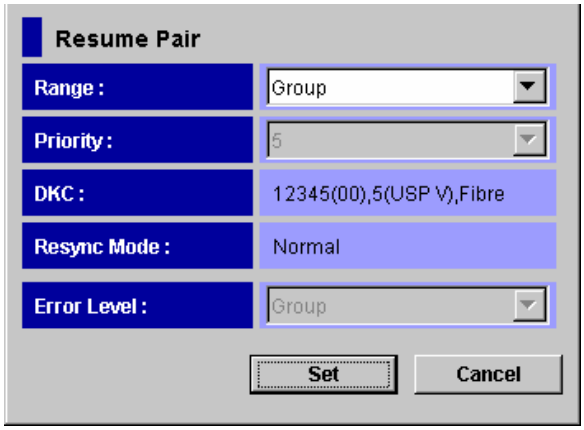


Figure 8-7 Resume Pair Window

The Resume Pair window displays the following:

- **Range**: Allows you to specify the restore range. The default is **Volume** if two or more pairs in the same mirror are selected. The default is **Group** if not. Note that the default setting is **Group** when the pair status is **Hold** or **Hlde**, and in that case you cannot change the default setting.
  - **Volume**: Only the specified pair(s) will be restored.

  - **Group**: All pairs in the same mirror(s) as the selected pair(s) will be restored.

  Note: If the following two conditions are satisfied and you select **Apply**, a warning message will be displayed and processing cannot be continued:

  - The **Preview** list contains two or more pairs belonging to the same mirror.
  - The **Range** column displays **Group** for at least one of the above pairs.

  To be able to continue processing, do either of the following:

  - Ensure that the **Range** column displays **Volume** for all pairs in the same mirror.
  - In the **Preview** list, select all but one pair in the same mirror, right click the selected pairs, and then select **Delete**.

- **Priority**: Allows you to specify the desired priority (1-256) (scheduling order) for the pair-restoring operations.

  Note: If **Range** is **Group**, you cannot change the **Priority** option.

- **DKC**: Indicates the followings about a remote storage system.
  - The serial number with the LDKC number.
  - The controller ID with the model name.
  - The path type.
- **Resync Mode**: Indicates the processing after recovery of the pairs.
  - **Normal**: Split pair whose status is **Suspend** will be recovered.
  - **Delta**: Delta resync operation will be performed. For information about the requirements to perform delta resync operation, see section Requirements for Performing Delta Resync Operation.
  - **Return to standby**: The status of pairs will be recovered from **Hlde** to **Hold**.
- **Error Level**: Allows you to specify the range used for splitting a pair when a failure occurs.
  - **Group**: If a failure occurs with a pair, all pairs in the mirror where the pair belongs will be split.
  - **Volume**: If a failure occurs with a pair, only the pair will be split.

  Note: If **Range** is **Group**, you cannot change the **Error Level** option.

- **Set**: Applies the settings to the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2).
- **Cancel**: Discards the settings.

Releasing a Pair of Data Volumes

The Delete Pair window (Figure 8-8) allows you to release a pair of data volumes.

When one journal group uses two mirror IDs, the result of the operation differs as follows according to the status of the mirror of specified URz pair.

- When you specify a mirror of the URz pair in **Hold** or **Hlde** status, only the URz pair of the specified mirror will be deleted.
- When you specify a mirror of the URz pair that is not in **Hold** or **Hlde** status, URz pairs of both mirrors (including the mirror which you do not specified) will be deleted.

To release one or more pair(s), follow the procedure below. Not only the primary storage system administrator but also the secondary storage system administrator can perform this operation:

1. Ensure that the Storage Navigator main window is in Modify mode.

   For detailed information about how to do this, please refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.
2. Ensure that the Pair Operation window is displayed.
3. In the tree, select a CU image number.
4. In the list, select and right-click the pair that you want to release.
5. From the pop-up menu, select **Delete Pair**.

   The Delete Pair window appears (Figure 8-8).
6. In the Delete Pair window, select the desired options for the pair(s).
7. Select Set to close the Delete Pair window.
8. See the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window to check the settings that you have made.
   - If you want to modify a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select Modify.
   - If you want to cancel a setting, select and right-click the setting and then select **Cancel**.
9. Select **Apply** to release pair(s).

   Note: If an error occurs, the rightmost column of the **Preview** list displays the error code. To view detailed information about the error, right-click the error code and then select **Error Detail**. An error message appears and gives you detailed information about the error.
10. In the list of the **Pair Operations** window, verify that the pair(s) has been released successfully. If the pair has been released, the status of the pair is **Simplex**.

To monitor the progress of releasing pair(s), click **File**, **Refresh** on the menu bar of the Storage Navigator main window to update the information in the list, or use the Detailed Information window to monitor the detailed status of each pair.

Note: To restore a pair which was released from the secondary storage system, first release the pair from the primary storage system, and then restore the pair using the appropriate initial copy option.

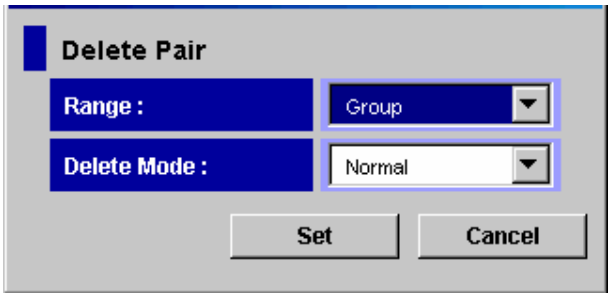


Figure 8-8 Delete Pair Window

The Delete Pair window displays the following:

- **Range**: Allows you to specify the release range. The default is **Volume** if two or more pairs in the same mirror are selected. The default is **Group** if not. Also, if the pair status is **Simplex**, **Range** is set to **Volume**. If the pair status is **Deleting** or **Suspending**, **Range** is set to **Group**.
  - **Volume**: Only the specified pair(s) will be released. *Note:* If you select pairs with Duplex status and other than Duplex status in the same mirror, an unexpected suspension may occur during the pair operations (Suspend Pair, Delete(release) Pair, and Resume Pair) under heavy I/O load conditions. You can estimate whether the I/O load is heavy or not from frequency of host I/Os. The pair operations should be performed under light I/O load conditions.
  - **Group**: All pairs in the same mirror(s) as the selected pair(s) will be released. *Caution:* Do not use this option when releasing pairs at the secondary storage system during disaster recovery.

  Note: If the following two conditions are satisfied and you select **Apply**, a warning message will be displayed and processing cannot be continued:
  - The **Preview** list contains two or more pairs belonging to the same mirror.
  - The **Range** column displays **Group** for at least one of the above pairs.

  To be able to continue processing, do either of the following:
  - Ensure that the **Range** column displays **Volume** for all pairs in the same mirror.
  - In the **Preview** list, select all but one pair in the same mirror, right click the selected pairs, and then select **Delete**.

- **Delete Mode**: Allows you to specify whether to release the pair(s) forcibly. When the status of the pair(s) to be released is **Simplex** or **Deleting**, the default setting is **Force**. Otherwise, the default setting is **Normal**:
  - **Force**: The pair(s) will forcibly be released even if the primary storage system is unable to communicate with the secondary storage system. This option may be used to free a host waiting for device-end from a primary storage system that cannot communicate with its the secondary storage system, thus allowing host operations to continue.

    If you specify **Force** when the pair status is other than **Simplex**, **Range** will be set to **Group**.
  - **Normal**: The pair(s) will be released only if the primary storage system is able to change the pair status of the primary and secondary data volumes to Simplex.
- **Set**: Applies the settings to the **Preview** list in the Pair Operation window (Figure 4-2).
- **Cancel**: Discards the settings.

Recovering a Pinned Track

If a hardware failure occurs when the storage system is in operation, some data in the cache memory of the storage system may not be written to disk drives and may remain in the cache memory. Data that remains in cache memory due to such a reason is referred to as "pinned track".

Recovering a Pinned Track on a Data Volume

If a pinned track occurs on a URz primary or secondary data volume, the primary storage system will suspend the data volume pair (SIM reference code = D41x, D42x, DB1x, DB2x). Use the following procedure to ensure full data integrity of the data volume pair while recovering the pinned track:

1. Connect to the primary storage system and select the correct CU image.
2. Release the data volume pair that contains the volume with the pinned track.
3. If the volume is offline (e.g., secondary data volume has pinned track), vary the volume online.
4. Perform your usual procedure for recovering data from a pinned track. Refer to the pinned track recovery procedures for your operating system, or contact your Hitachi representative for assistance in recovering the pinned track.
5. If the volume was previously offline (e.g., secondary data volume. See step 3), make sure to vary the volume offline again.

6. Use the **Add Pair** command in the Pair Operation window to recover the data volume pair. Make sure to select the **Entire** initial copy option in the Add Pair window.

Recovering a Pinned Track on a Journal Volume

If a pinned track occurs on a URz master or restore journal volume, the procedure for pinned track recovery is as follows:

1. Identify the journal group that contains the journal volume where a pinned track occurs. After that, split the mirror where the journal group belongs.
2. Delete the journal volume containing the pinned track from the journal group.
3. Format the journal volume by using the LDEV format function of VLL. For detailed instructions on how to format the volume, please refer to Virtual LVI/LUN and Volume Shredder User's Guide.
4. Register the formatted volume (or another volume that can be used instead of the formatted volume) in the journal group.

   If you do not need to resume copying, the procedure is now finished.

If you want to resume copying, please continue to restore the mirror to which the journal group belongs (see section Restoring a Mirror (Resuming a copy operation))

9

Usage Monitor Operations

This chapter describes the Usage Monitoring window which enables you to collect I/O statistics for all volumes to be monitored on the connected storage system:

- ☐ Reviewing the Usage Monitor Window
- ☐ Starting and Stopping Usage Monitoring
- ☐ Displaying the Usage Monitor Graph
- ☐ Saving Monitoring Data in Text Files
- ☐ Saving Operation History into a Text File

Reviewing the Usage Monitor Window

The Usage Monitoring window enables you to collect I/O statistics for all volumes to be monitored on the connected storage system. The I/O statistics that are displayed in the window are collected by Performance monitor. The Usage Monitoring is able to display the data of remote copy operations. At each data sampling time interval that is specified from Performance Monitor, the usage monitoring window collects 1,440 pieces of data for each volume and up to 1,440 pieces of data can be collected for entire volumes to be monitored.

Starting and Stopping Usage Monitoring

Starting and stopping usage monitoring can be set using Performance Monitor. For detail about starting and stopping usage monitoring, please refer to *Performance Manager User's Guide*.

Displaying the Usage Monitor Graph

When usage monitoring is running, the Usage Monitor window can display user-selected remote copy I/O statistics in real time.

The usage monitor graph plots the user-selected I/O statistics (up to 65 data points) on an x-y graph. The x-axis displays time. The y-axis displays the number of I/Os during the last sampling period. The legend (right side of the graph) indicates the data being displayed. A value on the y-axis varies according to the maximum value of the statistical data that is displaying. If the value on the y-axis exceeds 10,000,000, the value is displayed in exponential notation (e.g., 1E7 = 1×10^7 = 10,000,000; 2E8 = 2×10^8 = 200,000,000).

To display the usage monitor graph:

1. Make sure that usage monitoring is running (Monitoring Switch = Enable). The usage monitor graph can only be displayed when monitoring is on.
2. Right-click the graph area of the Usage Monitor window, and select Display Item to open the Display Item window (see Figure 9-1).
3. Select an appropriate radio button in **Select Volume**, following the instructions below:
   - If you want to display I/O statistics for all LDEVs to be monitored in the storage system, select ALL Volumes.
   - If you want to display I/O statistics for a specific journal group, select JNL Group, and then enter a journal group number (00-FF).
     Note: If you specify an unused journal group, the graph is not displayed.
   - If you want to display I/O statistics for a specific LDEV, select **Volume**, and then specify the desired LDEV by entering an LDKC number (00-01), a CU number (00-FE) and an LDEV number (00-FF).
     Note: If you specify the un-mounted volume, the graph is not displayed.
     Important: When a graph displays, the LDKC number, the CU number and the LDEV number appear above the graph. If the volume is an external volume, the symbol "#" appears after the LDEV number. For detailed information about external volumes, please refer to the *Universal Volume Manager User's Guide*.
4. In the **Monitor Data** box, select the I/O statistics data that you want to display on the graph. You must select at least one box. Table 9-1 describes the I/O statistics data.
5. Select **Set** to close the Display Item window. The Usage Monitor window now displays a graph showing the selected I/O statistics data for the selected LU(s).

   To enlarge the displayed graph, right-click the graph, and select the **Large Size** command. To return the graph to normal size, right-click the graph, and select the **Normal Size** command.

Note: To stop displaying the usage monitor graph, right-click the graph, and select **Close**. To stop displaying all graphs, select **Close All**. The usage monitor graph closes automatically in the following cases:

– When you select another tab,

– When you select another program product,

– When you exit the Storage Navigator software.

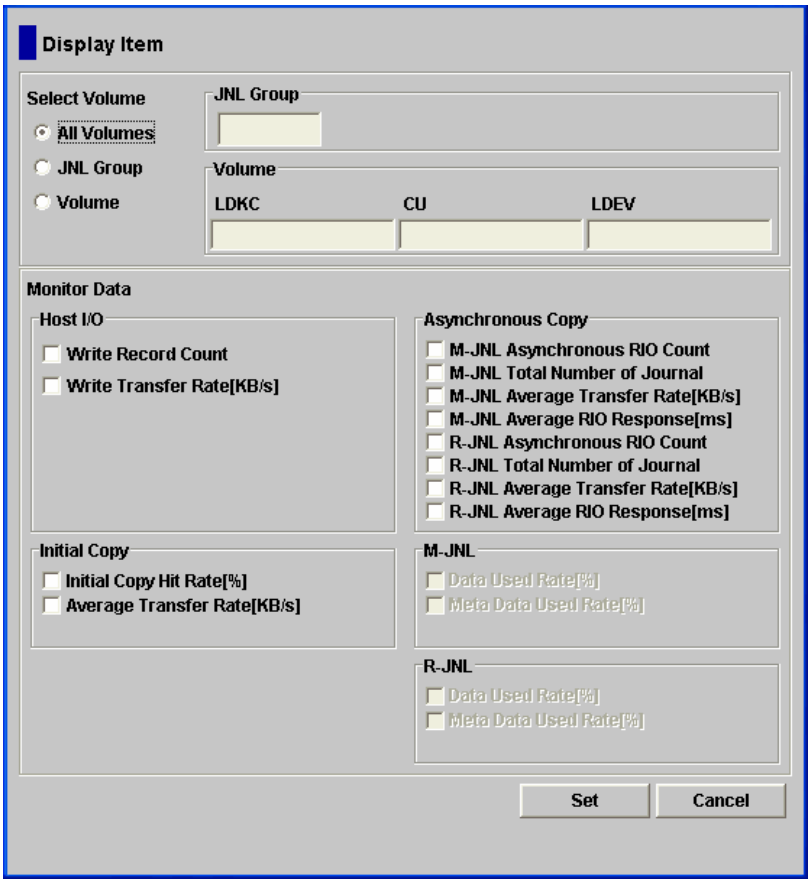


Figure 9-1 Display Item Window

Table 9-1 Remote Copy I/O Statistics

Statistic	Description
Host I/O	
Write Record Count	The number of write I/Os per second
Write Transfer Rate	The amount of data that are written per second. The unit is kilobytes per second.
Initial Copy	
Initial Copy Hit Rate	The initial copy hit rate. The unit is percent.
Average Transfer Rate	The average transfer rate for initial copy operations. The unit is kilobytes per second.
Asynchronous Copy	

M-JNL Asynchronous RIO count	The number of asynchronous remote I/Os per second at the primary storage system..
M-JNL Total Number of Journal	The number of journals at the primary storage system.
M-JNL Average Transfer Rate	The average transfer rate for journals in the primary storage system. The unit is kilobytes per second.
M-JNL Average RIO Response	The remote I/O process time on the primary storage system. The unit is milliseconds.
R-JNL Asynchronous RIO count	The number of asynchronous remote I/Os per second at the secondary storage system..
R-JNL Total Number of Journal	The number of journals at the secondary storage system.
R-JNL Average Transfer Rate	The average transfer rate for journals in the secondary storage system. The unit is kilobytes per second.
R-JNL Average RIO Response	The remote I/O process time on the secondary storage system. The unit is milliseconds.
M-JNL	
Data Used Rate	Data usage rate for master journals. The unit is percent.
Meta Data Used Rate	Metadata usage rate for master journals. The unit is percent.
R-JNL	
Data Used Rate	Data usage rate for restore journals. The unit is percent.
Meta Data Used Rate	Metadata usage rate for restore journals. The unit is percent.

Saving Monitoring Data in Text Files

To save monitoring data in text files, use the Export Tool of Performance Monitor. For information and instructions on using the Export Tool, please refer to the *Performance Manager User's Guide*.

Saving Operation History into a Text File

The export function enables you to save operation history into a CSV file.

Note: You can use the export function only while the client file access is enabled. When the client file access is not enabled, the **Export** button is not displayed on the History window. For the further information of the client file access settings, please refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

Note: If the number of operations exceeds approximately 10,000, the exported text file will become too large to be saved in a floppy disk. If this happens, please save the text file in a large-capacity disk.

The following is an example of an exported text file.

```
2007/02/22 09:57:54,Add Pair Complete,01,01,00:02:01,00:02:04,--,000:01:08
2007/02/22 09:56:46,Add Pair Start,01,01,00:02:01,00:02:04,--,
2007/02/22 09:56:46,Pair definition,01,01,00:02:01,00:02:04,--,
```

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)

(1) Data and time when the operation finished.

(2) Operation.

(3) Journal group number

(4) Mirror ID

(5) LDKC number, CU number and LDEV number of the volume in the remote storage system (LDKC:CU:LDEV).

(6) LDKC number, CU number and LDEV number of the volume in the local storage system (LDKC:CU:LDEV).

(7) Extended consistency group number.

Hyphens(--) are displayed if the volume does not belong to any extended consistency group.

(8) Time taken for copying (from the start to the end of copying).

This is displayed only when the operation (refer to (2)) is Add Pair Complete or Resume Pair Complete.

Figure 9-2 Example of a Exported File

To save exported file:

1. In the History window (Figure 4-9), select **Export**.

   A message appears and asks whether you want to save operation history in a file.

2. Select **Yes** to close the message.

   A window appears and prompts you to save a file.

3. Enter the name of the file and then select **Save**.

   A message appears when URz finishes saving the file.

4. Select **OK** to close the message.

10

Usage Scenarios

This chapter describes how to use URz to enables to make Point-in-Time (PiT) duplicates of groups of volumes:

- ☐ Creating a Point-in-Time Copy of Data Volumes
- ☐ Performing Disaster Recovery Operations
- ☐ Establishing 3DC Delta Resync Operations
- ☐ Performing Failover and Failback for Host Maintenance at the Primary Site

Creating a Point-in-Time Copy of Data Volumes

URz enables you to make Point-in-Time (PiT) duplicates of groups of volumes. The term "Point-in-Time (PiT)" refers to an act of obtaining a copy of data immediately when you want to obtain it. The URz can be used to create a PiT copy of data volumes belonging to a journal group.

To produce a PiT duplicate of data volumes belonging to a journal group:

1. Stop all write I/Os from hosts to primary data volumes in the journal group. Stop all host updates to all URz primary data volumes in the group.
2. After all write I/Os to primary data volume have stopped, split the mirror (i.e., a pair of the master and restore journal group. When splitting it, use the Suspend Pair window and then specify Group for Range and specify Flush for Suspend Mode.
3. When the status of all data volume pairs in the journal group has changed to **Suspend**, the duplicate set of volumes is complete. If desired, you can restart your business application at the primary site to resume business activities.

Performing Disaster Recovery Operations

Preparing for Disaster Recovery Operations

The type of disaster and the status of the URz volume pairs will determine the best approach for disaster recovery. Unfortunately, some disasters are not so “orderly” and involve intermittent or gradual failures occurring over a longer period of time. The user should anticipate and plan for all types of failures and disasters.

The major steps in preparing for disaster recovery are:

1. Identify the journal groups and data volumes that contain important files and data (e.g. DB2 log files, master catalogs, key user catalogs, and system control datasets) for disaster recovery.
2. Install the Storage Navigator PC and URz hardware and software, and establish Universal Replicator operations for the journal groups and data volumes identified in step (1).
3. Establish file and database recovery procedures. These procedures should already be established for recovering data volumes that become inaccessible due to some failure.
4. Install and configure error reporting communications (ERC) between the primary and secondary sites.

File and Database Recovery Procedures

When the primary storage system (or secondary storage system for URz) suspends a URz pair due to an error condition, the primary storage system or secondary storage system sends sense information with unit check status to the appropriate host(s). This sense information is used during disaster recovery. You must transfer the sense information to the secondary site via the error reporting communications (ERC).

Note: Make sure that the primary and secondary storage systems are configured to report the service-level SIMs to the host.

When the primary or secondary storage system suspends a URz pair due to a disaster, the secondary data volume may contain in-process data. A data set could be open, or transactions may not have completed. Therefore, you need to establish file recovery procedures. These procedures should be the same as those used for recovering data volume that becomes inaccessible due to control unit failure.

URz does not provide any procedure for detecting and retrieving lost updates. To detect and recreate lost updates, you must check other current information (e.g., database log file) that was active at the primary site when the disaster occurred. Note that the journal log file entries of most DBMS have the same system TOD clock information that is used for the I/O time-stamps (when timer type = system). The URz group consistency time can be extremely useful when performing this detection and retrieval. Since this detection/retrieval process can take a while, your disaster recovery scenario should be designed so that detection/retrieval of lost updates is performed after the application has been started at the secondary site.

For details on the timer type option, see section Timer Type Option.

You should prepare for file and database recovery by using:

- Files for file recovery (e.g., database log files which have been verified as current).
- The sense information with system time stamp which will be transferred via ERC.

Important: Remote copy and disaster recovery procedures are inherently complex. Consult your Hitachi account team on sense-level settings and recovery procedures.

Note: See section Recovering a Pinned Track on a Journal Volume for information on recovering a pinned track on a URz volume.

Switching Operations to the Secondary Site

If a disaster or failure occurs at the primary site, the first disaster recovery activity is to use Business Continuity Manager to switch your operations to the remote backup site.

The basic procedures for switching operations to the remote backup site are as follows:

Note: If you need to perform an IPL of the secondary host system, please delete SIMs and then perform the IPL before following the procedure below. When the IPL finishes, the secondary data volumes will usually be varied online. If the secondary volume are not varied online, vary the volumes online.

Note: If you do not need to perform an IPL of the secondary host system, please ensure that the secondary data volumes are varied online before you follow the procedure below.

1. Check whether the restore journal group includes a secondary data volume whose pair status is **Pending duplex** or **Suspend** (equivalent to **SUSPOP** in Business Continuity Manager).

   If such a pair exists, consistency in the secondary data volume is dubious, and recovery with guaranteed consistency is impossible. In this case, if you want to use the secondary data volume, you must release the pair.

2. If such a pair does not exist, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** option on the restore journal group (**YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair).
   If an error occurs, consistency in the secondary data volume is dubious, and recovery with guaranteed consistency is impossible. In this case, if you want to use the secondary data volume, you must release the pair.

3. If no error occurs in step 2, wait until the splitting finishes. When the splitting finishes, the secondary data volume becomes usable with maintained consistency.

4. When the splitting finishes, use Business Continuity Manager to execute the YKRESYNC REVERSE option on the restore journal group (YKRESYNC is a command for restoring a pair). This option attempts to restore the pair and reverse the primary/secondary relationship.

5. Check whether there is a pair whose pair status of the restore journal group is **Suspend** (equivalent to **SWAPPING** in Business Continuity Manager).

   If such a pair does not exist, the pair is successfully restored and the copy direction is reversed, and then copying of data from the secondary site to the primary site will start.

6. If the **YKSUSPND** command finishes successfully and the splitting ends successfully, you can resume business tasks (i.e., you can start business applications) by using secondary data volumes in the secondary site. Also, if the primary storage system, the secondary storage system, and remote copy connections are free from failure and fully operational, the restoring of the pair will finish successfully, and then copying of data from the secondary site to the primary site will start.

For detailed information about how to use Business Continuity Manager and about pair status in Business Continuity Manager, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

For detailed information about status of data volumes, refer to section Pair Status.

Transferring Operations Back to the Primary Site

Once the disaster recovery procedure is finished and your business applications are running at the secondary site, the next activity is to restore the primary site and make arrangements for copying data from the secondary site back to the primary site. The following procedure explains how to use Business Continuity Manager to copy data from the secondary site to the primary site:

1. Restore the primary storage system and remote copy connections, and make sure that all URz components are fully operational.
2. At the primary site, locate primary data volumes whose pair status is **Pending duplex** or **Duplex**, and then locate corresponding secondary data volumes whose pair status is **Suspend**, which is equivalent to **SWAPPING** in Business Continuity Manager terminology. If such volume pairs are found, issue a request for splitting the pairs to the primary data volumes.
3. At the primary site, locate primary data volumes whose pair status is not **Simplex**, and then locate corresponding secondary data volumes whose pair status is **Simplex**. If such volume pairs are found, issue a request for releasing the pairs to the primary data volumes.
4. At the primary site, locate data volume pairs whose pair status is **Simplex**, and then use Business Continuity Manager to execute **YKRECVER** on the secondary data volume (**YKRECVER** is a command for releasing a pair).
5. Execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** option on secondary data volumes whose pair status is **Suspend**, which is equivalent to **SWAPPING** in Business Continuity Manager terminology (**YKRESYNC** is the Business Continuity Manager command for resynchronizing pair). This reverses primary data volumes and secondary data volumes to resynchronize pairs.
6. Create pairs, specifying secondary data volumes whose pair status is **Simplex** as primary data volumes. This creates pairs in which primary data volumes and secondary data volumes are reversed.

7. Verify that pair status of all secondary data volumes (which were originally primary data volumes) changes from **Pending Duplex** to **Duplex**. If the pair status is changed to **Duplex**, initial copy operations are finished and consistency is maintained.

The above procedure enables copying of data from the secondary site to the primary site. Data in the secondary site will be reflected on the primary site.

For detailed information about how to use Business Continuity Manager, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

For detailed information about status of data volumes, refer to section Pair Status.

Resuming Normal Operations at the Primary Site

Once the URz volume pairs have been established in the reverse direction, you are ready to resume normal operations at the primary site. The following procedure explains how to resume normal operations at the primary site by using Business Continuity Manager. Remember that the URz terminology is now reversed: the original primary data volumes are now secondary data volumes, and the original secondary data volumes are now primary data volumes.

1. At the primary and secondary sites, make sure that all URz components are fully operational and are free from failures.
2. Make sure that pair status of primary and secondary data volumes in all URz pairs is "**Duplex**". This indicates that the URz initial copy operations are complete and consistency is maintained.
3. Stop the applications at the secondary site.
4. Issue a request for splitting pairs to master journal groups (which were originally restore journal groups); please use the Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND FLUSH SVOL PERMIT** option on the master journal group (which was originally the restore journal group); **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting pairs. If an error occurs when splitting pairs, please remove the error cause and go back to step 1 after resuming your business task at the secondary site.
5. If no error occurs in step 4, wait until suspension finishes. After suspension finishes, check whether there is a secondary data volume (which is originally a primary data volume) whose pair status is other than **Suspend** (equivalent to **SUSPOP** with Business Continuity Manager). If such a pair exists, please remove the error cause and go back to step 1 after resuming your business task at the secondary site.

6. If there is no secondary data volume (which is originally a primary data volume) whose pair status is other than **Suspend** (equivalent to **SUSPOP** with Business Continuity Manager), data in primary data volumes are the same as data in secondary data volumes, and the secondary data volume (which are originally primary data volumes) are usable. Please resume applications at the primary site.
7. Execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command on the restore journal group (which were originally master journal group); **YKSUSPND** is a Business Continuity Manager command and **REVERSE** is an option. Wait until suspension completes.
8. After suspension completes, execute the Business Continuity Manager **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command on the restore journal group (which were originally master journal group). This reverses primary data volumes and secondary data volumes to resynchronize pairs and restores copy direction to its original direction..

For detailed information about how to use Business Continuity Manager, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

For detailed information about status of data volumes, refer to section Pair Status.

Disaster Recovery for Multiple Primary and Secondary Storage Systems

Consistency of Data Update Sequence When a Disaster Occurs

When a failure occurs in some primary or secondary storage system, all journal groups in the extended consistency group will be suspended and remote copy operations will be suspended. The consistency of data update sequence will be maintained if a failure occurs in a primary storage system, but the consistency will not be maintained if a failure occurs in a secondary storage system.

For example, in the case described in Figure 10-1, if a failure occurs in the primary storage system 1 at 10:00 a.m., journal groups 1 to 3 will be suspended due to the failure, and the data written from the host before 10:00 a.m. will be restored to secondary data volumes in the secondary EXCTG, while consistency of data update sequence is maintained. On the other hand, if a failure occurs in the secondary storage system 1, journal groups 1 to 3 will be suspended due to the failure, and the consistency of the data update sequence will not be maintained for secondary data volumes in the extended consistency group.

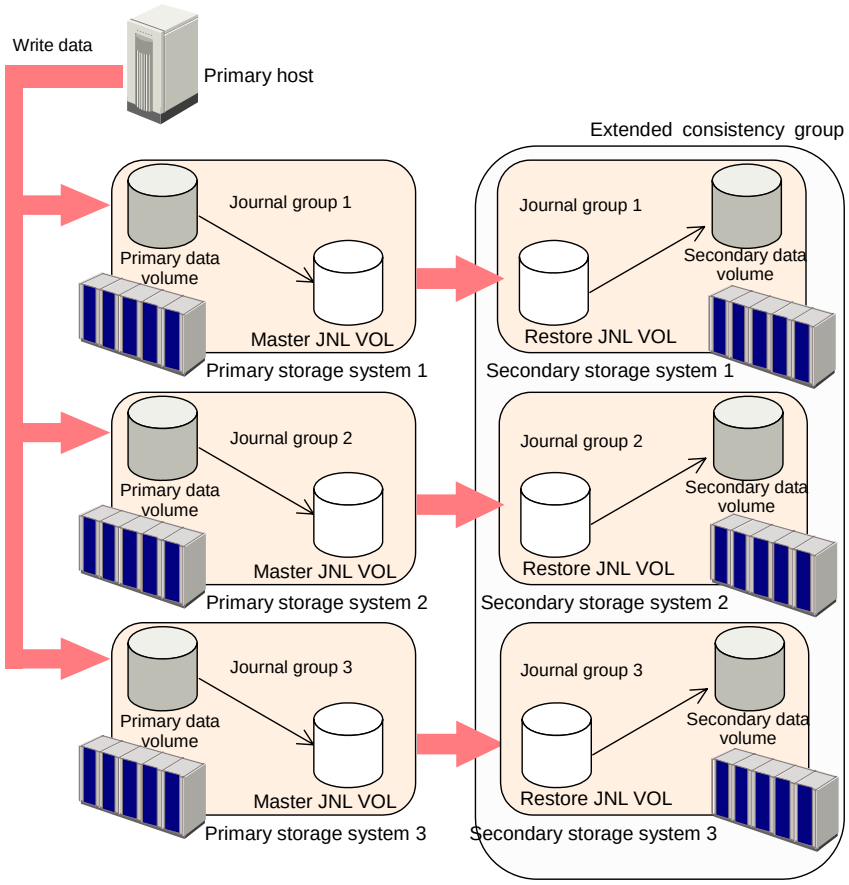


Figure 10-1 Example 2: Remote Copy Operations Among Three Primary Storage Systems and Three Secondary Storage Systems

Disaster Recovery Procedure

The following is an example of the procedure that should be followed when a disaster or failure occurs in the primary site in multi-primary and multi-secondary storage systems configuration:

1. Switch operations from the primary site to the secondary site.
2. Reverse the copy direction, so that data are copied from the secondary site to the primary site.
3. After recovery of the primary host or storage system finishes, switch operations from the secondary site to the primary site.

This disaster recovery procedure is the same as when only one primary storage system and only one secondary storage system is used. For detailed procedure, see **Error! Reference source not found.**.

Disaster Recovery in a 3DC Cascading Configuration

If a disaster or failure occurs in the primary site in a 3DC cascading configuration, you can use TCz secondary volumes in the intermediate site to enable the intermediate site to take over your business tasks. If a disaster or failure occurs in the primary site, first you must transfer your business tasks from the primary site to the intermediate site.

To transfer your business tasks to the secondary site:

1. Check consistency of the TCz Synchronous R-VOL in the secondary site.
2. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command onto the copy groups that will make a TCz Synchronous pair between the primary site and the intermediate site.
3. Use the TCz Synchronous R-VOL in the intermediate site to resume your business tasks.
4. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command onto the copy groups that will make a TCz Synchronous pair between the primary site and the intermediate site. This operation reverses the copy direction.

For detailed information about how to use Business Continuity Manager, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

When a disaster or failure occurs, the above procedure enables you to resume your business tasks by using TCz Synchronous M-VOLs in the intermediate site. The TCz Synchronous M-VOLs in the intermediate site will contain the same data that are stored in the TCz Synchronous M-VOLs in the primary (main) site.

For detailed information about copy status in Business Continuity Manager, please refer to *Business Continuity Manager User's Guide*.

Recovering from a Disaster at the Main Site in a 3DC Multi-Target Configuration

If a disaster or failure occurs only in the primary site in 3DC multi-target system, you can use secondary volume in the TCz Synchronous secondary site to enable the secondary site to take over your business tasks. After transferring your business tasks to the secondary site, you need to remove the failure from the primary site, so that you will be able to transfer your business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks to the TCz Synchronous secondary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRECVER** command on the journal group corresponding to the URz pair that exists between the primary and the URz secondary sites.

Note: **YKRECVER** is a command that requests releasing of a pair to the secondary data volume.

2. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   Note: **YKSUSPND** is a command for splitting a pair and stopping the copy operation temporarily.

3. Use the TCz Synchronous remote volume to resume your business tasks.
4. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command on the TCz Synchronous pair, in order to reverse the copy direction of the TCz pair.

   Note: **YKRESYNC** is a command for re-establishing a pair.

a) If reversing of the copy direction fails (as illustrated in the upper-right picture in Figure 10-2), create a URz pair. Ensure that the primary data volume of the pair is a volume in the TCz Synchronous secondary site, and that the secondary data volume of the pair is a volume in URz secondary site. To create this URz pair, use Business Continuity Manager to execute **YKMAKE** command on the journal group corresponding to the pair.

b) If reversing of the copy direction ends successfully (as illustrated in the lower-right picture in Figure 10-2), re-create the URz pair that was released in step 1 of this procedure. To re-create this pair, use Business Continuity Manager to execute **YKMAKE** command on the journal group corresponding to the pair.

   After the pair is re-created, the system configuration changes from 3DC multi-target configuration to 3DC cascading configuration. Also, the former TCz Synchronous secondary volume changes to the primary volume.

   Note: **YKMAKE** is a command for establishing a pair.

Notes:

– If you followed the instruction in step (a) above and you want to transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, you need to remove failures from the primary site and other locations. After that, you need to change the system into 3DC multi-target configuration as explained in section Changing to 3DC Multi-target Configuration after Recovering from Primary Site Failures, and then follow the operation procedure explained in section Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Multi-target Configuration)

– If you followed the instruction in step (b) above and you want to transfer your business tasks back to the primary site, you need to remove failures from the primary site and other locations, and then follow the operation procedure explained in section Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (in 3DC Cascading Configuration).

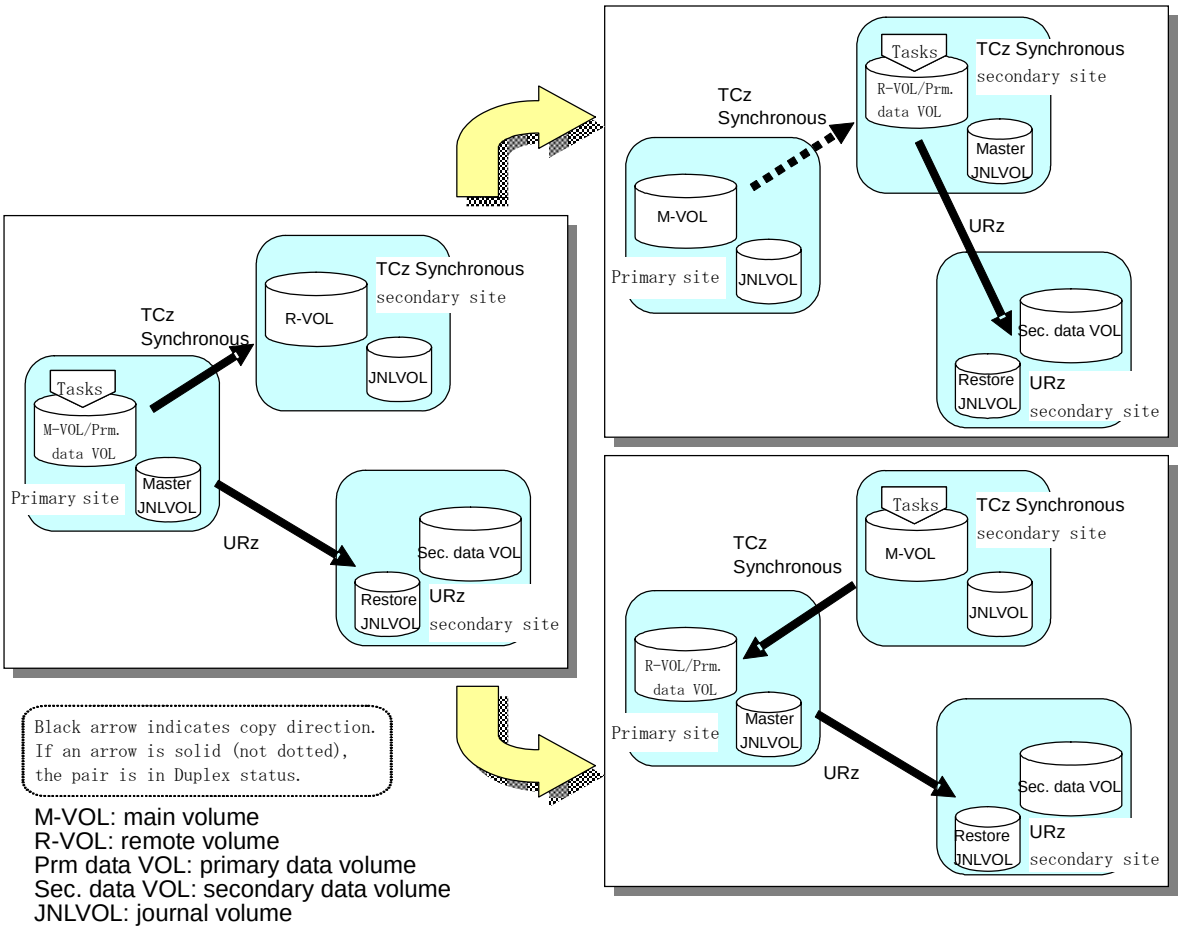


Figure 10-2 Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site

Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site (When Delta Resync Operation is Performed)

If a disaster or failure occurs only in the primary site in 3DC multi-target system, you can use secondary volume in the TCz Synchronous secondary site to enable the secondary site to take over your business tasks. After transferring your business tasks to the secondary site, you need to remove the failure from the primary site, so that you will be able to transfer your business tasks back to the primary site.

To transfer your business tasks to the TCz Synchronous secondary site, follow the procedure below. Business Continuity Manager is used in this procedure:

1. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKSUSPND REVERSE** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   TCz Synchronous pair will be split and the copy operation stops temporarily.

2. Use the TCz Synchronous remote volume to resume your business tasks.

3. Use Business Continuity Manager to execute the **YKRESYNC REVERSE** command on the TCz Synchronous pair.

   The copy direction of the TCz Synchronous pair will be reversed.

4. In the either cases when the primary/secondary relationship of the TCz Synchronous pair is not reversed (i.e., the copy direction is not reversed as illustrated in the upper-right picture in Figure 10-3), or when the primary/secondary relationship of the TCz Synchronous pair is reversed (i.e., the copy direction is reversed as illustrated in the lower-right picture in Figure 10-3), use Business Continuity Manager's **YKRESYNC DELTAJNL** command to perform delta resync operation on the volume in the TCz Synchronous secondary site. The status of the data volumes of URz pair changes as explained in the following table.

Table 10-1 Changes of URz Pair Status by Delta Resync Operation (When Recovering from Failures in the Primary Site)

URz Pair	Pair Status before Delta Resync Operation		Pair Status after Delta Resync Operation	
	Primary Data Volume	Secondary Data Volume	Primary Data Volume	Secondary Data Volume
URz pair between TCz Synchronous primary site and URz secondary site	Duplex or Suspend	Duplex or Suspend	Hold	Hold
URz pair between TCz Synchronous secondary site and URz secondary site	Hold	Hold	Duplex or Pending Duplex	Duplex or Pending Duplex

Note: In order to transfer business tasks back to the primary site, please remove failures in the primary site and other locations, and then follow the instructions in section Transferring Business Tasks from TCz Secondary Site to the Primary Site (When Delta Resync Operation is Performed in 3DC multi-target configuration).

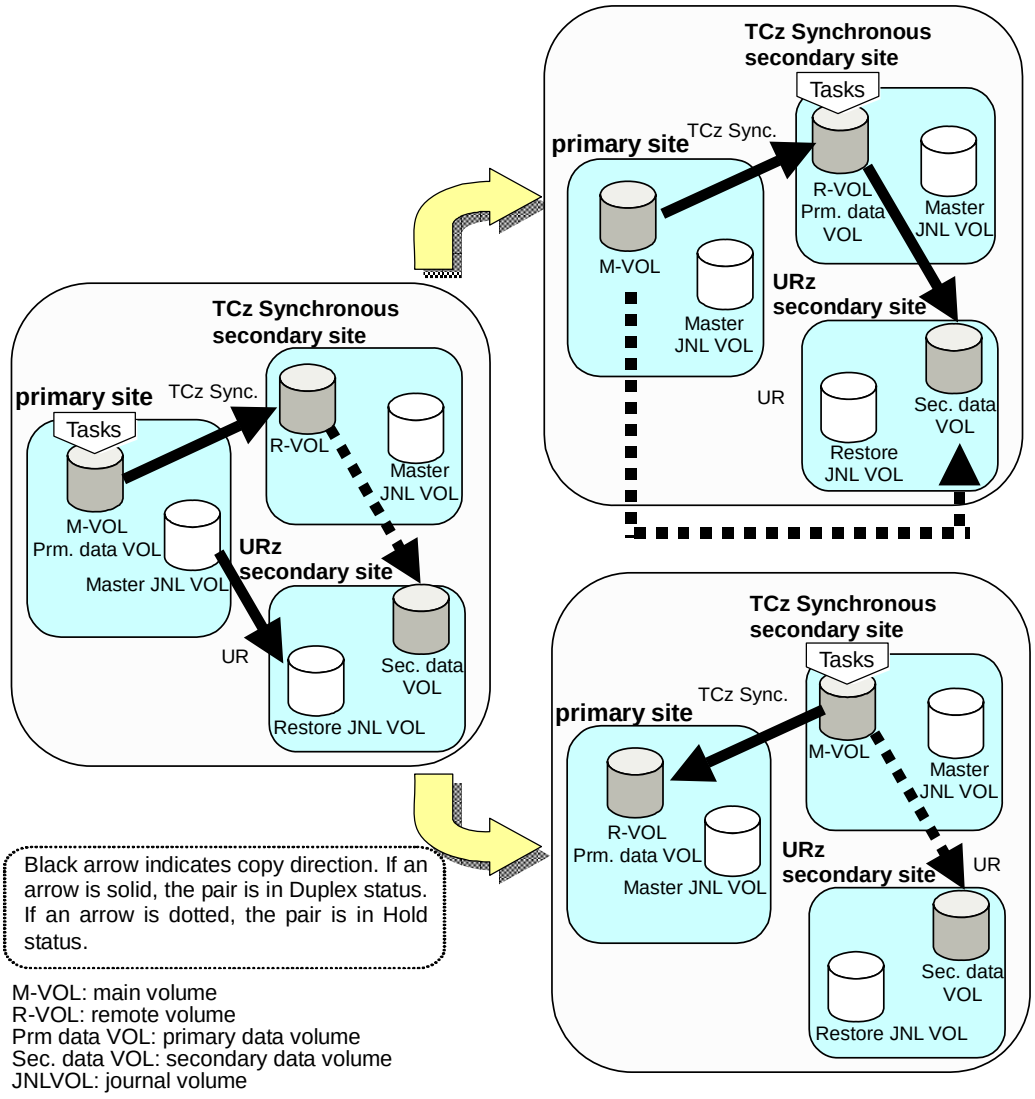


Figure 10-3 Recovery from Disaster in the Primary Site (When Delta Resync Operation is Performed)

Establishing 3DC Delta Resync Operations

This section describes and provides instructions for establishing URz 3DC delta resync operations using Storage Navigator.

Figure 10-4 shows the required configuration for the 3DC delta resync operations described in this section.

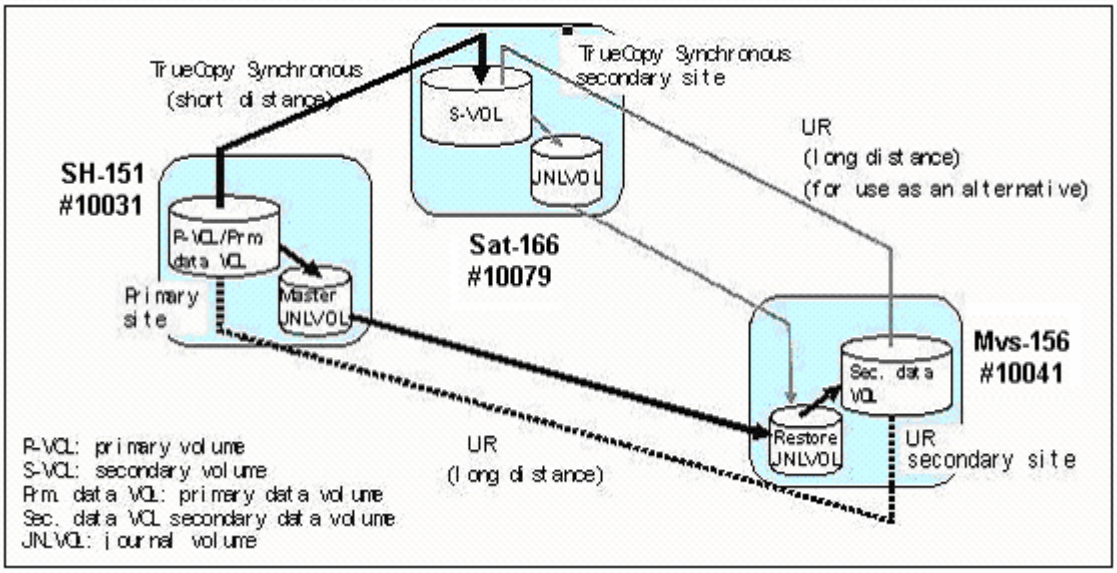


Figure 10-4 Configuration for 3DC Delta Resync Operations

To establish 3DC delta resync operations as shown in Figure 10-4:

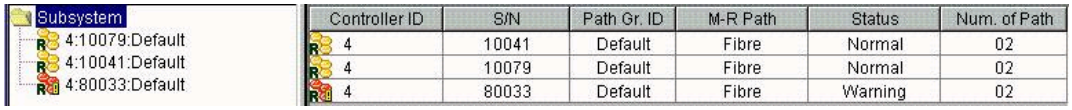
1. Create the UR links between the storage systems. Note that the UR definitions have additional links, as this configuration is also valid for 2-by-2.

   UR definitions are required (to and from):

   – Primary (UR-TC)(151#10031) to/from Target-UR (156#10041)

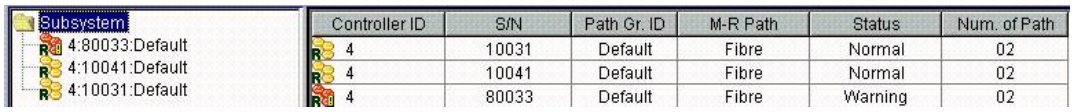
   – TC target (166#10079) to/from Target-UR (156#10041)

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031):



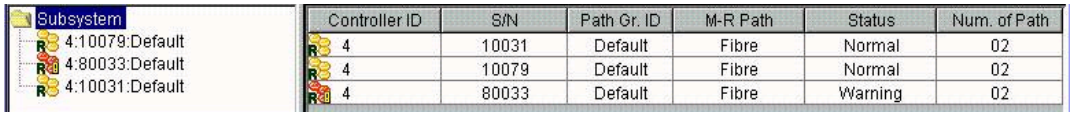
Controller ID	S/N	Path Gr. ID	M-R Path	Status	Num. of Path
4	10041	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	10079	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	80033	Default	Fibre	Warning	02

   TC target (166#10079):



Controller ID	S/N	Path Gr. ID	M-R Path	Status	Num. of Path
4	10031	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	10041	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	80033	Default	Fibre	Warning	02

   UR target (156#10041):

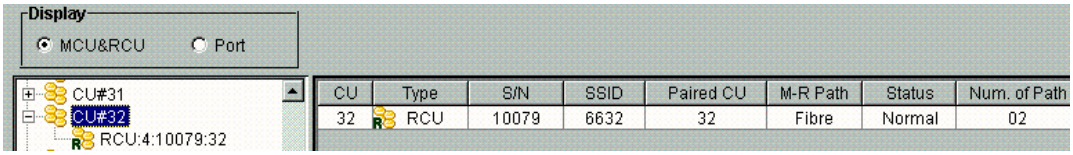


Controller ID	S/N	Path Gr. ID	M-R Path	Status	Num. of Path
4	10031	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	10079	Default	Fibre	Normal	02
4	80033	Default	Fibre	Warning	02

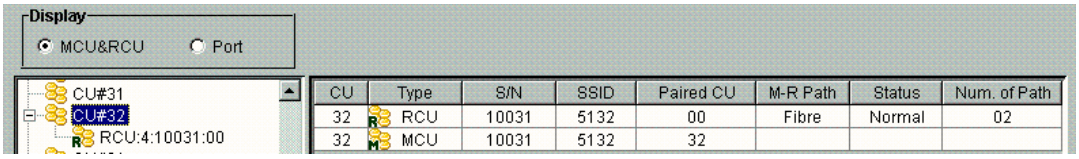
2. Create the TrueCopy LINKS between the controllers.

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031) to/from TC target (166#10079)

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031):



TC target (166#10079):



3. Create journal groups on all three storage systems (JNLG 01, 02, and 03 in this example).

JNLG	Attribute	Status	Mirror ID	S/N	Pair JNLG	Controller ID
00						
01	Initial					
02	Initial					
03	Initial					

4. Create the TrueCopy pairs between the TC primary and secondary storage systems.

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031) to TC target (166#10079)

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031):

CU	LDEV	Status	Sub	S/N	SSID	CU	LDEV	Type	Fence
32	00	Duplex		10079	6632	32	00	Sync	Never
32	01	Duplex		10079	6632	32	01	Sync	Never

   TC target (166#10079):

CU	LDEV	Status	Sub	S/N	SSID	CU	LDEV	Type	Fence
32	00	Duplex		10031	5132	32	00	Sync	Never
32	01	Duplex		10031	5132	32	01	Sync	Never

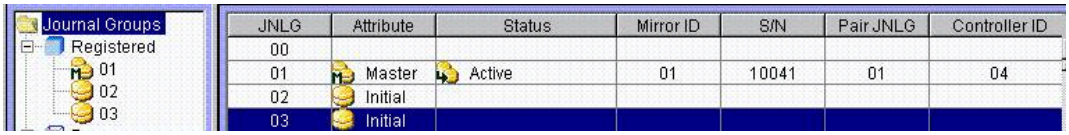
5. Create the UR pairs between the UR primary and secondary storage systems.

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031) to UR target (156#10041)

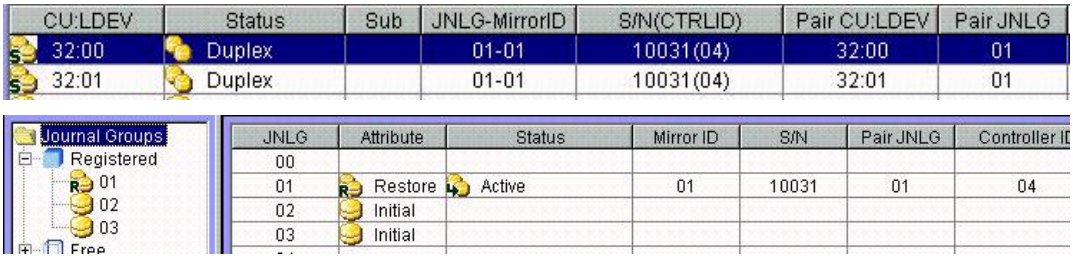
   Note: The mirror ID can be 1, 2, or 3, not 0.

   Primary (UR-TC) (151#10031)

CU:LDEV	Status	Sub	JNLG-MirrorID	S/N(CTRLID)	Pair CU:LDEV	Pair JNLG
32:00	Duplex		01-01	10041(04)	32:00	01
32:01	Duplex		01-01	10041(04)	32:01	01



UR target (156#10041)

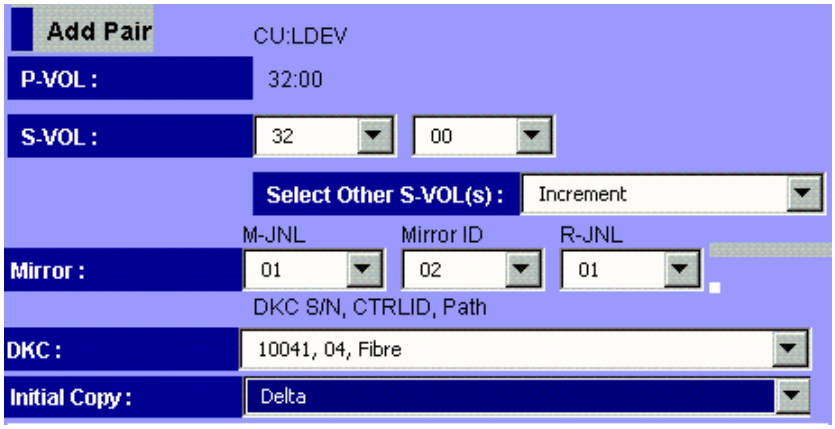


6. Create the delta resync (long distance UR) pairs. ***Note:*** The mirror ID cannot be the same as used in step 5.

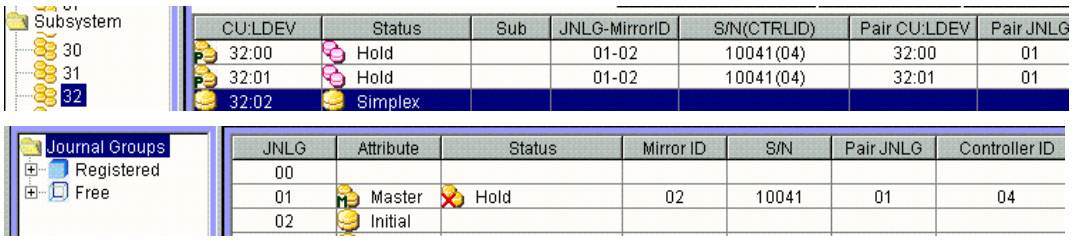
   At this point, UR 3DC delta resync operations are functional.

   TC target (166#10079) and UR target (156#10041)

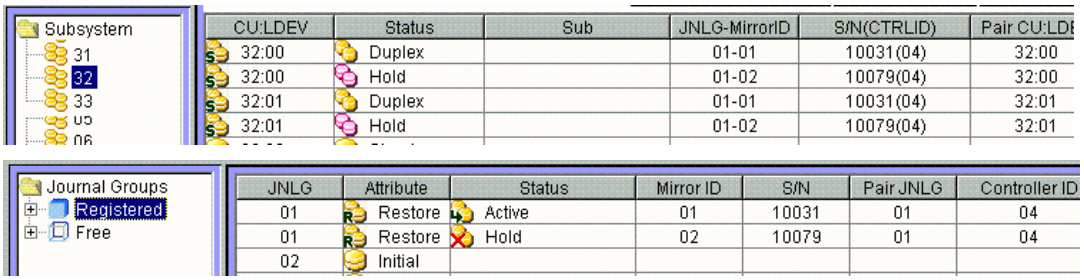
   TC target (166#10079), add pair operation, initial copy option is delta:



Return status is pair created on hold:



UR target (156#10041) status and long distance UR pair:



Performing Failover and Failback for Host Maintenance at the Primary Site

This section describes and provides instructions for performing failover and failback so that host maintenance can be performed at the primary site. The following procedures can only be performed by using Business Continuity Manager (BCM) or Command Control Interface (CCI). This section provides instructions for using BCM.

Normal Operations

Figure 10-5 shows normal operations in a 3DC multi-target configuration with a delta resync pair.

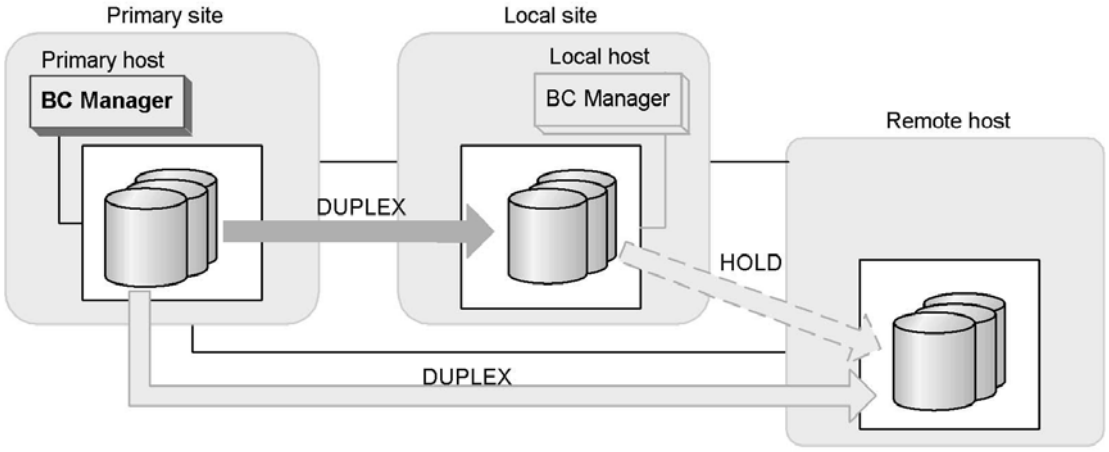
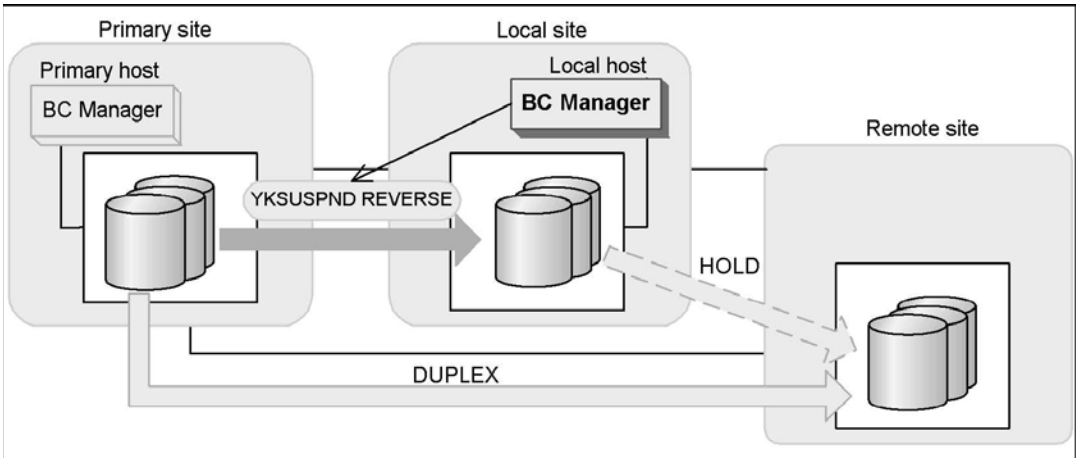


Figure 10-5 Normal Operations for 3DC Delta Resync

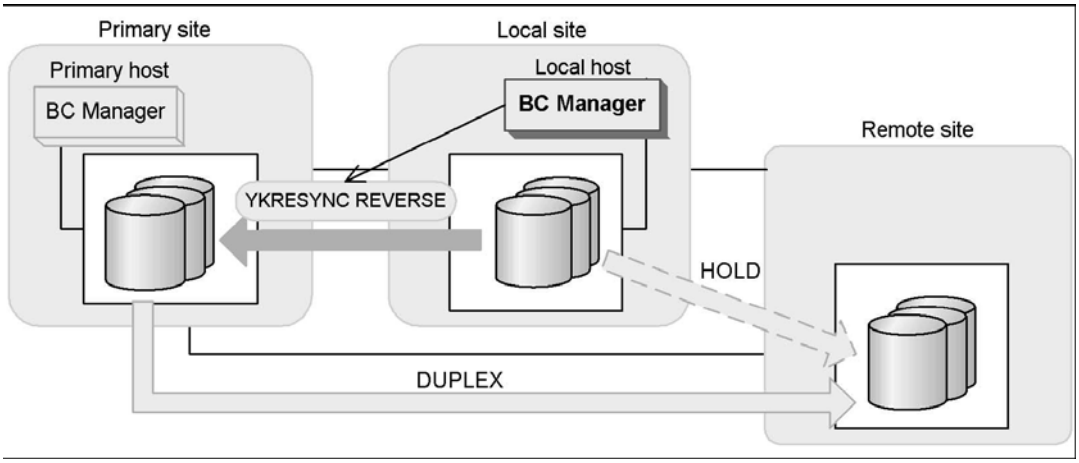
Performing Failover

To perform failover at the primary site:

1. Stop operations at the primary site.
2. From the local site, execute the YKSUSPND REVERSE command for the TC pair.



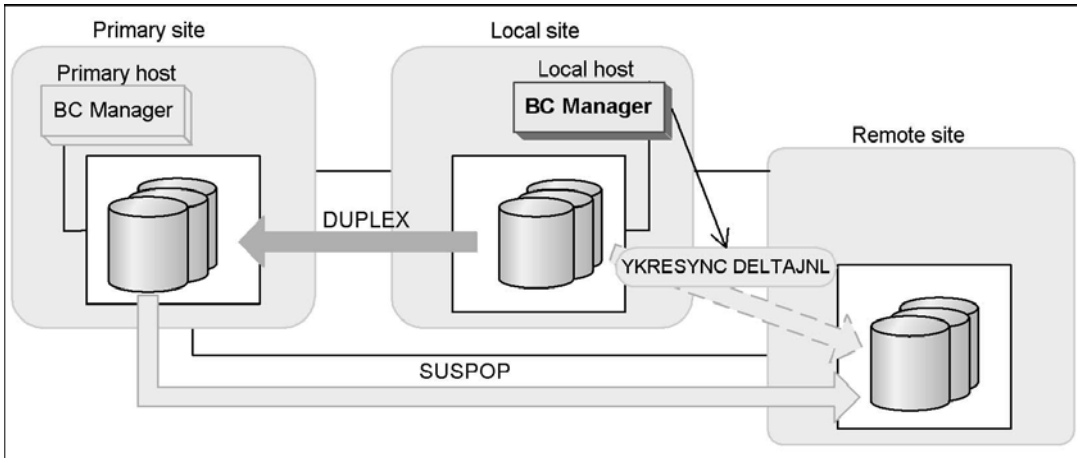
   – YKQUERY
   – YKSUSPND REVERSE
   – YKEWAIT GOTO(SUSPEND)
3. From the local site, execute the YKRESYNC REVERSE command for the TC pair. You do not need to perform this operation if the storage system at the primary site is not running.



   – YKQUERY
   – YKRESYNC REVERSE
   – YKEWAIT GOTO(DUPLEX)

   If the command is successful, the UR pair between the primary and remote sites changes to the SUSPOP status. Continue monitoring until the status changes to SUSPOP.

   – YKEWAIT GOTO(DUPLEX)
4. From the local site, execute the YKRESYNC DELTAJNL command for the delta resync pair.



– YKQUERY
– YKRESYNC DELTAJNL
– YKEWAIT GOTO(DUPLEX)

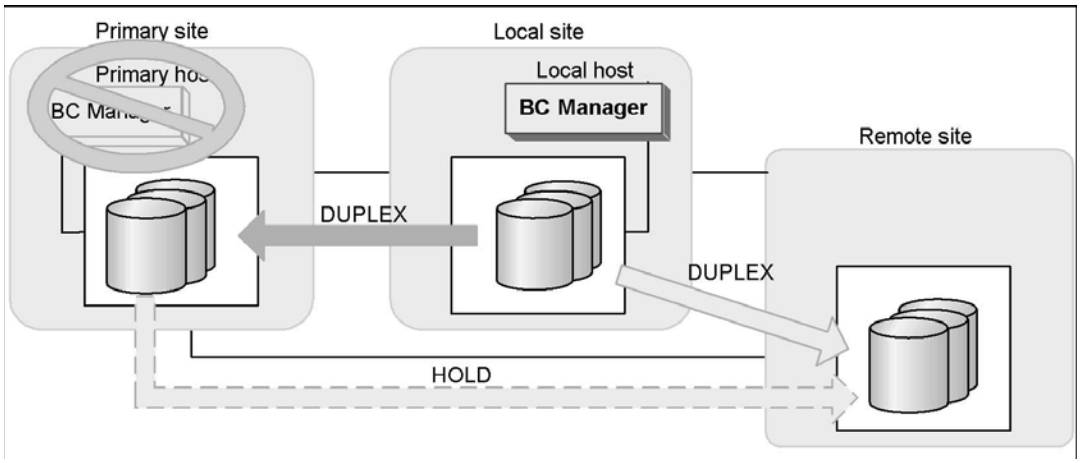
If the command is successful, the UR pair between the primary and remote sites changes to the HOLD status.

5. Start primary site host maintenance.
6. Start operations at the local site. Operation in the 3DC multi-target configuration is performed from the local site.

Performing Failback

To perform failback to the primary site:

1. Terminate primary site host maintenance.
2. Stop operation on the local site.
3. From the primary site, execute the YKSUSPND FORWARD command for the TC pair.

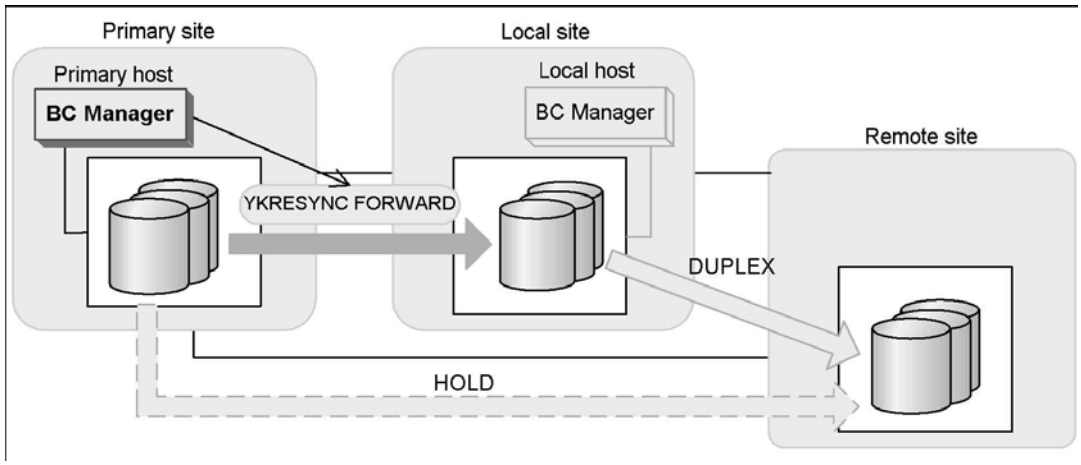


– YKQUERY

– YKSUSPND FORWARD

– YKEWAIT GOTO(SUSPEND)

4. From the primary site, execute the YKRESYNC FORWARD command for the TC pair.



– YKQUERY

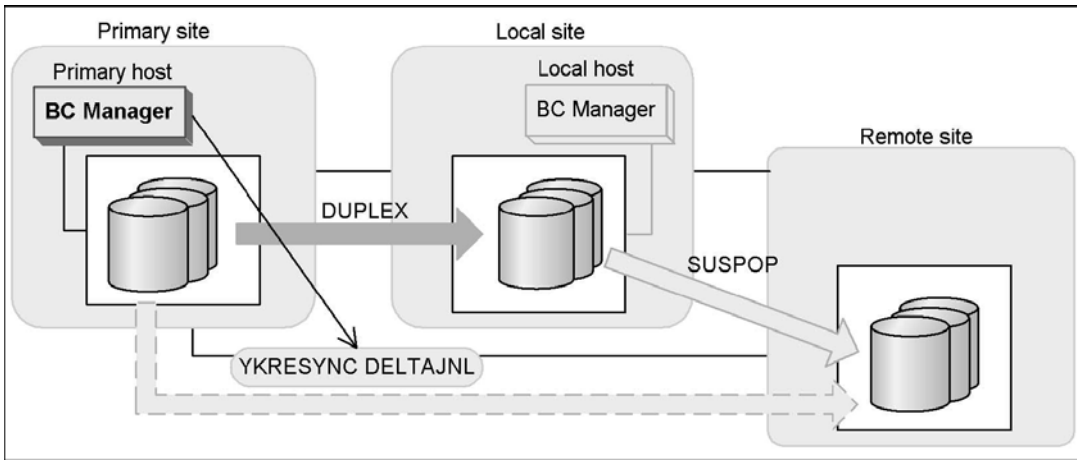
– YKRESYNC FORWARD

– YKEWAIT GOTO(DUPLEX)

If the command is successful, the UR pair between the local and remote sites changes to the SUSPOP status. Continue monitoring until the status changes to SUSPOP.

– YKEWAIT GOTO(SUSPEND)

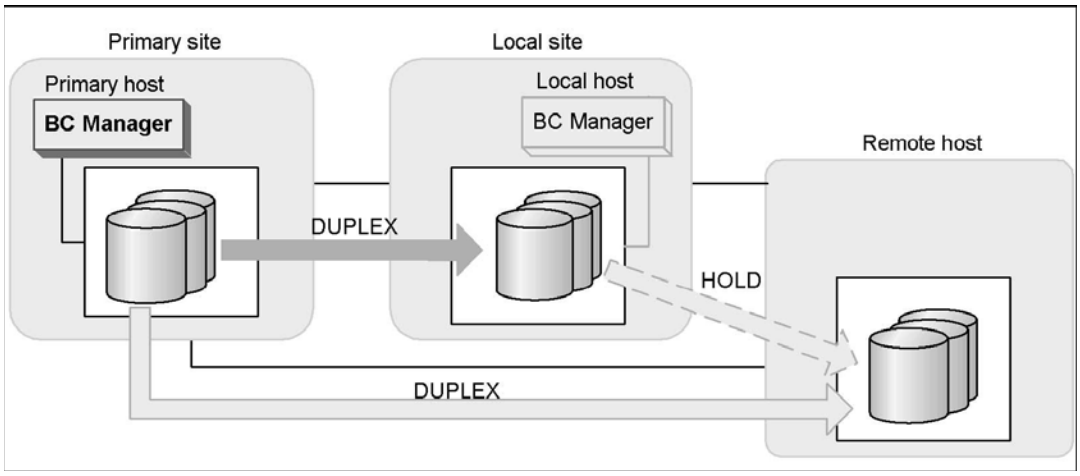
5. From the primary site, execute the YKRESYNC DELTAJNL command for the delta resync pair.



– YKQUERY
– YKRESYNC DELTAJNL
– YKEWAIT GOTO(DUPLEX)

If the command is successful, the UR pair on the local site and the remote site is moved to the HOLD status.

Operation is returned to normal.



Troubleshooting

This chapter provides troubleshooting information for Universal Replicator for z/OS® and instructions for calling technical support.

Troubleshooting

The user is responsible for the operation and normal maintenance of Storage Navigator computers. For troubleshooting information on Storage Navigator, refer to the *Storage Navigator User's Guide*.

Here are some guidelines for troubleshooting the Storage Navigator computer:

- Check the cabling and the LAN. Verify that both the computer and LAN cabling are firmly attached.
- Reboot the computer. Close any programs that are not responding. If necessary, reboot the computer and restart the Storage Navigator program.
- Check error codes. For detailed information about error codes displayed on Storage Navigator computers, please refer to the document Storage Navigator Messages.
- Check the status lamp on the Storage Navigator main window. If the color of the lamp becomes yellow () or red (), check the status of the storage system on the Status window (refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*). If you are unable to resolve an error condition, contact the Hitachi Data Systems Technical Support Center.
- Download the Storage Navigator trace files using the FD Dump Tool. If you are unable to resolve an error condition, first copy the Storage Navigator configuration information onto floppy disk(s) using the FD Dump Tool (refer to *Storage Navigator User's Guide*). Contact the Hitachi Data Systems Technical Support Center (see below), and give the information on the floppy disk(s) to the Hitachi Data Systems service personnel.

General Troubleshooting

Table 11-1 provides general troubleshooting information for *Universal Replicator for z/OS®* (henceforth abbreviated to as *URz*). Table 11-2 provides troubleshooting information for logical paths between storage systems. Table 11-3 and Table 11-4 provide troubleshooting information for suspended URz pairs.

For information about UR-z/OS messages that appears on Storage Navigator computers, see the next section. For a brief explanation about SIMs (service information messages), see section Checking Service Information Messages (SIMs).

Table 11-1 General Troubleshooting Information for Universal Replicator for z/OS®

Error	Corrective Action
The Hitachi USP V Remote Console software hangs, or URz operations do not function properly.	Make sure that all URz requirements and restrictions are met (e.g., track format, VOLSER). Make sure the primary and secondary storage systems are powered on and fully operational (NVS, cache, DFW). Refer to the *User and Reference Guide* for operational and troubleshooting information. Check all the entered values and parameters to make sure you entered the correct information on the Universal Replicator for z/OS® windows (e.g., remote storage system S/N, path parameters, primary data volume IDs and secondary data volume IDs).
Status of pairs and/or logical paths is not displayed correctly.	Make sure that the correct CU image is selected.
An R-SIM warning is displayed on your Hitachi USP V Storage Navigator computer.	Locate the SIM (see the *Storage Navigator User's Guide* for instructions). For information about UR-z/OS SIMs, see Checking Service Information Messages (SIMs).
A URz error message is displayed on your Storage Navigator computer.	Remove the error cause, and then retry the URz operation.
There is a problem with the Storage Navigator computer or the URz software.	Make sure that the problem is not with the computer, LAN hardware or software. Restart the computer and retry connecting to the storage system.
The status of a logical path is not normal.	Check the path status in the DKC Status window, and see Table 11-2.
The pair status is *suspended*.	Check the detailed pair status in the Detailed Information window. See Table 11-3 for suspend types and corrective action for suspended URz pairs.

Table 11-2 Troubleshooting Problems with Status of Logical Paths

Path Status	Description	Corrective Action
Initialization Failed	The link initialization procedure for the remote storage system failed.	Make sure that the local and remote storage systems are correctly connected via cable to each other. Make sure that you entered the correct remote storage system S/N (serial number) and path parameters (e.g., local storage system port, remote storage system port, and controller ID). Make sure that the topology settings of the local and remote storage system ports are correct.
Communication Time Out	Communication between the local and remote storage systems timed out.	Make sure that the remote storage system is powered on, and that NVS and cache are fully functional. Make sure that network relay devices (including cables, connectors, ESCDs, extender devices, communication lines, and all other devices connected to the extenders) are properly configured and functional. After that, delete the failed path. You may need to change the minimum paths setting or delete the remote storage system in order to delete the path. After deletion finishes, add the path or the remote storage system by using the Add Path window or the Add DKC window.

Resource Shortage (Port) *or,* Resource Shortage (Pair-Port)	The local and remote storage system rejected the request for creating a logical path because all resources in the local and remote storage systems are being used for other connections.	Delete the failed path, and also delete all paths and remote storage systems not currently in use. The local storage system can be connected to up to 64 remote storage systems with up to eight paths to each remote storage system. Make sure all local and remote storage system ports are properly configured: ordinary target ports or RCU target ports for hosts, RCU target ports for remote storage systems, initiator ports for local storage systems. If necessary, connect to the remote storage system to delete paths or remote storage systems and reconfigure ports, then reconnect to the local storage system. After that, add the path or the remote storage system again by using the Add Path window or the Add DKC window.
Serial Number Mismatch	The serial number (S/N) of the remote storage system does not match the specified serial number (S/N).	Make sure that you entered the correct remote storage system S/N and path parameters (e.g., local storage system port, remote storage system port, and controller ID). After that, delete the failed path. You may need to change the minimum paths setting or delete the remote storage system in order to delete the path. After deletion finishes, add the path and the remote storage system again by using the Add Path window or the Add DKC window. Make sure that you entered the correct controller ID, and also make sure that the topology settings of the local and remote storage system ports are correct.
Invalid Port	The specified port is not configured as an RCP or initiator port, or this path already exists.	Make sure that the topology settings of the local and remote storage system ports are correct. Make sure that you entered the correct remote storage system S/N and path parameters (e.g., local storage system port, remote storage system port, and controller ID). After that, delete the failed path. You may need to change the minimum paths setting or delete the remote storage system in order to delete the path. After deletion finishes, add the path and the remote storage system again by using the Add Path window and the Add DKC window.
<blank>	This path was not established.	Delete the failed path. You may need to change the minimum paths setting or delete the remote storage system in order to delete the path. After deletion finishes, add the path and the remote storage system again by using the Add Path window and the Add DKC window.
Pair-Port Number Mismatch	The specified port in the remote storage system is physically disconnected from the local storage system.	Make sure that you specified the correct remote storage system port. Correct the port number if necessary. Make sure that the local storage system port and the remote storage system port are connected via cables to each other. If the storage systems are not connected via cables, please connect them via cables and then retry the operation. Make sure that the topology settings of ports on the local and remote storage systems are correct.
Pair-Port Type Mismatch	The specified port in the remote storage system is not configured as an RCU Target port.	Make sure that the specified port in the remote storage system is configured as an RCU target port. Configure the port as an RCU target port if it is not configured that way.
Communication Failed.	The local storage system is connected to the remote storage system successfully, but logical communication timeout occurred.	Make sure that the remote storage system port and network relay devices (e.g., cables and switches) are properly configured and functioning.

Port Number Mismatch	The specified port number is not correct, or the cable is not connected to the specified port.	Delete the error path. Check the specified port number or cable connections, and then retry the operation.
Communication Error	A timeout error has occurred in the fibre path between the local and remote storage systems.	Delete the failed path and retry.
Logical Blockade	A failure occurs at a local storage system port.	Repair the port status on the local storage system.
	A failure occurs at a remote storage system port.	Repair the port status on the remote storage system. After that, delete the path by using the **Delete Path** or **Delete DKC** command, and then add the path and the remote storage system again by using the **Add Path** or **Add DKC** command.
	A failure occurs in the path relay equipment.	Repair the path relay equipment. After that, delete the path by using the **Delete Path** or **Delete DKC** command, and then add the path and the remote storage system again by using the **Add Path** or **Add DKC** command.
	The connection cable is physically broken.	Replace the broken cable. After that, delete the path by using the **Delete Path** or **Delete DKC** command, and then add the path and the remote storage system again by using the **Add Path** or **Add DKC** command.
Program Error	Program error is detected.	Delete the path by using the **Delete Path** or **Delete DKC** command, and then add the path and the remote storage system again by using the **Add Path** or **Add DKC** command.

Table 11-3 Troubleshooting Suspended URz Pairs

Suspend Type	Applies to	Description	Corrective Action
Secondary Data Volume by Operator	Primary data volume, secondary data volume	The user suspended the pair from the primary or the secondary storage system by using the secondary data volume option.	Restore the pair from the primary storage system.
by RCU	Primary data volume	The primary storage system suspended a pair because the primary storage system detected an error condition at the secondary storage system.	Clear the error condition at the secondary storage system or secondary data volume. If you need to access the secondary data volume, release the pair from the secondary storage system. If any data on the secondary data volume has changed, release the pair from the primary storage system and then re-create the pair (Add Pair). If data on the secondary data volume has not changed, restore the pair from the primary storage system.

Delete Pair to RCU	Primary data volume	The primary storage system detected that the secondary data volume status changed to *simplex* because the user released the pair from the secondary storage system.	Release the pair from the primary storage system, and then restore the pair. You should use the **Entire** initial copy option to resynchronize the pair. You can use the **None** initial copy option only if no data on the primary data volume or secondary data volume changed.
Seconda ry Data Volume Failure	Primary data volume	The primary storage system detected an error during communication with the secondary storage system, or detected an I/O error during update copy.	Check the path status on the DKC Status window (see Table 11-2). Clear any error conditions at the secondary storage system and the secondary data volume. If you need to access the secondary data volume, release the pair from the secondary storage system. If any data on the secondary data volume has changed, release the pair from the primary storage system and then re-create the pair (Add Pair). If data on the secondary data volume has not changed, restore the pair from the primary storage system.
MCU IMPL	Primary data volume, secondar y data volume	The primary storage system could not find valid control information in its nonvolatile memory during the IMPL procedure. This error occurs only if the primary storage system is without power for more than 48 hours (power failure and fully discharged batteries).	Restore the pair from the primary storage system. The primary storage system will perform an initial copy operation in response to the request for restoring the pair, so that the entire primary data volume will be copied to the secondary data volume.
Initial Copy Failed	Primary data volume, secondar y data volume	The primary storage system suspended this pair during the initial copy operation. The data on the secondary data volume is not identical to the data on the primary data volume. Invalid track format can cause this suspension.	Release the pair from the primary storage system. Clear all error conditions at the primary storage system, the primary data volume, the secondary storage system, and the secondary data volume. Reformat failed track by using ICKDSF. Restart the initial copy operation by using the Add Pair window.
MCU P/S-OFF	Secondar y data volume	The primary storage system suspended all URz pairs because the primary storage system was powered off.	None. The primary storage system will automatically restore these URz pairs when the primary storage system is powered on.

Table 11-4 provides troubleshooting instructions for URz pair suspension. Hardware failures which affect the cache storage and the shared memory of the primary or secondary storage system may also cause the URz pairs to be suspended.

Table 11-4 Resolving URz Pair Suspension

Classification	Causes of Suspension	SIM	Recovery procedure

Primary storage system hardware or secondary storage system hardware	Hardware redundancy has been lost due to some blockade condition. As a result, one of the following could not complete: primary-secondary storage system communication, journal creation, copy operation, restore operation, staging process, or de-staging process. Journals cannot be retained because some portion of the cache memory or the shared memory has been blocked due to hardware failure. The primary storage system failed to create and transfer journals due to unrecoverable hardware failure. The secondary storage system failed to receive and restore journals due to unrecoverable hardware failure. The drive parity group was in correction-access status while the URz pair was in Pending Duplex status.	DC0 x DC1 x DC2 x	According to SIM, remove the hardware blockade or failure. Restore the failed volume pairs (Resume Pair). If a failure occurs when Business Continuity Manager is being used, secondary volumes in Suspend (equivalent to SWAPPING in Business Continuity Manager) may remain in the master journal group. If these volumes remain, execute the YKRESYNC REVERSE option on the secondary volumes whose pair status is Suspend, which is equivalent to SWAPPING in Business Continuity Manager terminology (YKRESYNC is the Business Continuity Manager command for resynchronizing pair). This operation changes all volumes in the master journal group to primary volumes. After this operation, restore the volume pairs (Resume Pair).
Communication between the primary and secondary storage systems	Communication between the storage systems failed because the secondary storage system or network relay devices were not running. Journal volumes remained full even after the timeout period elapsed.	DC0 x DC1 x	Remove the failure from the primary and secondary storage systems or the network relay devices. If necessary, increase resources as needed (e.g., the amount of cache, the number of paths between primary and secondary storage systems, the parity groups for journal volumes, etc.). Restore the failed pairs (Resume Pair).
RIO overload or RIO failure	An unrecoverable RIO (remote I/O) timeout occurred because the storage system or networks relay devices were overloaded. Or, RIO could not be finished due to a failure in the storage system.	DC2 x	Release failed pairs (Delete Pair). If necessary, increase resources as needed (e.g., the amount of cache, the number of paths between primary and secondary storage systems, the parity groups for journal volumes, etc.). Re-establish failed pairs (Add Pair).
Planned power outage to the primary storage system	The URz pairs were temporarily suspended due to a planned power outage to the primary storage system.	DC8 x	No recovery procedure is required. The primary storage system will automatically remove the suspension condition when the storage system is powered on.

Universal Replicator for z/OS® Software Error Codes

Storage Navigator computers display an error message when an error occurs during URz operations. The error message describes the error and displays an error code consisting of four digits. The error message may also include a USP V SVP error code. If you need to call the Hitachi Data Systems Support Center for assistance, please report the URz and SVP error code(s). Please refer to *Storage Navigator Messages* for a list of error codes displayed on the Storage Navigator computers.

Checking Service Information Messages (SIMs)

The Hitachi USP V storage system reports a service information message (SIM) to the host when it is necessary to notify the user of a possible service requirement for the storage system. The SIMs are classified according to severity for reporting and logging purposes: service, moderate, serious, or acute. The SVP reports all SIMs related to URz operations, and all SIMs are stored on the SVP for use by Hitachi Data Systems personnel. The SIMs reported to the host are logged in the SYS1.LOGREC dataset of the host operating system. Each time a SIM is generated, the amber **Message** LED on the Hitachi USP V control window (under the **Ready** and **Alarm** LEDs) turns on as an additional alert for the user. The Hitachi USP V Storage Navigator software displays the SIMs to provide an additional source of notification for the user. *Note:* For further information on SIM reporting, please contact your Hitachi Data Systems representative or the Hitachi Data Systems Support Center.

SIMs generated by the primary storage system will include the device ID of the primary data volume (byte 13), and SIMs generated by the secondary storage system will include the device ID of the secondary data volume (byte 13).

Figure 11-1 shows a typical 32-byte SIM from the Hitachi USP V storage system. SIMs are displayed on the host console by reference code (RC) and severity. The six-digit RC (composed of bytes 22, 23, and 13) identifies the possible error and determines the severity. The SIM type (byte 28) indicates the component which experienced the error. When the value of byte 22 is 21, the SIM is a control unit SIM. When the value of byte 22 is D*x* (where *x* is an arbitrary character), the SIM is a device SIM.

Table 11-5 illustrates severity of SIMs and explains whether or not USP V reports SIMs to the host. The table also shows SVP log files.

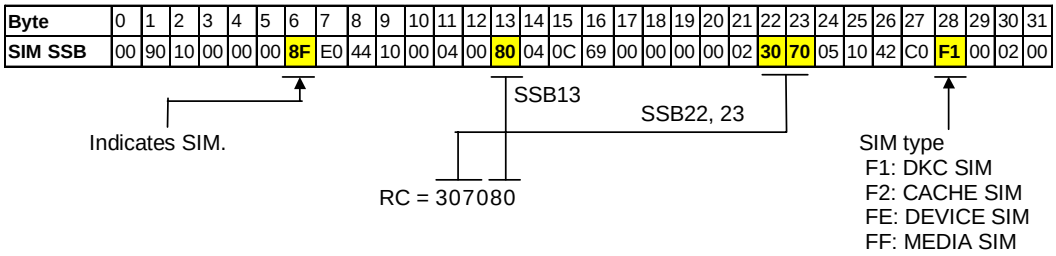


Figure 11-1 Typical SIM Showing Reference Code and SIM Type

Table 11-5 Typical SIM Showing Reference Code and SIM Type

Reference Code		Severity	Description	USP V reports SIM to host?	SIM Generated by	SVP Log File
22	23					
21	80	Moderate	Logical path is blocked due to a failure.	Yes. Also see ***Note*** below.	Primary / Secondary storage system	SIM Log
21	81	Service	Logical path is restored.	No.	Primary / Secondary storage system	SSB Log
21	82	Moderate	Line failure is reported by the extender.	Yes. Also see ***Note*** below.	Primary / Secondary storage system	SIM Log
DC	0X	Serious	A volume being used by primary data volume has been suspended. Path recovery is impossible.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	1X	Serious	A volume being used by primary data volume has been suspended. A failure has been detected in the primary storage system.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	2X	Serious	A volume being used by primary data volume has been suspended. A failure has been detected in the secondary storage system.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	4X	Serious	A volume being used by primary data volume has been suspended. A data volume pair has been suspended at the secondary storage system.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	5X	Serious	A volume being used by primary data volume has been suspended. A data volume pair has been released at the secondary storage system.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	6X	Serious	A volume being used by secondary data volume has been suspended. Path recovery is impossible.	Yes, repeatedly.	Primary storage system	SIM Log
DC	7X	Serious	A volume being used by secondary data volume has been suspended. A failure has been detected in the secondary storage system.	Yes, repeatedly.	Secondary storage system	SIM Log

Note: If the DKC emulation type is 2105 or 2107, the setting of the system option mode 308 determines whether the SIM will be reported to the host, as explained below:

When the system option mode 308 is set to ON, the SIM will be reported to the host.

When the system option mode 308 is set to OFF, the SIM will not be reported to the host. By default, the system option mode 308 is set to OFF.

Calling the Hitachi Data Systems Support Center

If you need to call the Hitachi Data Systems Support Center, make sure to provide as much information about the problem as possible, including:

- The circumstances surrounding the error or failure.
- The exact content of any error messages displayed on the host system(s).
- The exact content of any error messages displayed by Storage Navigator.
- The Storage Navigator configuration information (use the FD Dump Tool).
- The service information messages (SIMs), including reference codes and severity levels, displayed by Storage Navigator.

The Hitachi Data Systems customer support staff is available 24 hours/day, seven days a week. If you need technical support, please call:

- United States: (800) 446-0744
- Outside the United States: (858) 547-4526

Acronyms and Abbreviations

CU	control unit
ESCON	Enterprise System Connection (IBM trademark for optical channels)
I/O	input/output
IBM	International Business Machines Corporation
LAN	local-area network
LCP	local control port
LED	light-emitting diode
LUN	logical unit (also called device emulation or device type)
Mb/s	megabits per second
MCU	main control unit
NVS	nonvolatile storage
PC	personal computer system
PCB	printed circuit board
PSUE	pair suspended-error
PSUS	pair suspended-split
P-VOL	primary volume
RAID	redundant array of independent disks
RCP	remote control port
RCU	remote control unit
RIO	remote IO
SIM	service information message
SMPL	simplex
S/N	serial number (also abbreviated as s#)
SSID	storage subsystem identification
S-VOL	secondary volume
SVP	service processor
sync	synchronous
s#	serial number (also abbreviated as S/N)
VOL	volume

Index

Hitachi Data Systems

Corporate Headquarters
750 Central Expressway
Santa Clara, California 95050-2627
U.S.A.
Phone: 1 408 970 1000
www.hds.com
info@hds.com

Asia Pacific and Americas
750 Central Expressway
Santa Clara, California 95050-2627
U.S.A.
Phone: 1 408 970 1000
info@hds.com

Europe Headquarters
Sefton Park
Stoke Poges
Buckinghamshire SL2 4HD
United Kingdom
Phone: + 44 (0)1753 618000
info.eu@hds.com

Hitachi Data Systems

MP-96RD625-01